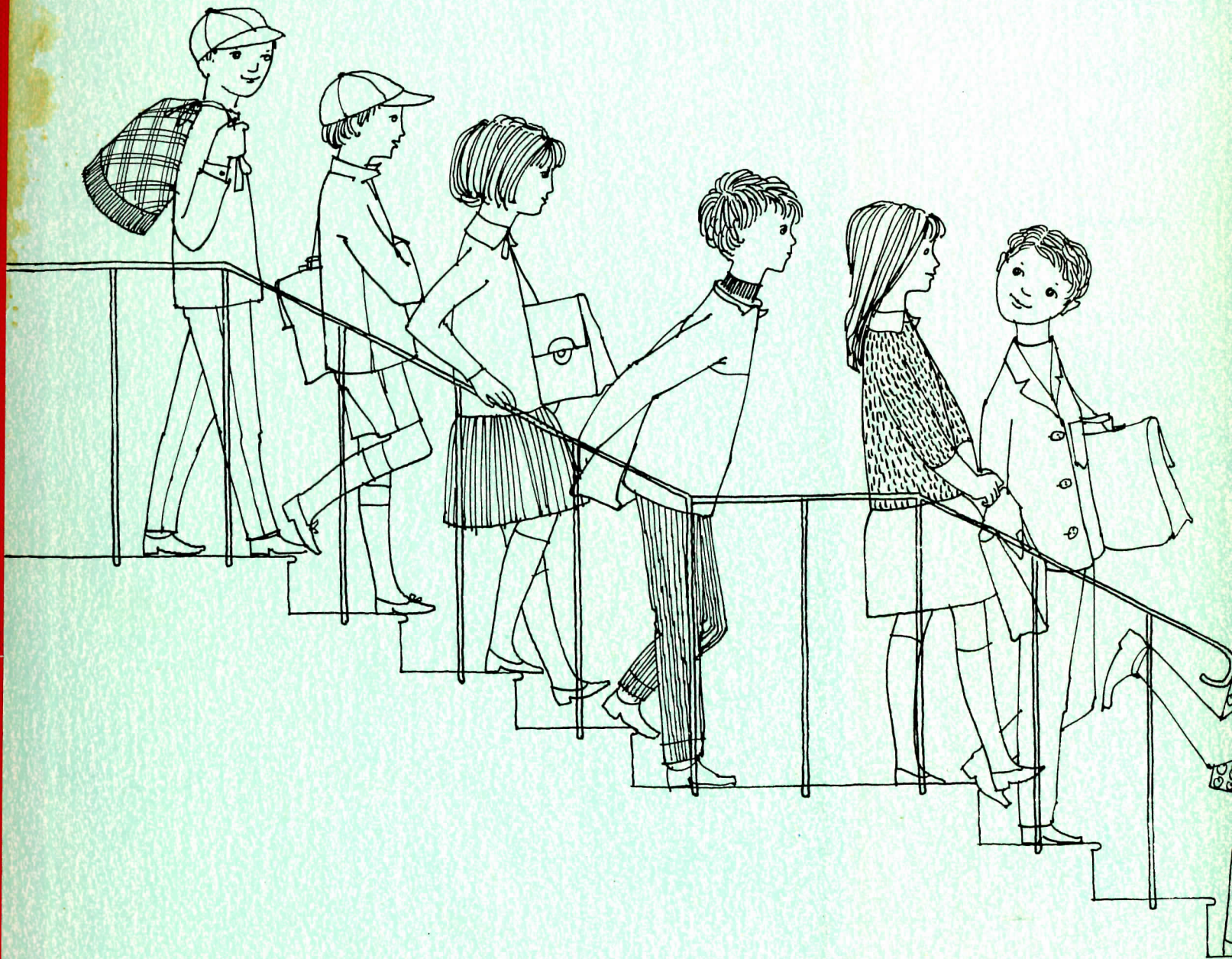
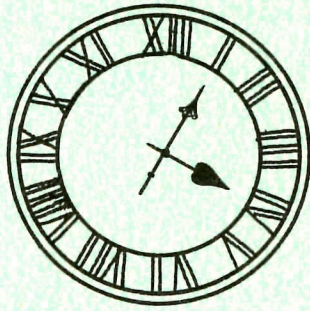




Learning
English
A1





Bochiger Laszlo
907 SW Holden St. #4
Seattle, WA 98106-2084
USA

Learning English

Ausgabe A

Teil 1

Bearbeitet von

Karl Beilhardt und W

Unter Mitwirkung von Klem

Hans-Joachim Lechler

sowie Vera Dale und Kennet



Ernst Klett St

Learning English

Ausgabe A

Teil 1

Bearbeitet von

Karl Beilhardt und Willy Piert

Unter Mitwirkung von Klemens Farber, Hermann Thomas,

Hans-Joachim Lechler

sowie Vera Dale und Kenneth L. Warner



Ernst Klett Stuttgart

Learning English, Ausgabe A

Bearbeitet von: O.St.Dir. Karl Beilhardt, Stuttgart — Gym.Prof. Klemens Farber, Tübingen — Gym.Prof. Hans-Joachim Lechler, Stuttgart — O.St.R. Willy Piert, Köln — O.St.R. Hermann Thomas, Giengen

Englische Mitarbeiter: Vera Dale und Kenneth L. Warner

An den Arbeiten nahmen beratend teil: O.St.R. Erika Bronner, Oldenburg — O.St.R. Dieter Buttschardt, Biberach — O.St.R. Karl De Clerck, Altenkirchen — O.St.R. Dr. Christian Dehm, Garmisch-Partenkirchen — O.St.Dir. Dr. Helmuth Herfurth, Syke bei Bremen — St.R. Klaus Lambrecht, M. A., Hausach — St.R. Dr. Richard Müller, Köln — O.St.R. Harald Schenk, Regensburg — St.R. Ottmar K. Siegrist, Weingarten (Baden)

2. Auflage.

2²¹ 20 19 18 17 | 1986 85 84 83 82

Alle Drucke dieser Auflage können im Unterricht nebeneinander benutzt werden. Die letzte Zahl bezeichnet das Jahr dieses Druckes.

© Ernst Klett, Stuttgart 1971. Nach dem Urheberrechtsgesetz vom 9. Sept. 1965 i. d. F. vom 10. Nov. 1972 ist die Vervielfältigung oder Übertragung urheberrechtlich geschützter Werke, also auch der Texte, Illustrationen und Graphiken dieses Buches, nicht gestattet. Dieses Verbot erstreckt sich auch auf die Vervielfältigung für Zwecke der Unterrichtsgestaltung — mit Ausnahme der in den §§ 53, 54 URG ausdrücklich genannten Sonderfälle —, wenn nicht die Einwilligung des Verlages vorher eingeholt wurde. Im Einzelfall muß über die Zahlung einer Gebühr für die Nutzung fremden geistigen Eigentums entschieden werden. Als Vervielfältigung gelten alle Verfahren einschließlich der Fotokopie, der Übertragung auf Matrizen, der Speicherung auf Bändern, Platten, Transparenten oder anderen Medien.

Einband: H. und S. Lämmle, Stuttgart.

Zeichnungen: H. Köhler, Stuttgart.

Druck: Ernst Klett, Stuttgart. Printed in Germany.

ISBN 3-12-508100-9

Inhalt

Alle Gedichte, Reime und Lieder sowie alle Klammern < > stehen, sind unverbindlich; den. Ihr Wortschatz wird für die folgenden L. Die Übungen mit blau unterlegten Kästchen beziehen sich auf das grammatische. Die Vokabeln zu den Übungen stehen jeweils

The First Steps	Seite
Step 1 Laute und Patterns	7-9
<Song: Good Morning>	10
Listen and say	10
<Bob's Dog>	10
Step 2 Laute und Patterns	12-15
<Round: The Little Bell at Westminster>	15
Listen and say	16
<A Bad Tooth>	17
Step 3 Laute und Patterns	18-21
<Song: Happy Birthday>	22
Listen and say	22
<Father's Car Key>	23
Step 4 Laute und Patterns	24-27
Listen and say	28
<The Blue Kitchen>	29
Step 5 Laute und Patterns	30-35
Listen and say	36
<Tit for Tat>	37
Step 6 Laute und Patterns	38-41
Numbers 1-100	39
<The Alphabet Song>	40
<A Code Message>	41
Listen and say	42
<What Number, please?>	43
Orders and Questions in the Classroom	44

Inhalt

Alle Gedichte, Reime und Lieder sowie alle Abschnitte, deren Überschriften in eckigen Klammern < > stehen, sind unverbindlich; sie können ohne weiteres weggelassen werden. Ihr Wortschatz wird für die folgenden Lektionen nicht als bekannt vorausgesetzt. Die Übungen mit blau unterlegten Kästchen sind obligatorisch. Die angegebenen Paragraphen beziehen sich auf das grammatische Beiheft. Die Übungen mit weißen Kästchen sind fakultativ und können bei Zeitmangel übersprungen werden. Die Vokabeln zu den Übungen stehen jeweils hinter den Wörtern der Lektion.

The First Steps	Seite	Laute und Grammatik	§§
Step 1 Laute und Patterns	7-9	s, z, æ, e, ə, ɔ:, ɒ	
<Song: Good Morning> . . .	10	b — d — g; p — t — k	
Listen and say	10		
<Bob's Dog>	10		
Step 2 Laute und Patterns	12-15	θ — ð	
<Round: The Little Bell at		əu, au, a:, ʌ	
Westminster>	15	ʃ, tʃ	
Listen and say	16		
<A Bad Tooth>	17		
Step 3 Laute und Patterns	18-21	v — w; ai — ei	
<Song: Happy Birthday> .	22		
Listen and say	22		
<Father's Car Key>	23		
Step 4 Laute und Patterns	24-27	l, ə:	
Listen and say	28	Der unbestimmte und der bestimmte	
<The Blue Kitchen>	29	Artikel	1
		Das Personal- und Possessivpronomen (I)	3, 8
Step 5 Laute und Patterns	30-35	ʒ, dʒ, r, fr, eə, iə	
Listen and say	36	Der Plural der Substantive	2
<Tit for Tat>	37	Das Personal- und Possessivpronomen (II)	3, 8
		This — that, these — those	4
Step 6 Laute und Patterns	38-41	tr, dr, θr, br; st, sp	
Numbers 1—100	39	Der Plural bei Substantiven auf	
<The Alphabet Song>	40	Zischlaut	5
<A Code Message>	41		
Listen and say	42		
<What Number, please?> .	43		
Orders and Questions in the Classroom	44	Intonation	

Lektion	Seite	Grammatik	§§
1 A. A Week in Micky's Life	45	Das Präsens von <i>to have</i>	6
<B. What's at the End of it?>	46	Der <i>s</i> -Genitiv I	7
Exercises	46-48	Das Possessivpronomen (Zusammenfassung)	8
2 A. Moving Day at the Bartons'	49	Die Uhrzeit I	9
B. What's the Time?	50	Das Präsens von <i>to be</i>	10
<Rhyme: A Lovely Day>	51	Das Partizip Präsens	11
Exercises	51-54	Die Verlaufsform	12
3 A. David and his Pen-friend	55	Der Imperativ	13
B. Reporter Jack Quick	56	Die einfache Form des Präsens	14
<A Riddle>	57	Die Verlaufsform und die einfache Form des Präsens	15
Exercises	57-59		
4 A. Happy Days for Jane	60	Besonderheiten beim Endungs- <i>s</i>	16
B. A Family Tree	61	Die Wortstellung im Aussagesatz	17-18
<Who is it?>	61	Der Subjekts- und Objektsfall des Personalpronomens	19
<Proverbs>	61		
Exercises	62-66		
5 A. The Hairdresser	67	Die Hilfsverben <i>can, may, must</i>	20
B. Jane Lays the Table	68	Die Stellung des Prädikats	21
<Rhyme: Who Makes the Money?> ..	69	Der Fragesatz mit <i>can, must, may</i> und <i>to do</i>	22
Exercises	69-72	Die Verneinung mit <i>not</i>	23
		Der verneinte Imperativ	24
		Der verneinte Fragesatz	25
6 A. Who Wants an Apple?	73	Der Fragesatz mit Fragewort	26
B. Animal Quiz	74	Der Fragesatz ohne <i>to do</i>	27
<Song: One Man Went to Mow>	75	Die Fragewörter	28
Exercises	75-77	Verben mit zwei Objekten I ..	29
7 A. Too Much of a Good Thing	78	Die Uhrzeit II	30
B. The Seasons and the Weather	79	Grund- und Ordnungszahlen ..	31
<Two Weather Rhymes>	79	Zeitangaben (Datum, Jahreszahl, Tageszeiten, Monatsnamen)	32
Exercises	80-83		
8 A. Prince	84	Der <i>s</i> -Genitiv II (Besonderheiten bei der Bildung)	33
B. The Village Shop	85	Der <i>of</i> -Genitiv	34
<Rhyme: My Doggie>	85		
Exercises	86-88		

9 A. The Stomach of an Ox	
<B. Conversation: How Are You?> ..	
<Round: Row, row, row your Boat> ..	
Exercises	
10 A. The Soap-box Race	
<B. Sport>	
Exercises	9
11 A. Dangerous Driving	
<B. Conversation: English Traffic> ...	
Exercises	10
12 A. The Pedlar's Dream	
B. Conversation: Can You Tell Me the Way?	
<Song: London Bridge>	
<Poem: London Town>	
Exercises	11
13 A. First Aid in a Train	
<B. Conversation: At the Ticket-office>	
<A Silly Answer>	
<Tongue Twister>	
Exercises	11
14 A. "X" for Danger	
B. Conversation: At the Post-office ...	
<The Scout Promise>	
<Some more Scout Signs>	
<Poem: Oh! Look at the Moon>	
Exercises	11
15 A. The Snapshot Competition	
B. Private Letters	
Exercises	11

9 A. The Stomach of an Ox	89	Verben mit zwei Objekten II .	35
⟨B. Conversation: How Are You?⟩ ..	90	Fragepronomen der Person ..	36
⟨Round: Row, row, row your Boat⟩..	90		
Exercises	91-94		
10 A. The Soap-box Race	95	Die Steigerung der Adjektive	37-38
⟨B. Sport⟩	96	Die unregelmäßige Steigerung.	39
Exercises	97-100	Der Vergleich im Satz	40
11 A. Dangerous Driving	101	Das Präteritum von <i>to have</i> ...	41
⟨B. Conversation: English Traffic⟩ ...	102	Das Präteritum von <i>to be</i>	42
Exercises	103-107	Das Präteritum der regelmäßi-	
		gen Verben	43
		Die Stellung der Orts- und Zeit-	
		angaben	44
12 A. The Pedlar's Dream	108	Das Präteritum einiger unregel-	
B. Conversation: Can You Tell Me the		mäßiger Verben	45
Way?	109	Frage und Verneinung im Prä-	
⟨Song: London Bridge⟩	110	teritum	46
⟨Poem: London Town⟩	110	Der Fragesatz ohne <i>did</i>	47
Exercises	110-114	<i>some</i> — <i>any</i>	48
13 A. First Aid in a Train	115	Die Verlaufsform und die ein-	
⟨B. Conversation: At the Ticket-office⟩	116	fache Form des Präteritums	49
⟨A Silly Answer⟩	116	Die Stellung der Adverbien der	
⟨Tongue Twister⟩	117	unbestimmten Zeit	50
Exercises	117-120		
14 A. "X" for Danger	121	Adverbien der Art und Weise	51-52
B. Conversation: At the Post-office ...	122	Bildung	51
⟨The Scout Promise⟩	123	Stellung	52
⟨Some more Scout Signs⟩	123		
⟨Poem: Oh! Look at the Moon⟩	123		
Exercises	124-127		
15 A. The Snapshot Competition	128	Die Stammformen des Verbs .	53
B. Private Letters	130	Das Perfekt	54
Exercises	131-135	Die Wortstellung im Perfekt..	55
		Der Gebrauch von Präteritum	
		und Perfekt	56
		Das Plusquamperfekt	57

16 A. A Meeting of the Second Form ...	136	Das Futur I	58
B. Conversation: Let's Go to the Cinema	137	Der Gebrauch des Futurs	59
⟨National Anthem: God Save the Queen⟩	138		
Exercises	138-141		
17 A. Robin Hood and the Sheriff	142	Das Konditional I	60
⟨B. The Eight Bells⟩	143	Das Konditional II	61
⟨Rhyme: If ...⟩	144	Der Bedingungssatz	62
Exercises	144-148		
18 A. A Pony for Mary	149	Das Relativpronomen	63
⟨A Riddle⟩	150		
⟨B. Two Jokes⟩	151		
Exercises	149-154	Die unvollständigen Hilfsverben	
19 A. A Race against the Tide	155	und ihre Ersatzverben	64
⟨B. Conversation: Greetings and Good Wishes⟩	156		
⟨Poem: The Blackbird⟩	157		
Exercises	157-161	Besonderheiten der Pluralbildung	65-66
20 A. A Cycling Tour (Diana's Diary) ..	162	Einige Präpositionen	67
B. Conversation: Alan's Watch is Wrong	164		
⟨Song: This Old Man⟩	164	Das Passiv	68
Exercises	165-168		
21 A. The Stowaway	169		
⟨B. Conversation: At a London Travel Agency⟩	170		
⟨The Train to Bristol⟩	171		
⟨Song: My Bonnie Is over the Ocean⟩	171		
Exercises	172-175		
22 ⟨A. Mike's Christmas Presents⟩	176		
⟨B. Did you know that ... ?⟩	178		
⟨Song: The First Nowel⟩	178		
Wörterverzeichnis	179		
Liste der unregelmäßigen Verben	223		

The First Steps

Step 1



I. Good morning

Look, a boy.

Look, Bob.

Good morning, Bob.

Good morn

Step 1

The First Steps

Step 1



1. Good morning

Look, a boy.

Good morning, Bob.

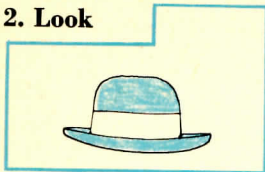
Look, Bob's sister.

Good morning, Maud.

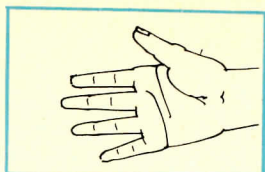
Look, a man.

Good morning, Mr Fog.

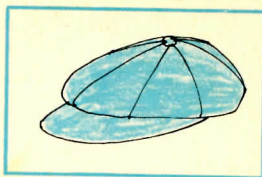
2. Look



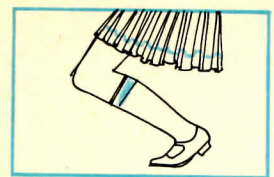
Look, a hat.
It is a hat.



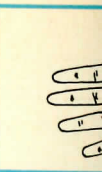
Look, a hand.
It is a hand.



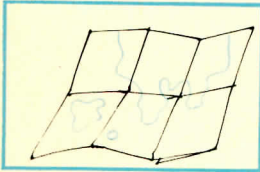
Look, a cap.
It is a cap.



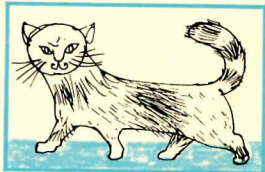
A leg.
It is Maud's leg.



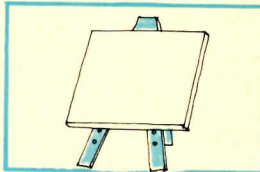
A hand.
It is Bob's



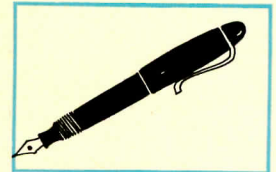
Look, a map.
It is a map.



Look, a cat.
It is a cat.



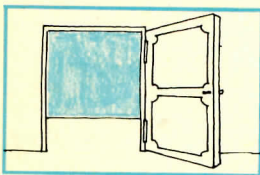
It is a board.



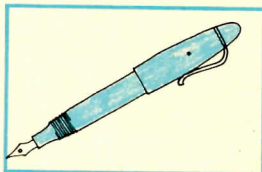
A pen. It is black.
It is a black pen.



A hat. It is
It is a black



It is a door.



It is a pen.



It is a head.

4. Is it...?



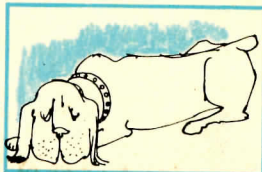
Is it a book?
Yes, it is.



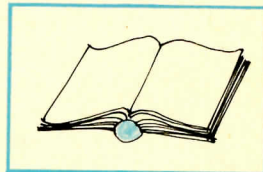
Is it a pen?
Yes, it is.



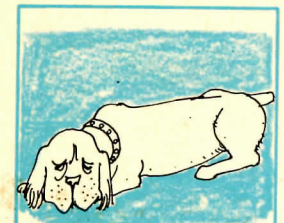
It is a leg.



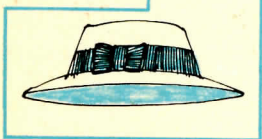
It is a dog.



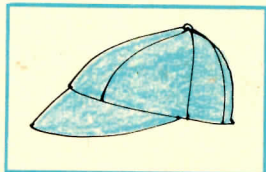
It is a book.



3. It is...



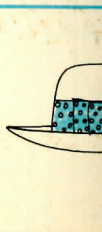
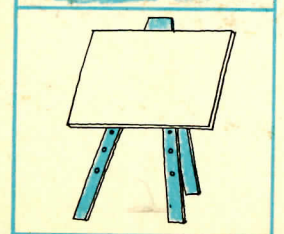
a hat
It is Maud's hat.

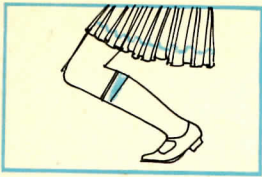


a cap
It is Bob's cap.

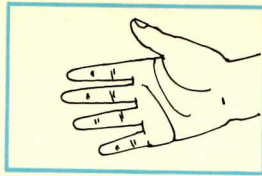


a head
It is Mr Fog's head.





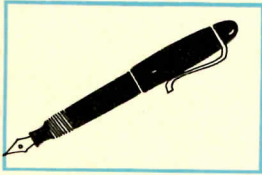
A leg.
It is Maud's leg.



A hand.
It is Bob's hand.



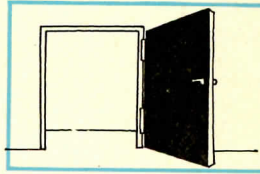
A book.
It is Mr Fog's book.



A pen. It is black.
It is a black pen.



A hat. It is black.
It is a black hat.

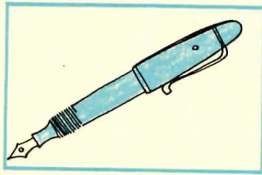


A ... It is ...

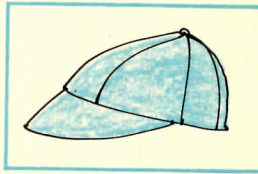
4. Is it ... ?



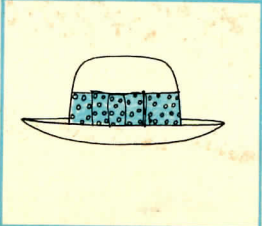
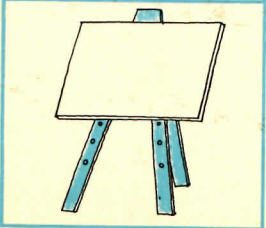
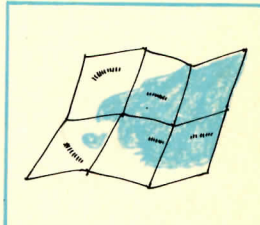
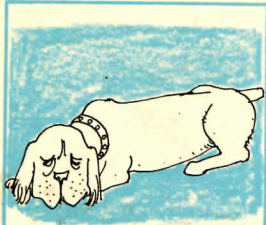
Is it a book?
Yes, it is.



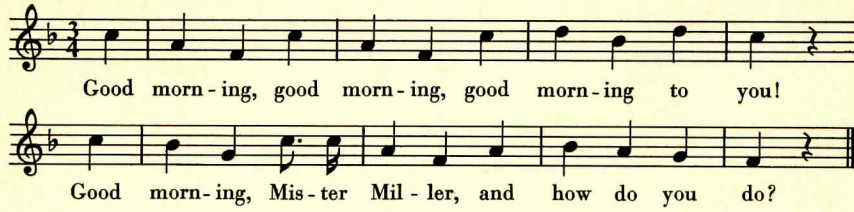
Is it a pen?
Yes, it is.



Is it a ... ?
Yes, ...



〈Song: Good Morning〉



Listen and say

1. [ɔ]	[ɔ:]	[æ]	[e]	[ə]	[s]	[z]
Bob	morning	hat	yes	a cap	yes	is
Fog	door	cap	pen	sister	sister	Bob's
dog	board	map	leg	Mr	Mr	Maud's
	Maud	black	head		listen	Mr Fog's
		hand			say	

b — p	d — t	g — k
book pen	board hat	good book
Bob map	hand it	leg black
...

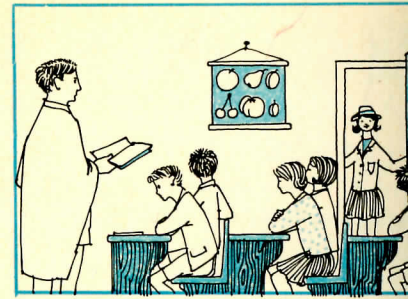
Look, Bob, a map. A head — a hat. Look, a black dog.
 Look, Bob, a cap. A hand — a cat. Look, a good book.

2. [e] — [æ] A head — a hand
 A pen — a map
 Bob's leg — Bob's cap
 Bob's pen is black.

[ɔ] — [ɔ:] Bob — Maud
 a dog — a board
 Mr Fog — good morning

[z] Bob's hand, Bob's leg, Maud's head, Maud's hat,
 Mr Fog's pen, Mr Fog's black cat.
 It is Bob's hand.
 It is Bob's leg.
 It is ...

[s] yes, a sister, Mr Fog.
 Listen and say.



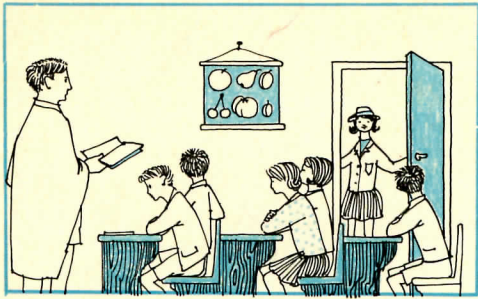
Look, a dog.
 Is it a dog?
 Yes, a black dog.

Look, a hand.
 Is it a hand?
 Yes, it is a hand.

Look, a leg.
 Is it a leg?
 Yes, it is.

Look, a cap.

Look, a head.
 Is it Bob's head?
 Yes, it is.
 Is it Bob's dog?
 Yes, it is.
 "Good morning, Bob!"

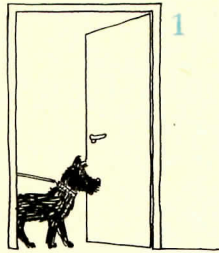


<Bob's Dog>

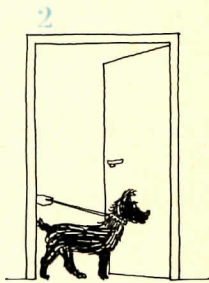
"Good morning."
 "Good morning, Mr Fog."

Listen, a knock!
 It is Maud Miller.
 "Good morning, Mr Fog."
 "Good morning, Maud."

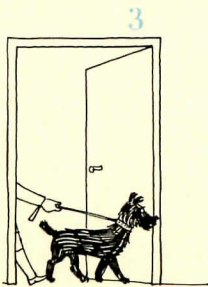
Look, a dog.
 Is it a dog?
 Yes, a black dog.



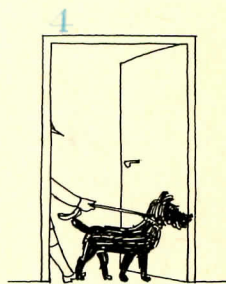
Look, a hand.
 Is it a hand?
 Yes, it is a hand.



Look, a leg.
 Is it a leg?
 Yes, it is.



Look, a cap.



Look, a head.
 Is it Bob's head?
 Yes, it is.
 Is it Bob's dog?
 Yes, it is.
 "Good morning, Bob!"

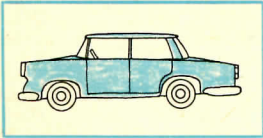


Step 2

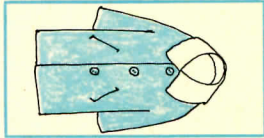
1. This is . . . This is Mr Miller.
Mr Miller is
Bob's father and
Maud's father.



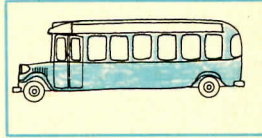
This is Mrs Miller.
Mrs Miller is
Bob's mother and
Maud's mother.



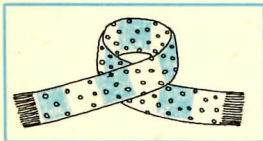
This is a car.



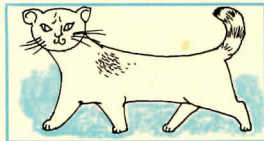
This is a coat.



This is a bus.



This is a scarf.

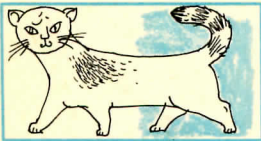


This is a cat.

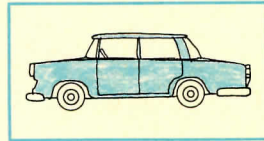


This is a mouse.

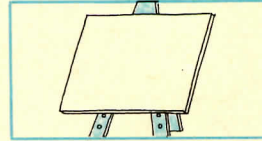
2. Is this . . .? — Yes, it is. No, it isn't



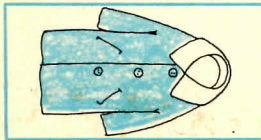
Is this a cat?
Yes, it is.
It is a cat.



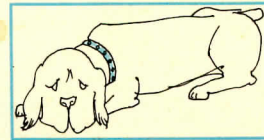
Is this a bus?
No, it isn't.
It is a car.



Is this a door?
No, it isn't.
It is . . .



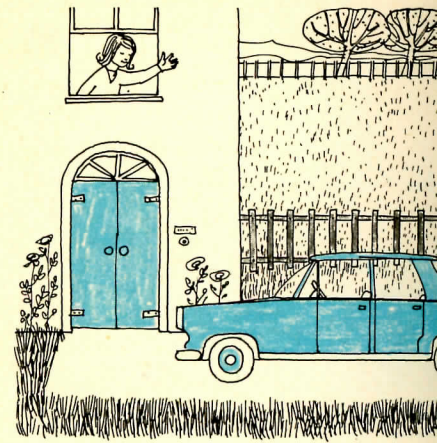
Is this a scarf?



Is this a dog?

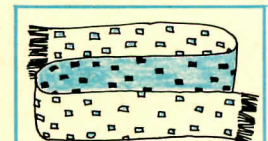


Is this a leg?

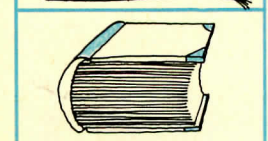


3. This is — that is

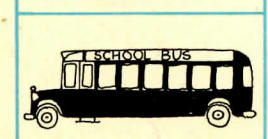
This is Mr Miller's garden.
This is Mr Miller's house.
This is Mr Miller's car.
And this is Mrs Miller's dog.



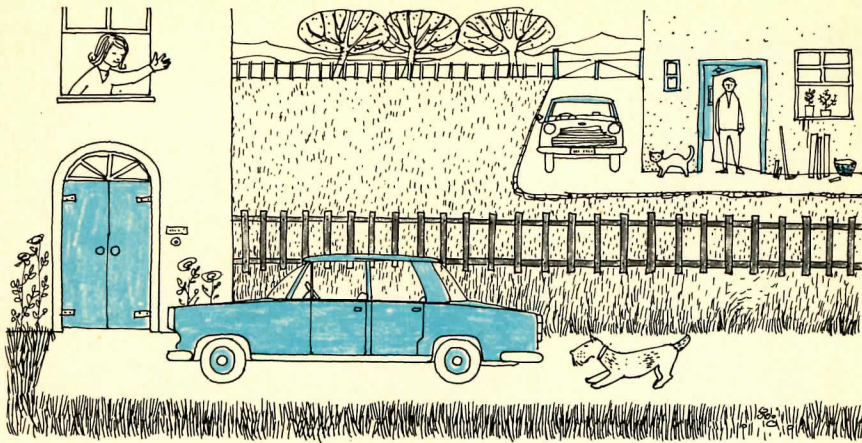
This scarf is
that scarf



This book is
that book



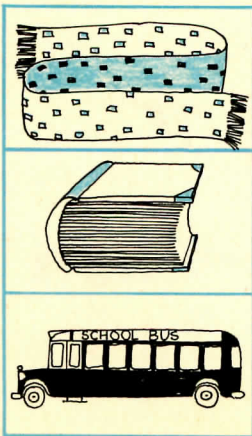
This school bus
that school bus



3. This is — that is

This is Mr Miller's garden.
 This is Mr Miller's house.
 This is Mr Miller's car.
 And this is Mrs Miller's dog.

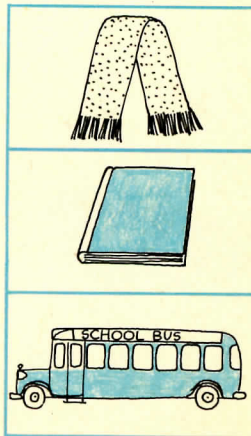
That is Mr Dent.
 That is Mr Dent's garden.
 That is Mr Dent's house.
 That is Mr Dent's car.
 And that is Mr Dent's cat.



This scarf is **long**,
 that scarf is **short**.

This book is **thick**,
 that book is **thin**.

This school bus is **black**,
 that school bus is **blue**.



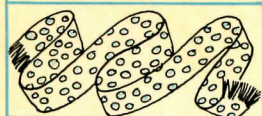


4. Is this . . . ?

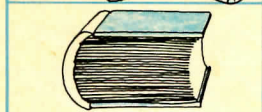
Is this dog black? — Yes, it is.



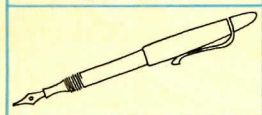
Is this cap blue? — No, it isn't. It is black.



Is this scarf short?



Is this book thick?



Is this pen long?

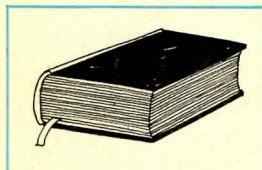
Is Maud's coat long or short?

It is short.

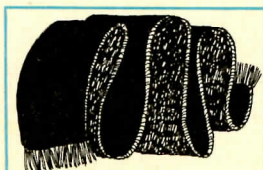
Is this scarf black or blue?



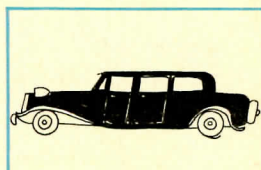
Is this



thick or thin?
black or blue?



long or short?
thick or thin?
black or blue?



long or short?
black or blue?

Is this Bob or Maud?

It is . . .

Is this



Mr or Mrs Miller?



Mr Miller's
Mrs Miller's

5. Some Orders

Bob, stand up.

Now sit down.

Thank you.

Maud, go to the door.

Open the door.

Shut the door.

Thank you.

<Round: The Little Bell at Westmins

The lit-tle bell at West-min-
lit-tle bell at West-min-

Is this Bob or Maud?

It is ...



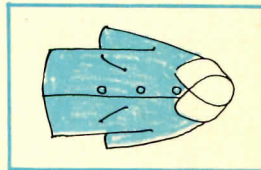
Is this



Mr or Mrs Miller?



Mr Miller's hat or
Mrs Miller's hat?



Maud's coat or
Bob's coat?

5. Some Orders

Bob, stand up.
Now sit down.
Thank you.

Maud, go to the door.
Open the door.
Shut the door.
Thank you.

Susan, fetch that map, please.
Show me the map.
Go back to your seat.

Bob, fetch Maud's book.
Show me that book.
Go back to your seat.
Thank you.

<Round: The Little Bell at Westminster>

The lit - tle bell at West - min - ster goes ding dong ding dong dong. The
lit - tle bell at West - min - ster goes ding dong dong.

Listen and say

1. [əu] [au] [ɑ:] [θ] [ð] [ʃ] [tʃ]
 go house car thick the dog shut fetch
 no mouse garden thin this show
 open now scarf thank you that

2. [əu] — [au] Show me your house. [u] — [əu] The book is open.
 Now open the door. Look, a coat.
 Go and sit down.
 [θ] a thin scarf, [ð] — [θ] This book is thin,
 a thick coat, that book is thick.
 thank you, Mr Dent. Thank you, Mother.

3. Ordne nach den Lauten



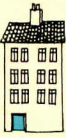

Example: [e] [æ] [ʌ] [ɑ:] [u]
 pen black bus car good




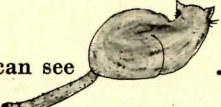
look, fetch, garden, stand, back, scarf, leg, up, head, that, mother, father,
 shut, book, cat, cap.





4. Setze die fehlenden Buchstaben ein





für [əu]: -pen für [au]: h--se für [ɔ:]: d--r für [e]: p-n
 n- m--se b--rd y-s
 g- n-- M--d h--d



5. Alone in the House

This is , and that is , this is , and that is .

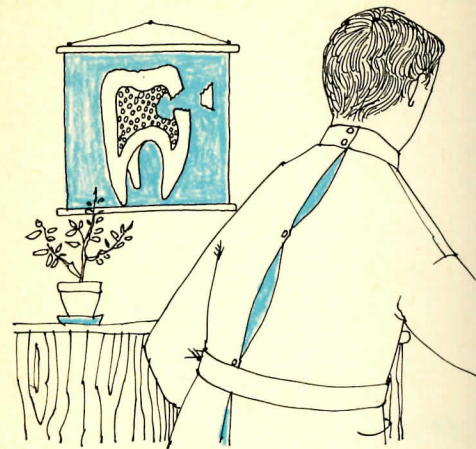
Now  can see , now  can see .

And now  can't see , for now  is in .

But now  is in , so now  is in .

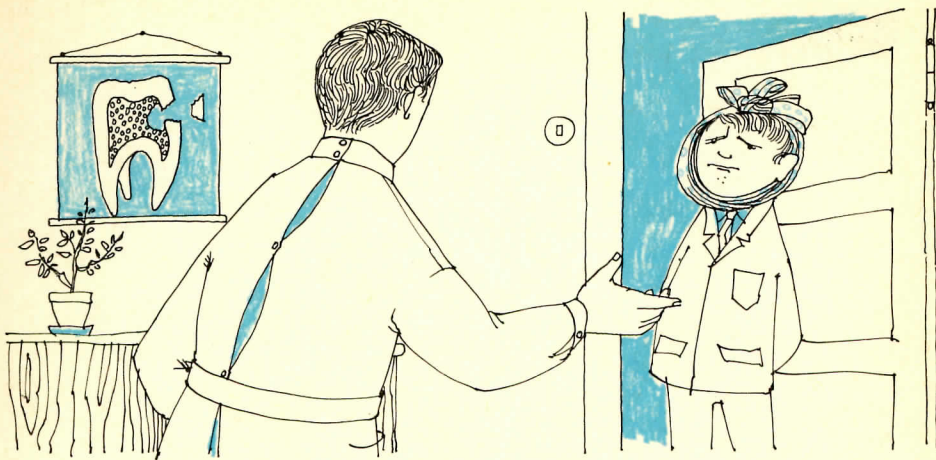
And  is alone in .

K. G. Hedström



<A Bad Tooth>

- Bob has a thick scarf on.
 Bob has a bad tooth.
 "Good morning, Bob."
 5 "Good morning, Mr Dent."
 Mr Dent is a dentist.
 "Sit down, please, Bob.
 Open your mouth. — Thank you.
 Now show me your bad tooth. —
 10 Oh, yes, this tooth is bad,
 and that tooth is bad, too."
 "Oh!"
 "Look, this tooth is out."
 "Oh!"
 15 "Look, the next tooth is out, too.
 Now shut your mouth.
 Thank you, Bob. —
 Miss Susan, please fetch Bob's cap
 "Is this your coat, Bob?"
 20 "Yes, it is, and that is my scarf."
 "Now go home, Bob. Good-bye."



<A Bad Tooth>

Bob has a thick scarf on.

Bob has a bad tooth.

“Good morning, Bob.”

5 “Good morning, Mr Dent.”

Mr Dent is a dentist.

“Sit down, please, Bob.

Open your mouth. — Thank you.

Now show me your bad tooth. —

10 Oh, yes, this tooth is bad,
and that tooth is bad, too.”

“Oh!”

“Look, this tooth is out.”

“Oh!”

15 “Look, the next tooth is out, too.

Now shut your mouth.

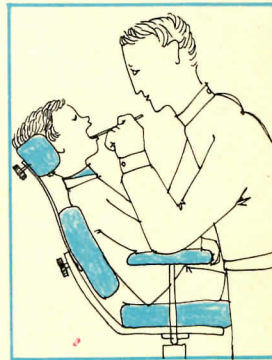
Thank you, Bob. —

Miss Susan, please fetch Bob’s cap and coat.”

“Is this your coat, Bob?”

20 “Yes, it is, and that is my scarf.”

“Now go home, Bob. Good-bye.”



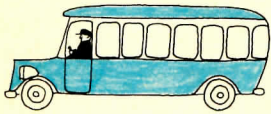
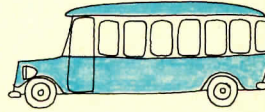
Step 3

1. in — on — under



Mr White

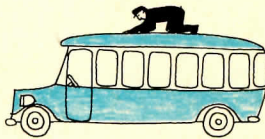
Mr White's bus



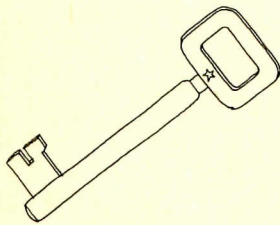
Mr White is **in** the bus.



Mr White is **under** the bus.

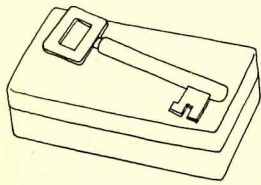
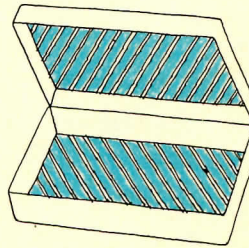


Mr White is **on** the bus.

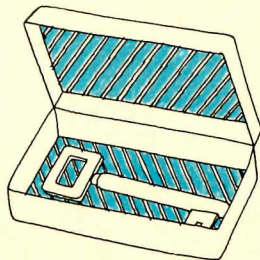


A key

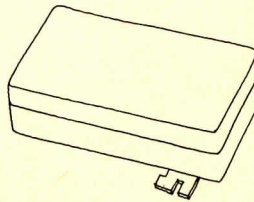
A box



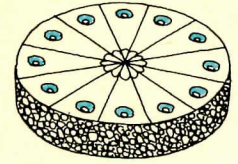
The key is **on** the box.



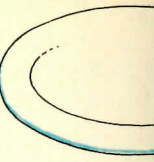
It is ...



It is ...



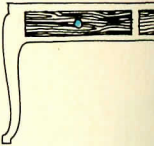
A cake



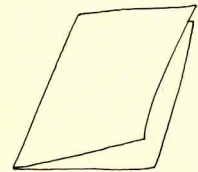
A plate



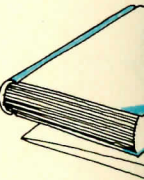
A clock



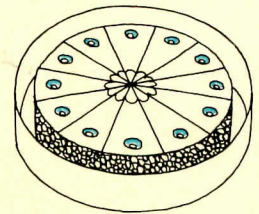
A desk



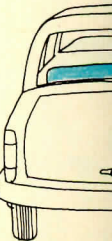
A piece of paper



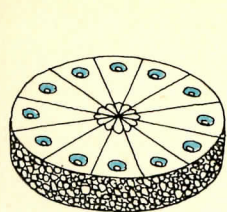
It is ...



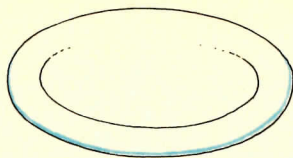
The cake is ...



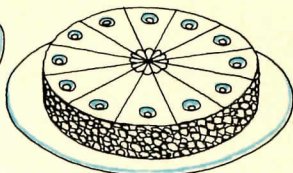
The cat is ...



A cake



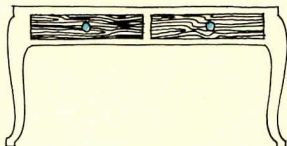
A plate



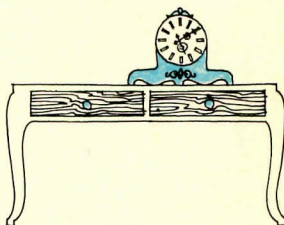
This cake is on the plate.



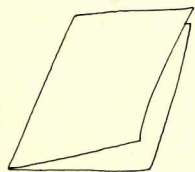
A clock



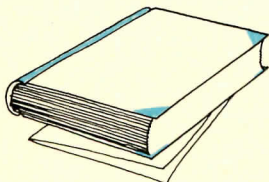
A desk



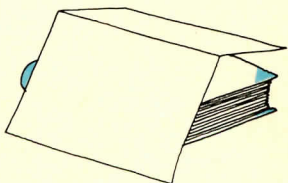
The clock is ...



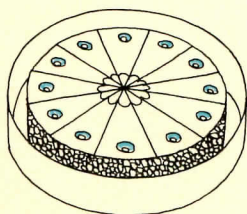
A piece of paper



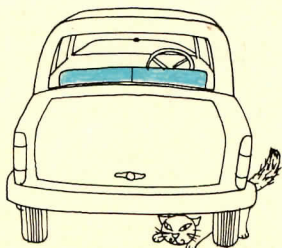
It is ...



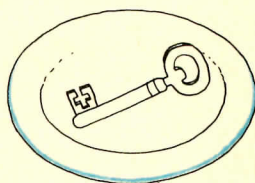
It is ...



The cake is ...



The cat is ...



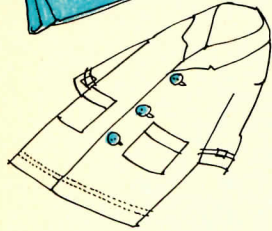
The key is ...



2. What is this?

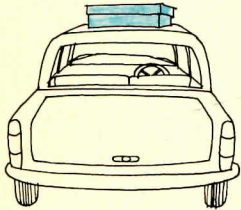
This is a bag.
What is it? —
A bag.

This is a pocket.
What is it? —
A pocket.



What is this?
And what is that?

3. What is in . . . , on . . . , under . . . ?



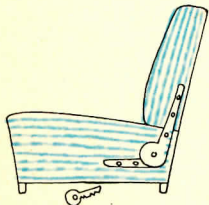
What is on the car?



What is in the bag?



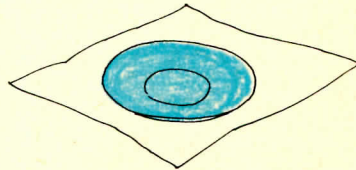
What is in the pocket?



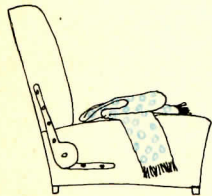
What is under
the seat?



What is on
David's head?



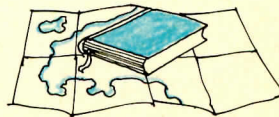
What is under
the plate?



What is on
the seat?



What is under
the desk?



What is under
the book?

4. Have you . . . ?

Have you a hat, Vivien? — Yes,
Have you a cap, David? — Yes,
Have you a white hat, Vivien? — No,
Have you a black cap, David? — No

Ask and answer

Have you a car (a book, a map,
a black cap, a cat, a black cat, a
a note-book, a blue pen, a white
coat)?

5. My — your

What have you on your head, Vivien?
I have a hat on my head.
What have you in your hand, David?
I have a map in my hand.

Ask and answer

What have you in your hand
(on your desk, under your desk, in

6. Some Orders

Maud, go to the window.
Open the window.
Shut the window.
Go back to your seat.
Thank you.

Bob, go to the door.
Open the door.
Oh, it is locked.
Go to my desk and fetch the key.
Now go back to the door and open
Thank you.

4. Have you . . . ?

Have you a hat, Vivien? — Yes, I have.
Have you a cap, David? — Yes, I have.
Have you a white hat, Vivien? — No, I haven't.
Have you a black cap, David? — No, I haven't.

Ask and answer

Have you a car (a book, a map, a blue hat, a black cap, a cat, a black cat, a white dog, a note-book, a blue pen, a white bag, a white coat)?



5. My — your

What have you on your head, Vivien? — A hat.
I have a hat on my head.
What have you in your hand, David? — A map.
I have a map in my hand.

Ask and answer

What have you in your hand
(on your desk, under your desk, in your bag)?

6. Some Orders

Maud, go to the window.
Open the window.
Shut the window.
Go back to your seat.
Thank you.

Bob, go to the door.
Open the door.
Oh, it is locked.

Go to my desk and fetch the key.
Now go back to the door and open it.
Thank you.

Peter, come to my desk.
Give me your book. Thank you.
Go back to your seat.

David, go to that corner.
Take that white box and put it on
Maud's desk.
Thank you.

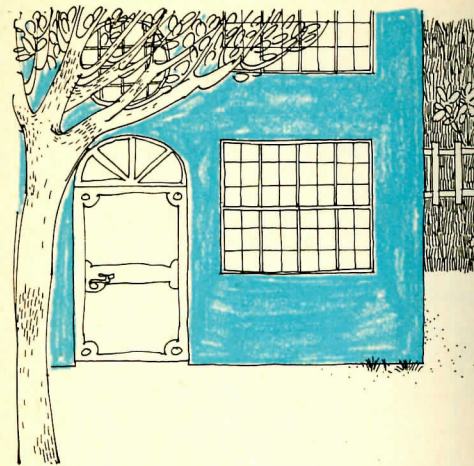
Vivien, please go to the board.
Now wipe the board.
Thank you.

〈Song: Happy Birthday〉

Hap-py birth-day to you! Hap-py birth-day to
you! Hap-py birth-day, dear Da-vid Hap-py birth-day to you!

Listen and say

- | | | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|--|
| [f] | [v] | [w] | [ai] | [ei] | |
| fetch | have | window | wipe | cake | |
| father | give | wipe | white | take | |
| Fog | David | white | my | plate | |
| scarf | Vivien | what | | paper | |
- | | | | | | | |
|-------|---|------|------|---|-----|---------------------------|
| put | — | good | this | — | is | This is Bob in the bus. |
| clock | — | dog | bus | — | has | Is this Bob's hat? No, it |
| hat | — | had | look | — | leg | is Bob's cap. What is in |
| black | — | bag | cap | — | Bob | the black paper bag? |
- | | | | |
|------|---|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| [w] | | A window. Wipe that window. | |
| | | A warm coat in a white box. | |
| | | What is in that white box? | |
| [v] | — | [w] | Give me that white scarf. |
| | | What have you in your hand, Vivien? | |
| | | David, have you a white scarf? | |
| [v] | — | [f] | David, fetch Vivien's scarf. |
| | | Vivien, give Mr Fog the scarf. | |
| [ai] | — | [ei] | My cake. |
| | | A white plate. | |
| | | Wipe that white plate, please. | |
| | | David, take my cake and put it on that white plate. | |
- Ordne nach den Lauten: [ai] — [ei] — [əu] — [au] white, coat, mouse, take, house, my, now, cake, wipe, no, go, paper, open, down, plate.



〈Father's Car Key〉

It is Monday morning.

Father: Mummy, fetch my coat and

Vivien, please wipe the car

5 David, take that white box

David: Is the car locked, Daddy?

Father: Oh, yes, it is.

David: Give me the car key, please.

Father: The car key? Oh, it's not in
10 pocket! Is it on my desk, David?

David: No, it isn't.

Father: Is it under the clock, Vivien?

Vivien: No, it isn't.

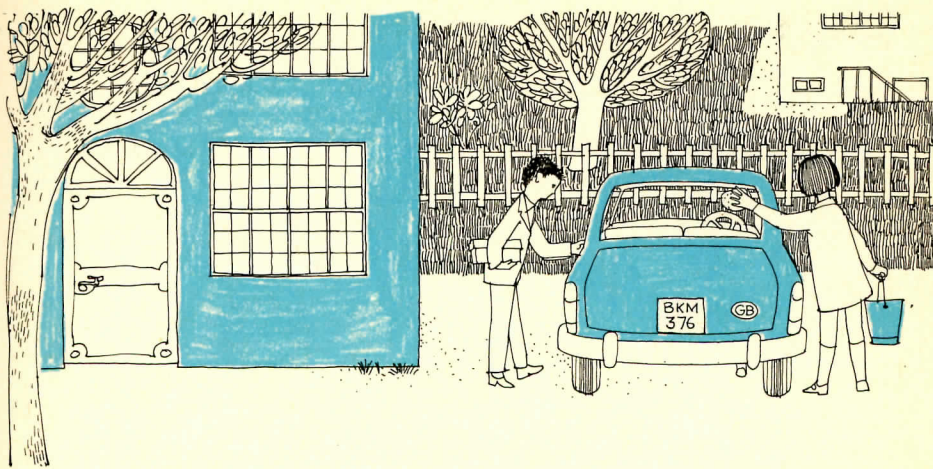
Father: Look under that piece
15 paper, David.

David: No, Father, it isn't there.

Father: Mummy, look in the cupboard
and in your handbag.

Mother: No, Daddy, your key is not
20 the cupboard. But — what is it
you in your hand?

Father: Oh, the key! Thank you, Mummy,
my, thank you. Good-bye.



〈Father's Car Key〉

It is Monday morning.

Father: Mummy, fetch my coat and my warm scarf, please.

Vivien, please wipe the car window.

5 *David:* Take that white box and put it under the seat in the car.

David: Is the car locked, Daddy?

Father: Oh, yes, it is.

David: Give me the car key, please.

10 *Father:* The car key? Oh, it's not in my pocket! Is it on my desk, David?

David: No, it isn't.

Father: Is it under the clock, Vivien?

Vivien: No, it isn't.

15 *Father:* Look under that piece of paper, David.

David: No, Father, it isn't there.

Father: Mummy, look in the cupboard and in your handbag.

20 *Mother:* No, Daddy, your key is not in the cupboard. But — what have you in your hand?

Father: Oh, the key! Thank you, Mummy, thank you. Good-bye.



Step 4

1. The Dent Family



This is Mr Dent.
He has a white shirt on.
He has a pipe in his mouth.
Mr Dent is a man.



This is Mrs Dent.
She has a blue skirt on.
She has a handbag in her hand.
Mrs Dent is a woman.



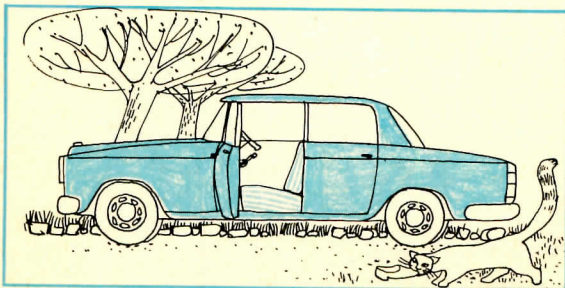
This is David Dent.
David is a boy.
He has a cap on
his head.



This is Vivien Dent.
Vivien is a girl.
She has a ball under
her arm.



This is Shirley Dent.
She is a little girl.
She has an apple in
her hand.



This is Mr Dent's car.
It is a big car.
Its door is open.

This is Mrs Dent's cat.
It has a long tail.
It has a shoe in its
mouth.



This is a boy.
... has a coat on.
... has a cap
on ... head.



This is a w
... has a s
... has a l
on ... hea



This is a ...
... has a map
in ... hand.



This is a ...
... has a l
under ...

2. Mr Dent's House

This is Mr Dent's house
It is new.
It has a big door.
Its door is white.
One window is open.

This is Mrs Dent's kitchen.
It has a yellow wall
and a black and white floor.
It has a big window
with a white curtain.
What is on the table?
A cup, a saucer and a plate
with a small cake.



This is a boy.
 ... has a coat on.
 ... has a cap
 on ... head.



This is a woman.
 ... has a skirt on.
 ... has a hat
 on ... head.



This is a dog.
 ... has a short tail.
 ... has a bag
 in ... mouth.



This is a ...
 ... has a map
 in ... hand.



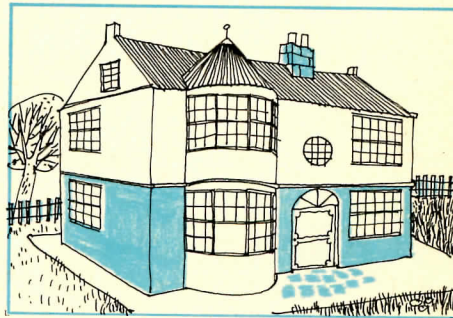
This is a ...
 ... has a box
 under ... arm.



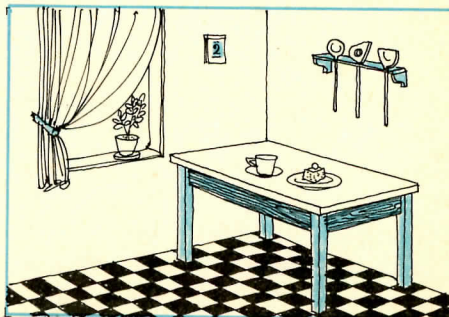
This is a ...
 ... has a plate
 in ... hand.

2. Mr Dent's House

This is Mr Dent's house
 It is new.
 It has a big door.
 Its door is white.
 One window is open.



This is Mrs Dent's kitchen.
 It has a yellow wall
 and a black and white floor.
 It has a big window
 with a white curtain.
 What is on the table?
 A cup, a saucer and a plate
 with a small cake.



3. Is he ...? Has he ...?

Is Mr Dent David's father?

Yes, he is.

Is Mrs Dent Maud's mother?

No, she isn't.

Is the car big?

Yes, it is.

Has Mr Dent a handbag?

No, he hasn't.

Has Mrs Dent a skirt on?

Yes, she has.

Has the kitchen a white wall?

No, it hasn't.

Is Vivien Shirley's sister?

Has the cat a tail?

Has the car a big window?

Is the house new?

Has David a white shirt on?

Has Shirley an apple in her hand?

Is Vivien's ball big?

Has Mr Dent a car?

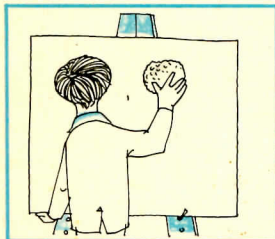
Has Shirley a pipe in her mouth?

Has David a skirt on?

Has the cat a hat on its head?

Is the cake on the floor?

4. What is he doing?



Bob is wiping the board.



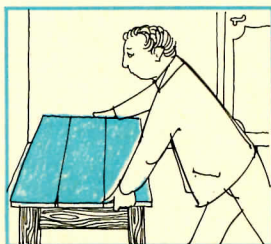
Maud is going to the window.



David is eating a cake.



Susan is painting a picture.



Mr Miller is pushing the table to the wall.



Shirley is playing with a ball.

What is Bob doing? - He is wiping

What is Maud doing? - She is ...

What is David doing? - ...

What is Susan doing? - Go on.

Go to the board. What is he doing?

board. What is she doing? She is

5. Who?

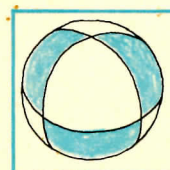
Who is wiping the board?

Who is playing with a ball?

Who is eating a cake?

Who is painting a picture?

6. Some new words



This ball is big.

Is that

No, it is



This shoe is dirty.

Is that

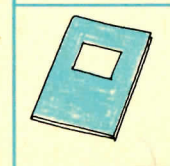
No, it is



This house is old.

Is that

No, it is



This exercise-book

Is that

No, ...

What is Bob doing? – He is wiping the board.

What is Maud doing? – She is ...

What is David doing? – ...

What is Susan doing? – *Go on.*

Go to the board. What is he doing? He is going to the board. Wipe the board. What is she doing? She is ... *Go on.*

5. Who?

Who is wiping the board?

Who is playing with a ball?

Who is eating a cake?

Who is painting a picture?

Who has a new house?

Who has an apple in her hand?

Who has a pipe in his mouth?

Who is a little girl?

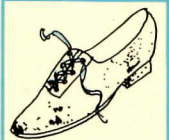
6. Some new words



This ball is big.

Is that ball big?

No, it is small.



This shoe is dirty.

Is that shoe dirty?

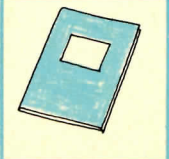
No, it is clean.



This house is old.

Is that house old?

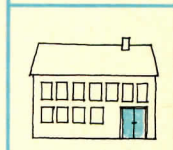
No, it is new.



This exercise-book is thin.

Is that exercise-book thin?

No, ...



Listen and say

1. [e]	[ə:]	[æ]	[ɔ:]	[ɪ]	
head	her	hat	short	wall	<i>but:</i> blue
leg	shirt	bag	board	ball	long
pen	skirt	apple	wall	girl	floor
yes	dirty	has	your	tail	black
fetch	girl	cap	door	table	Miller
desk	curtain	map	small	apple	play

2. 'a' or 'an'?

Example: a book, a hand – an exercise-book, an apple

... curtain, ... old curtain, ... skirt, ... white skirt, ... big apple, ... apple,
 ... arm, ... long arm, ... short tail, ... old book, ... thin exercise-book,
 ... exercise-book.

3. [ðə] or [ði]

Example: the [ðə] book, the hand – the [ði] arm, the apple

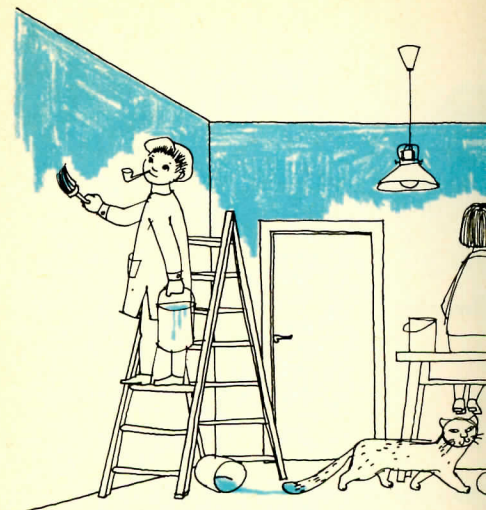
the kitchen, the old coat, the blue exercise-book, the apple, the thin arm, the
 arm, the floor, the long curtain, the old key, the hat, the pen, the order, the
 example, the picture.

4. [ɪ]	a little girl	<i>but:</i> family
	a short tail	look
	a small apple	long
	an old table	Mr Miller

[ə:] a shirt, a skirt, a curtain, dirty
 The girl has a dirty skirt on.

5. Lies und schreibe

[bʌs]	[aɪ]	[gəʊ]	[dɔ:]	[sku:l]	[si:t]
[kʌp]	[maɪ]	[nəʊt]	[bɔ:l]	[blu:]	[ki:]
[ʃʌt]	[paɪp]	[kəʊt]	[bɔ:d]	[ju:]	[pi:s]
[sʌm]	[waɪt]	[ʃəʊ]	[jɔ:]	[ʃu:]	[hi:]
[kʌm]		['wɪndəʊ]	[smɔ:l]	[hu:]	[wi:]



<The Blue Kitchen>

The Dent family has a new house.

Mr and Mrs Dent are coming home.

Mrs Dent: "The house is so quiet. W

5 Mr Dent: "Go to the kitchen window

What a shock for Mrs Dent!

The curtain is on the floor in a corner

David is standing on a long ladder. L

10 his head, and his father's pipe in his

wall.

Vivien is sitting on the kitchen table

painting the other wall.

And Shirley? She is helping David

saucer, a plate and her shoe.

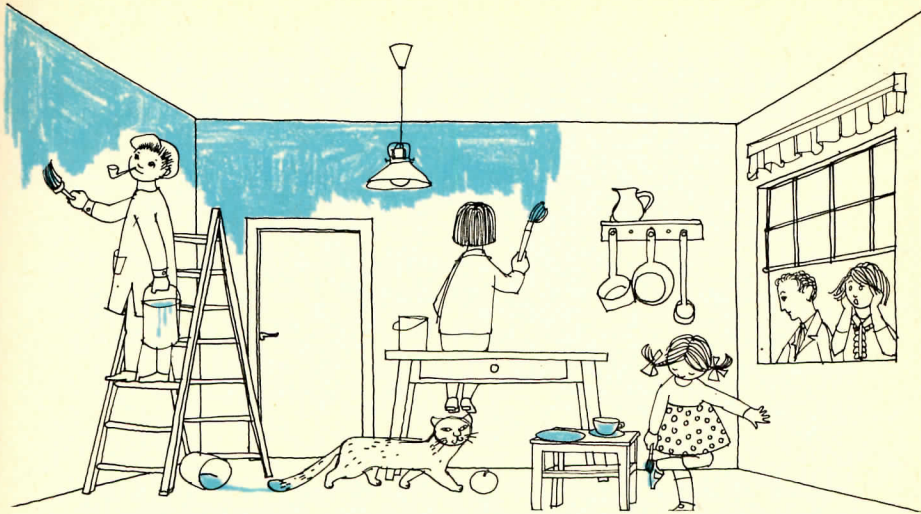
15 And what is the cat doing? Is it playing

Yes, it is. The blue paint is on the floor

The cat is playing ball with an apple

Mrs Dent: "David, Vivien! Come on

Go and wash. Oh, what a



<The Blue Kitchen>

The Dent family has a new house.

Mr and Mrs Dent are coming home.

Mrs Dent: "The house is so quiet. What are David and Vivien doing?"

5 Mr Dent: "Go to the kitchen window. It is open."

What a shock for Mrs Dent!

The curtain is on the floor in a corner.

10 David is standing on a long ladder. He has an old shirt on, an old cap on his head, and his father's pipe in his mouth. He is painting one kitchen wall.

Vivien is sitting on the kitchen table. She has an old skirt on and is painting the other wall.

And Shirley? She is helping David and Vivien. She is painting a cup, a saucer, a plate and her shoe.

15 And what is the cat doing? Is it painting, too?

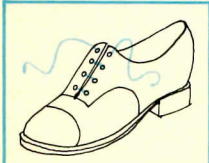
Yes, it is. The blue paint is on the floor and the cat's tail is in the paint. The cat is playing ball with an apple and is wiping the floor with its tail.

Mrs Dent: "David, Vivien! Come down! Shirley, you dirty little girl.

Go and wash. Oh, what a mess!"

Step 5

1. This is . . .



This is a shoe.
These are shoes.



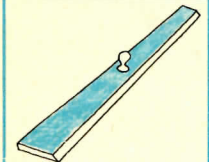
This is a sock.
These are socks.



This is a ring.
It is small.
These are rings.
They are small.



This is a jacket.
It is black.
These are jackets.
They are black.

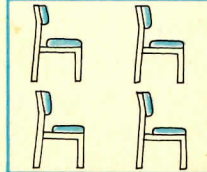
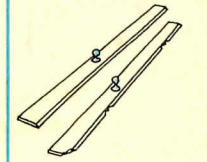
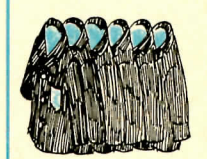
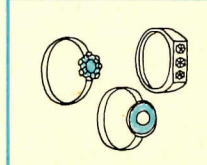
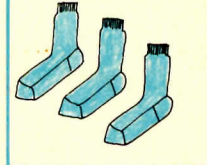


This is a ruler.
It is new.
These are two rulers.
They are old.

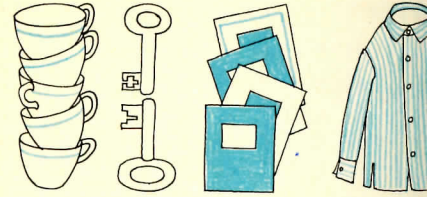


This is a chair.
It is old.
These are four chairs.
They are new.

These are . . .

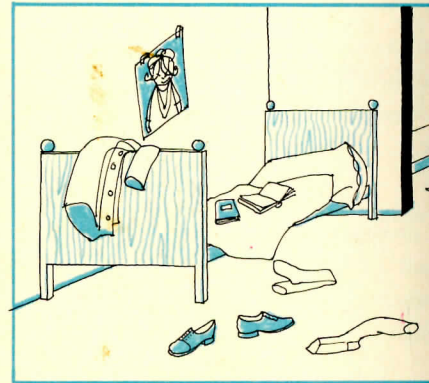


What are these?



2. Bob's and Maud's Rooms

This is Bob's room.
This is Bob's bed.
It is here, in his room.
These are Bob's shoes.
They are here, on the floor.
These are Bob's books.
They are here, on his bed.



3. Where?

Where is Bob's bed? It is here, in his room.
Where are his shoes? They are on the floor.
Where is his cap? It is . . .
Where is his coat? Where is his scarf?
Where are his exercise-books? Where are his books?

What are these?



2. Bob's and Maud's Rooms

This is Bob's room.

This is Bob's bed.

It is here, in his room.

These are Bob's shoes.

They are here, on the floor.

These are Bob's books.

They are here, on his bed.

That is Maud's room.

That is Maud's bed.

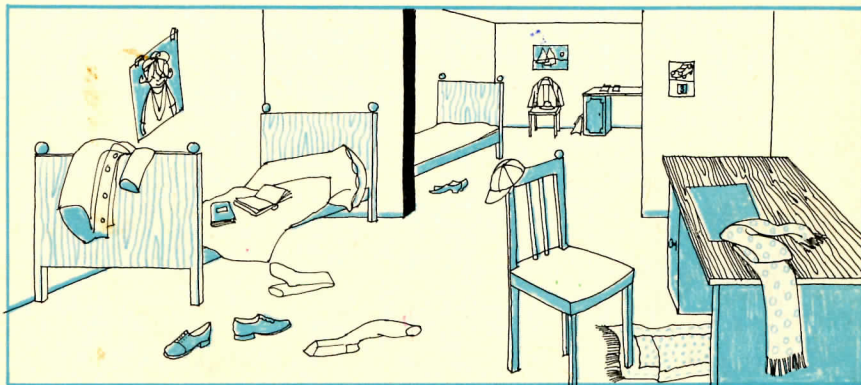
It is there, in her room.

Those are Maud's shoes.

They are there, under her bed.

Those are Maud's books.

They are there, on her desk.



3. Where?

Where is Bob's bed? It is here, in his room.

Where are his shoes? They are on the floor.

Where is his cap? It is . . .

Where is his coat? Where is his scarf? Where are his socks?

Where are his exercise-books? Where is Maud's jacket (hat, school-bag)?

4. He, she, they

Mr Dent is David's father.
Mrs Dent is David's mother.

They are David's parents.

David is an English boy.
Vivien is an English girl.

They are English.

Vivien has a short skirt on.
Shirley has a short skirt on, too.

They have short skirts on.

David has new shoes.
Shirley has new shoes, too.

They have new shoes.

Put in 'he, she, it' or 'they'

This is Mr Miller. ... has a house and a car.
Where is Mrs Miller? ... is in the kitchen.
What are Bob and Maud doing? ... are playing in the garden.
Where is my ball? ... is in that box.
Bob's socks are not new. ... are old.
Where is the orange? ... is on the table.

Is that door locked? No, ... isn't.
Is this girl English? No, ... is German.
Is this boy German? No, ... is English.

Wipe your shoes. ... are dirty.
What is Father doing? ... is reading a book.
Is it a German book? Yes, ... is.

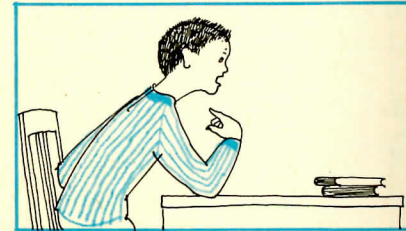
Have your parents a car? Yes, ... have.
Has the chair four legs? Yes, ... has.
Where is Mother? ... is in bed.
What is Susan doing? ... is making a cake.
Is the cake good? Yes, ... is.

5. His, her, their, our



David is cleaning **his** shoes.
Vivien is cleaning **her** shoes.

David and Vivien are cleaning **their** shoes. **They** are cleaning **their** shoes.



I am John.
I am Mike's friend.

We are not English,
We are doing **our** homework.
We are learning German.

Put in 'his, her, their, our'

David is playing with ... dog. The dog is ...
Mother has a plate in ... hand. The plate is ...
in ... garden. We have four rooms. There is a ...
scarf on ... head. Has Mr Miller a car? ...
under ... car. We are cleaning ... rooms.
They are cleaning ... rooms. David is ...
work. Susan's friends have cups and saucers.

5. His, her, their, our



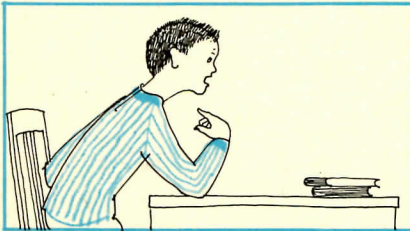
David is cleaning **his** shoes.
Vivien is cleaning **her** shoes.

David and Vivien are cleaning **their** shoes. **They** are cleaning **their** shoes.

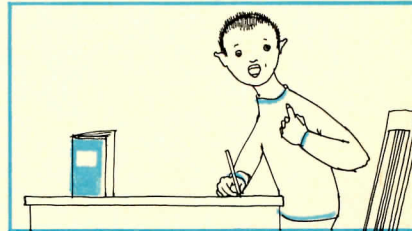


Bob is doing **his** homework.
Maud is doing **her** homework.

They are doing **their** homework.



I am John.
I am Mike's friend.



I am Mike.
John is my friend.

We are not English, **we** are American.
We are doing **our** homework.
We are learning German.

Put in 'his, her, their, our'

David is playing with ... dog. Those girls are helping ... parents.
Mother has a plate in ... hand. Those are Mr and Mrs Dent. They are
in ... garden. We have four rooms in ... house. That woman has a
scarf on ... head. Has Mr Miller a pen in ... pocket? Look, Mr Fog is
under ... car. We are cleaning ... shoes. My sister is making ... bed.
They are cleaning ... rooms. David and his sister are doing ... home-
work. Susan's friends have cups and plates and a cake in ... bags.

6. Some Orders

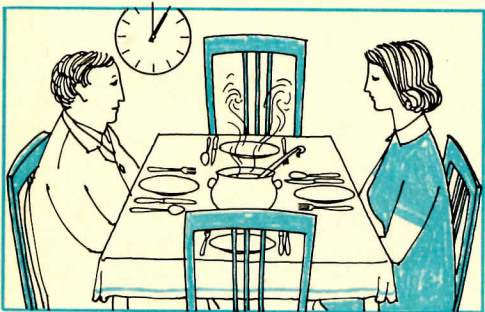
Open your books at page 12.
Read the first sentence.
Is this word right? — No, it is
wrong.

Come to the board, Tom.
Write the sentence on the board.
Please write it again.
Thank you.

7. Bob's and Maud's Lunch



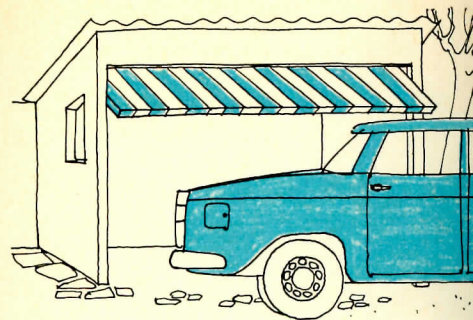
It is 12 o'clock.
Mother is in the kitchen.
What is she doing?
She is preparing lunch.



It is one o'clock.
Lunch is ready.
It is on the table.
Mother and Father are alone.
Bob and Maud are not at
home.



It is two o'clock.
Bob and Maud are eating
their lunch.
The lunch is cold, but Bob
and Maud are hungry.

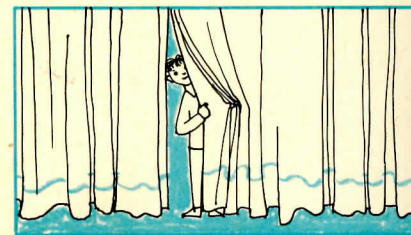


8. in front of — behind

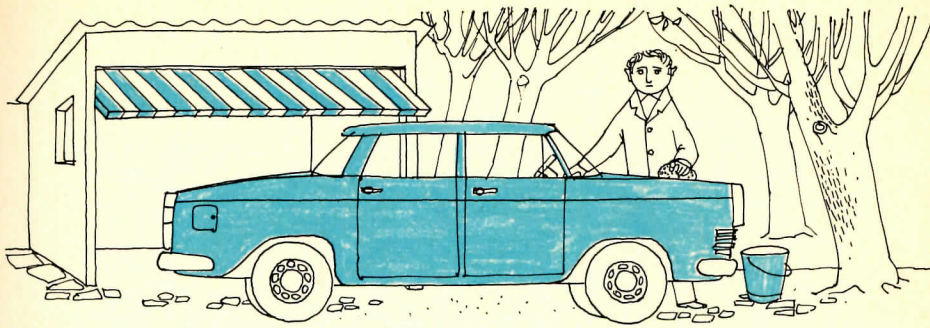
This is Mr Miller with his car.
Mr Miller has a large car.
It is an English car, not a German car.
Where is the car? Is it in the garage
the garage.
And where is Mr Miller? He is standing
What is he doing? He is cleaning the



Where is the bus?



Where is the boy?



8. in front of — behind

This is Mr Miller with his car.

Mr Miller has a large car.

It is an English car, not a German car.

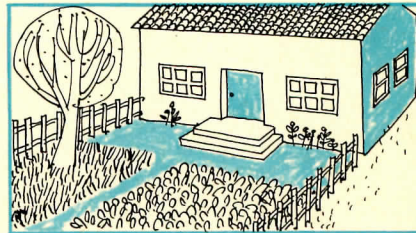
Where is the car? Is it in the garage? — No, it is standing in front of the garage.

And where is Mr Miller? He is standing behind his car.

What is he doing? He is cleaning the car.



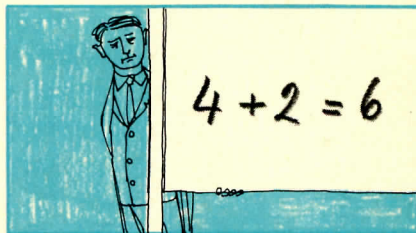
Where is the bus?



Where is the garden?



Where is the boy?



Where is Mr Fog?

Listen and say

- | | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|-------|------|
| 1. [ʒ] | [dʒ] | [r] | [ɛə] | [iə] |
| garage | German | friend | chair | here |
| | jacket | right | their | |
| | page | ready | there | |
| | large | read | where | |
| | orange | hungry | | |

2. [ʒ] — [dʒ] John's jacket
a large garage
My jacket is in the garage.

- [dʒ] — [tʃ] a jacket on a chair
John's lunch
a large table in the kitchen
a page with a large picture
Fetch my jacket.

- [ʃ] — [ʒ] Shut the garage.

- [ɛə] — [iə] Their books are here.

3. -s = [s] or -s = [z]

Example: a sock — two socks [s], a plate — two plates [s]
a leg — two legs [z], a shoe — two shoes [z]

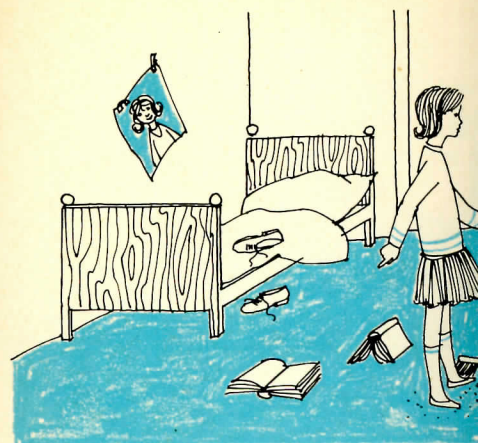
Go on with: chair, skirt, wall, pipe, shirt, apple, exercise-book, key, window, seat, dog, clock, bag, cake, curtain, tail, room, ring, ruler.

4. Read

a car	a car and a bus
a chair	The chair is blue.
where?	Where are your socks?
The books are here.	The books are on the table.
	The books are here on the table.
Is this black or blue?	Is that a jacket or a coat?

5. Write these words

[naʊ] = now	[fɔ:t] =	[teɪl] =	['dʒɜ:mən] =
[nəʊ] = ...	[ʃʌt] =	['teɪbl] =	[lɑ:dʒ] =



<Tit for Tat >

It is Saturday morning. Bob is not at home. Maud is cleaning the room.

She is in Bob's room. Bob's sock is under the bed, his right shoe under the bed on the floor. And what is that behind the door?
"Bob! Bob!" — "Yes, Maud!"

"Your room is terrible. Look! This book is on the table, this shoe on the bed, and your new jacket? It is there under the bed, please!"

"I'm sorry, Maud, but I'm doing my best."

It is twelve o'clock.

"Maud! Maud! I'm so hungry!"

15 "Yes, Bob." — "Is our lunch ready?"

"No, Bob, it isn't. I'm cleaning the room."

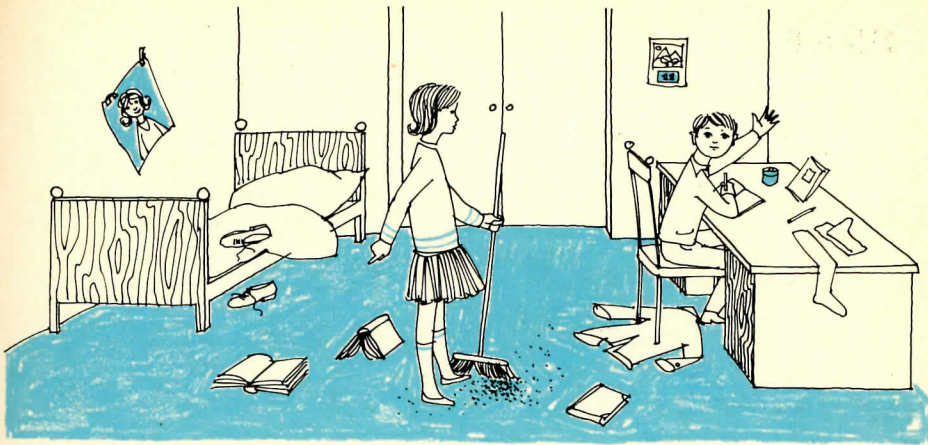
One o'clock.

"Maud!" — "Yes, Bob?" — "Is our lunch ready?"

20 "No, Bob, it isn't. I'm cleaning the room. Please prepare our lunch, please."

Two o'clock. Bob is in the kitchen.

Tit for tat!



〈Tit for Tat〉

It is Saturday morning. Bob and Maud are alone. Their parents are not at home. Maud is cleaning the rooms.

She is in Bob's room. Bob's socks are on the table, his left shoe is on the bed, his right shoe under the bed. Where are his books? They are on the floor. And what is that behind the curtain? A large orange.

"Bob! Bob!" — "Yes, Maud!"

"Your room is terrible. Look! These books on the floor, those socks on the table, this shoe on the bed, that shoe under the bed. And where is your new jacket? It is there under that chair. Come and help me, please!"

"I'm sorry, Maud, but I'm doing my homework."

It is twelve o'clock.

"Maud! Maud! I'm so hungry!"

15 "Yes, Bob." — "Is our lunch ready?"

"No, Bob, it isn't. I'm cleaning your room."

One o'clock.

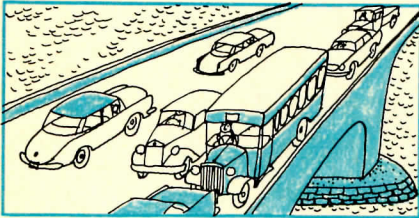
"Maud!" — "Yes, Bob?" — "Is our lunch ready?"

20 "No, Bob, it isn't. I'm cleaning your room. Go to the kitchen and prepare our lunch, please."

Two o'clock. Bob is in the kitchen. He is preparing their lunch.

Tit for tat!

Step 6



1. There is, there are

This is a bridge near London.

What is on the bridge?

A bus.

There is a bus on the bridge.

Many cars, too.

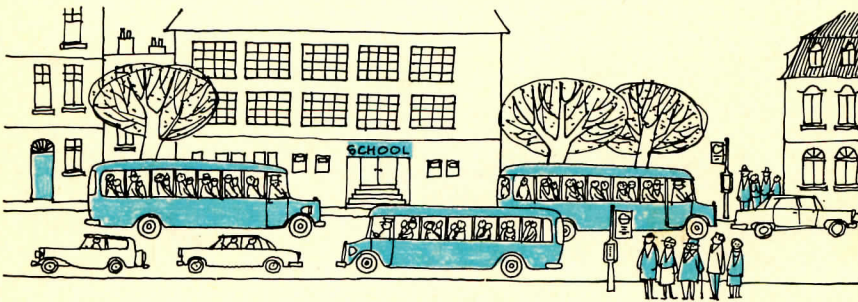
There are many cars on the bridge.

This is a house.

There is a garden in front of the house.

There is a tree in the garden.

There are two trees behind the house.



This is a street.

There is a school in the street.

There are three buses in the street.

There are two bus stops in the street.

There are ... (cars)

There are ...

There are ...

2. How many?

How many plates are on this table?

There are four plates on the table.

How many cups and saucers are on the table? There are ...

How many cakes are on the table?

There is one cake on the table.

How many oranges are on the table?

How many windows are in your classroom?

How many doors are in your classroom?

(desks, chairs, tables, pictures, maps)

You have two eyes, two ears, one nose.

How many arms (legs, hands, fingers)?

3. The Numbers

0 zero ['ziərəʊ]

1 one [wʌn]

2 two [tu:]

3 three [θri:]

4 four [fo:]

5 five [faiv]

6 six [siks]

7 seven ['sevn]

8 eight [eit]

9 nine [nain]

10 ten [ten]

11 eleven [i'levn]

12 twelve [twelv]

13 thirteen [θi:'ti:n]

14 fourteen [fo:'ti:n]

15 fifteen [fi:'ti:n]

16 sixteen [si:'ti:n]

17 seventeen [sev'n'ti:n]

18 eighteen [i:'ti:n]

19 nineteen [nain'ti:n]

20 twenty [twenti]

21 twenty-one [twenti-'wʌn]

22 twenty-two [twenti-'tu:]

23 twenty-three [twenti-'θri:]

24 twenty-four [twenti-'fo:]

25 twenty-five [twenti-'fi:]

<4. Rhyme>

One, two,
that's my shoe.
Three, four,
shut the door.

Five, six,
those are sti
Seven, eight
fetch the pla

2. How many?

How many plates are on this table?

There are four plates on the table.

How many cups and saucers are on the table? There are ...

How many cakes are on the table?

There is one cake on the table.

How many oranges are on the table?

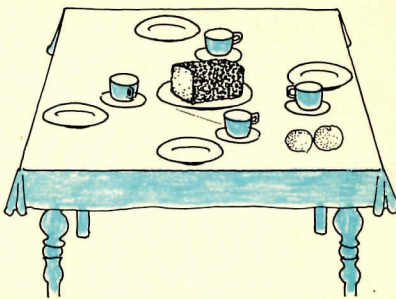
How many windows are in your classroom?

How many doors are in your classroom?

(desks, chairs, tables, pictures, maps, boards, boys, girls)

You have two eyes, two ears, one nose and one mouth.

How many arms (legs, hands, fingers) have you?



3. The Numbers

0 zero ['ziərəʊ]	13 thirteen ['θɜ:ˈti:n]	26 twenty-six
1 one [wʌn]	14 fourteen ['fɔ:ˈti:n]	27 twenty-seven
2 two [tu:]	15 fifteen ['fifˈti:n]	28 twenty-eight
3 three [θri:]	16 sixteen ['siksˈti:n]	29 twenty-nine
4 four [fɔ:]	17 seventeen ['sevnˈti:n]	30 thirty ['θɜ:ti]
5 five [faiv]	18 eighteen ['eiˈti:n]	40 forty ['fɔ:ti]
6 six [siks]	19 nineteen ['nainˈti:n]	50 fifty ['fifti]
7 seven ['sevn]	20 twenty ['twenti]	60 sixty ['siksɪ]
8 eight [eit]	21 twenty-one	70 seventy ['sevnti]
9 nine [nain]	22 twenty-two	80 eighty ['eiti]
10 ten [ten]	23 twenty-three	90 ninety ['nainti]
11 eleven [i'levn]	24 twenty-four	100 a (one) hundred
12 twelve [twelv]	25 twenty-five	['hʌndrəd]

<4. Rhyme>

One, two,
that's my shoe.
Three, four,
shut the door.

Five, six,
those are sticks,
Seven, eight,
fetch the plate.

Nine, ten,
start again.

5. What colour is it?

Vivien has a new dress.

It is red.

She has new shoes.

They are brown.

She has a new coat.

It is blue.

She has a new scarf.

It is yellow.

And she has a new bag.

It is green.

What colour is Vivien's dress?

It ...

What colour are her shoes?

They ...

Go on with questions and answers. What colour are your eyes? What colour is the floor in your classroom? What colour are your shoes? What colour is your jacket (your dress, your shirt, your skirt)? What colour is a tree (an apple, your English book, your English exercise-book)?

6. The Alphabet

a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i
ei	bi:	si:	di:	i:	ef	dʒi:	eɪtʃ	ai
j	k	l	m	n	o	p	q	r
dʒei	kei	el	em	en	əu	pi:	kju:	ɑ:
s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	
es	ti:	ju:	vi:	'dʌblju:	eks	wai	zed	

<7. The Alphabet Song>

8. Spell your Name

What is your name?

My name is Bob Miller.

Spell your name, please.

B - o - b M - i - double l - e - r.

How old are you?

I am ten.

My name is David Dent:

D - a - v - i - d D - e - n - t.

My address is 57 Garden Street.

I am eleven years old.

I have two sisters but no brothers.

Now ask your friends in the class:

What is your name?

Spell your name, please, and write it

How old are you?

Can you write? Can you s

Spell your name, but spell

<9. A Code Message>

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 a b c d

Bob's code message to his friend Davi

340h 30L83,
j74h4 8i 0 20a4 kd34h

What is it? 3 for D,
4 for E
0 for A
h for R
3 for ... G

Dictate some code messages to your frien

8. Spell your Name

What is your name?

My name is Bob Miller.

Spell your name, please.

B - o - b M - i - double l - e - r.

How old are you?

I am ten.



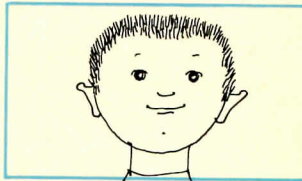
My name is David Dent:

D - a - v - i - d D - e - n - t.

My address is 57 Garden Street.

I am eleven years old.

I have two sisters but no brothers.



Now ask your friends in the class:

What is your name?

Spell your name, please, and write it down.

How old are you?

Can you write? Can you spell?

Spell your name, but spell it well!

<9. A Code Message>

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 a b c d e f g h i j k L m n o p.

Bob's code message to his friend David in the classroom:

340h 30L83,
j74h4 8i 0 20a4 kd34h L8L84d'i 34ia.
lel

What is it? 3 for D,

4 for E.

0 for A

h for R

3 for ... *Go on.*

Dictate some code messages to your friends.

Listen and say

- | | | | | |
|---------|---------|-------|---------|-------------|
| 1. [tr] | [dr] | [θr] | [br] | [fr] |
| tree | dress | three | brown | friend |
| street | address | | bridge | in front of |
| | | | brother | |

2. Take the dress and go to this address.
 My brother's jacket is in that brown box.
 John and his three friends are on the bridge.
 Mrs Brown's house is in Bridge Street.
 Shirley's friend has a brown dress.
 The bus is standing at the bus stop.
 Mr Brown, spell your name, please.

3. Ordne nach den Lauten

- | | | |
|-----|------|----------------------------------------------------|
| [æ] | [ei] | |
| map | make | hand, thank, name, stand, plate, table, cat, page, |
| bag | take | back, cake, that, black, hat, cap. |
| ... | ... | |

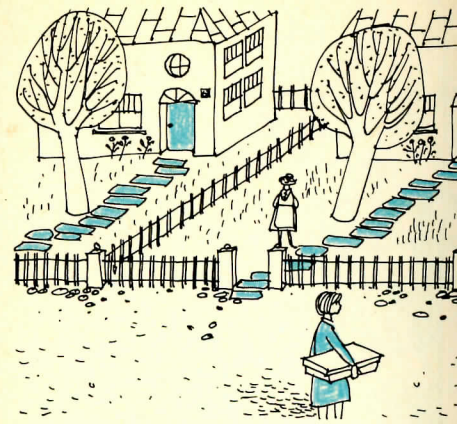
- | | | |
|-----|------|------------------------------------------------------|
| [ɔ] | [əu] | |
| dog | go | stop, sock, home, clock, no, fog, Bob, open, locked, |
| box | nose | pocket, note-book, long, on, window. |
| ... | ... | |

- | | | |
|------|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| [i] | [ai] | |
| it | white | his, five, with, wipe, thick, thin, pipe, big, sit, Mike, is, I, |
| this | write | ring, my. |
| ... | ... | |

4. The Plural with [-iz]

Ex.: a sentence — two sentences
 a box — two boxes

- | | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------------|----------|---------------|------------|-----------|
| a nose | — two... | a bridge | — three... | an address | — four... |
| an orange | — seven... | a house | — many... | a bus | — five... |
| a page | — eighty-six... | a dress | — thirteen... | a lunch | — four... |



〈What Number, please?〉

Mrs Brown is a dressmaker. Jane is

Mrs Brown: This box is for Mrs S
 Write her name and a

5 *Jane:* Please spell Spalding,

Mrs Brown: S - p - a - l - d - i - n
 Take a number 3 bus.
 is a tree in front of it.

Jane is in Bridge Street at five o'
 10 address? Oh, dear! The piece of pa
 pocket. There are many yellow ho

What number is Mrs Spalding's ho
 A woman is in the garden of numb

15 "Excuse me," says Jane. "This dre
 "This is not Mrs Spalding's house.

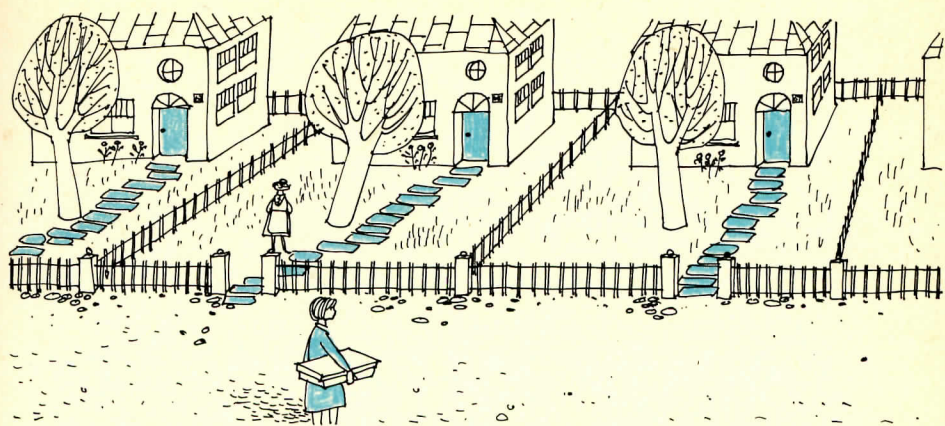
But number 81 is not Mrs Spalding
 "Try number 65," says the old mar

"Try number 99," says the woman
 Poor Jane! Number 99 is not the ri

20 A boy is coming along the street.

Jane: Excuse me, please. I am

The boy: I am John Spalding and I
 Please come with me. Our



〈What Number, please?〉

Mrs Brown is a dressmaker. Jane is Mrs Brown's daughter.

Mrs Brown: This box is for Mrs Spalding, Jane. It is her new dress.
Write her name and address on a piece of paper.

5 *Jane:* Please spell Spalding, Mother.

Mrs Brown: S - p - a - l - d - i - n - g. Her address is 27, Bridge Street.
Take a number 3 bus. It is a little yellow house, and there
is a tree in front of it. Hurry up! Mrs Spalding is waiting.

Jane is in Bridge Street at five o'clock. Now, what is Mrs Spalding's
10 address? Oh, dear! The piece of paper with the address is not in Jane's
pocket. There are many yellow houses and many trees in the street.
What number is Mrs Spalding's house? Is it 72?

A woman is in the garden of number 72.

"Excuse me," says Jane. "This dress is for Mrs Spalding."

15 "This is not Mrs Spalding's house. Try number 81," says the woman.
But number 81 is not Mrs Spalding's house.

"Try number 65," says the old man at number 81.

"Try number 99," says the woman at number 65.

Poor Jane! Number 99 is not the right address.

20 A boy is coming along the street.

Jane: Excuse me, please. I am looking for Mrs Spalding's house.

The boy: I am John Spalding and I am looking for a girl with a big box.
Please come with me. Our house is number 27.

**Orders and Questions
in the Classroom**

1. 

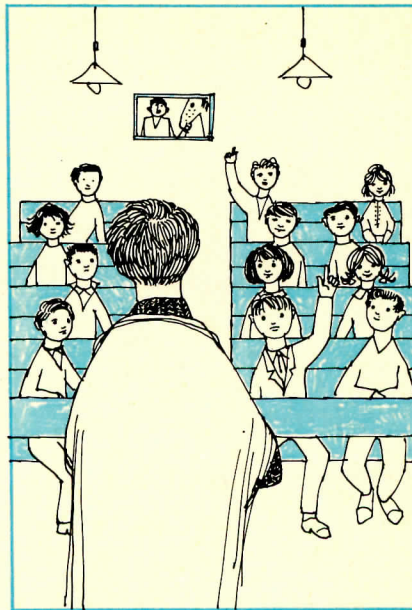
Open your books at page 10.
Read the first paragraph.
Read it again. (Read it once more.)
Begin at the top of the page.
Repeat the last line.
Speak louder.

Say it in English.
Read all together. Stop.
Spell the last word.
Translate the last sentence.
Now shut your books.
Answer my questions.

2. Come to the board.
Take a piece of chalk.
Write the second sentence on the board.
Underline the first two words.
There is a mistake.
Correct the mistake.
Now wipe out the wrong word.
Copy the sentence in your exercise-books.

4. 

Are there any questions?
May I ask a question, please?
Is that right?
Is this sentence correct?



3. Listen to me.
I am going to dictate some sentences.
Write the sentences in your exercise-books.
Collect the exercise-books.
Look, there is a piece of paper under your desk.
Pick it up and put it in the waste-paper-basket.

5. 

Who can draw a car on the board?
Who can spell the word 'exercise'?
What is the plural of 'ear'?
What is the meaning of 'ruler'?

1 A. A Week in Micky's Life

My name is Micky. I am the class mouse. My hole is in the floor near the window. Here is a week in my life.

5 *Sunday:* Sunday is very quiet. There is nothing interesting in our classroom today. No fun and no food. No boys or girls. My exercise-book is not good. It is paper. It is David's exercise-book.

10 *Monday:* The teacher says: "David, stand here, please. Show me your exercise-book. What is this? Look, there is a hole in your exercise-book. Stand in the corner."

Poor David! I am sorry, David. I will forgive me.

Tuesday: I have a good supper in the evening. There is a cake under Tom's desk. Under Susan's desk there is an apple and a ham sandwich.

20 *Wednesday:* The classroom is quiet. The children are writing an exercise. I am sitting in the corner near the board. Suddenly I shout from David: "Oh, look! A mouse!"

25 The girls are on their desks. They are shouting: "Help, help!"

Why? I am only a poor little mouse.

Thursday: My breakfast is good. My mother has bread and butter and jam in his house.

30 And there is tea with milk and sugar in a cup.

Friday: A bad day! Bob's dog is in the classroom. A black dog, an awful dog. I am in my hole.

1 A. A Week in Micky's Life

My name is Micky. I am the classroom mouse. My hole is in the floor near the window. Here is a week in my life.

5 *Sunday:* Sunday is very quiet. There is nothing interesting in our classroom. No fun and no food. No boys or girls. My dinner is not good. It is paper. It is David's exercise-book.

10 *Monday:* The teacher says: "David, come here, please. Show me your exercise-book. What is this? Look, there is a hole in your book. Stand in the corner."

Poor David! I am sorry, David. Please
15 forgive me.

Tuesday: I have a good supper in the evening. There is a cake under Tom's desk, under Susan's desk there is an apple and a ham sandwich.

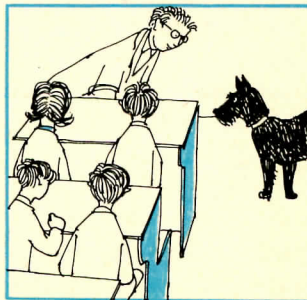
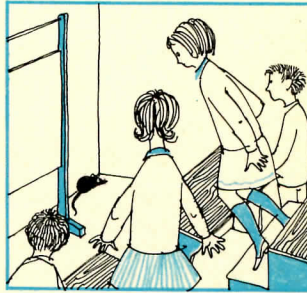
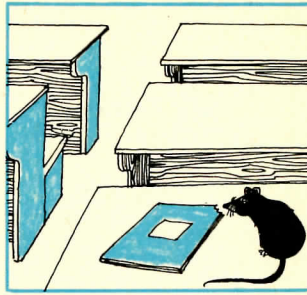
20 *Wednesday:* The classroom is quiet. The children are writing an exercise. I am sitting in the corner near the board. Suddenly a shout from David: "Oh, look! A mouse, a mouse!"

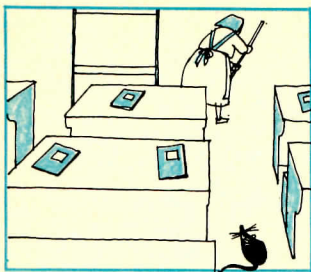
25 The girls are on their desks. They are shouting: "Help, help!"

Why? I am only a poor little mouse.

Thursday: My breakfast is good. Mr Fog has bread and butter and jam in his desk. And there is tea with milk and sugar in his
30 cup.

Friday: A bad day! Bob's dog is in our classroom. A black dog, an awful animal. I am in my hole.





Saturday: There is no school today. Mrs Brown, the cleaner, is in the class-room. She is cleaning under the pupils' desks with her brush. Oh dear! She is taking my food away. There are only the boys' exercise-books for breakfast, lunch, tea and supper on Saturday and Sunday. I haven't an easy life!

<What's at the End of it?>

Teacher: Bob, spell the word 'mouse'.

Bob: [em — əu — ju: — es].

Teacher: But what's at the end of it?

Bob: A tail, Miss Baker!

Exercises

1 Answer these questions

1. Who is Micky? 2. Where is Micky's hole? 3. What is Micky's Sunday dinner? 4. What is in David's exercise-book on Monday? On Monday there is ... 5. Has Tom an apple under his desk? 6. What is under his desk? There is a ... 7. What is under Susan's desk? There is an ... 8. Now look at the Wednesday picture: What are the children doing? 9. Who is Mrs Brown? 10. Is she in the class-room on Saturday? 11. What is she doing? 12. Has Micky an easy life?

2 A Reading Exercise
[ðə] or [ði]? § 1

a) The exercise-book and the note-book, the question and the answer, the arm and the leg, the nose and the ear, the morning and the evening, the apple and the orange, the man and the animal, the eye and the mouth.

- | | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|------------------|
| b) the exercise | the new exercise | the old exercise |
| the book | the interesting book | the school book |
| the window | the clean window | the open window |
| the girl | the English girl | the hungry girl |
| the boy | the American boy | the thin boy |
| the hat | the new hat | the old hat |

c) Put 'a' or 'an' in front of the nouns in a) and b).

Ex.: an exercise-book and a note-book. *Go on.*

3 What is under the desk? § 1

a) Put in 'a' or 'an' Under David's desk ... note-book and

Under Maud's desk there is ... piece ... orange.

Under Mike's desk there is ... old cap, ... Under Susan's desk there is ... picture ham sandwich and ... little mouse.

b) Now ask your friends.

Ex.: Peter, what is under your desk? *Go on.*

4 Whose ball is it? § 7

Ex.: There is a ball. It is Vivien's. There is a cat. It is my parrot.

(handbag on the table — Mother; pipe chair — Peter; skirt on the bed — Susan; cap in the school-bus — David; cat in the garden — Maud; dress in the box — the boys)

5 A Sentence Switchboard § 6

a) Form sentences *Ex.:* Bob has a new address.

Bob		
Bob's parents		
Bob and Maud	(to have)	
My friend		

b) Form questions and give answers.

Ex.: Has Bob a new address? — Yes, he has. Hasn't Bob a new address? — Yes, he has.

6 Possessive Pronouns § 8

a) Bob's room is ... My parents' car ... The cat's tail is ... Shirley's skirt is ... The boys' room is ...

3 What is under the desk? § 1

a) Put in 'a' or 'an'

Under David's desk there is ... exercise-book, ... pen, ... note-book and ... apple.

Under Maud's desk there is ... piece of paper, ... open book, ... key and ... orange.

Under Mike's desk there is ... old cap, ... key, ... ruler and ... English book.

Under Susan's desk there is ... picture, ... brush, ... American book, ... ham sandwich and ... little mouse.

b) Now ask your friends.

Ex.: Peter, what is under your desk? Peter answers: Under my desk there is...
Go on.

4 Whose ball is it? § 7

Ex.: There is a ball behind the curtain. Whose ball is it?
It is Vivien's ball.

There is a car in front of our house. Whose car is it?
It is my parents' car. Go on.

(handbag on the table — Mother; pipe in the garage — Father; coat on the chair — Peter; skirt on the bed — Susan; house near the school — parents; cap in the school-bus — David; cat in the classroom — the girls; note-book under the desk — Maud; dress in the box — my sister; map on the floor — the boys)

5 A Sentence Switchboard § 6

a) Form sentences

Ex.: Bob has a new address.

Bob	(to have)	a dog and a cat.
Bob's parents		many English books.
Bob and Maud		a new address.
My friend		blue eyes.

b) Form questions and give answers.

Ex.: Has Bob a new address? — Yes, he has. No, he hasn't.

Hasn't Bob a new address? — Yes, he has. No, he hasn't.

6 Possessive Pronouns § 8

a) Bob's room is clean.	His room is clean.
My parents' car is old.	Their ...
The cat's tail is long.	...
Shirley's skirt is short.	...
The boys' room is locked.	...

- b) What colour is Maud's hat? Her hat is green.
 What colour are the dog's eyes? ...
 What colour is my sister's new dress? ...
 What colour is Peter's shirt? ...
- c) I have dirty shoes. My shoes are dirty.
 Bob and Peter have a new room. Their room is new.
 You have a small cat. Your ...
 The cleaners have new brushes. ...
 I have a red nose. ...
 You have a red nose. ...
 You have a black bag. ...
 Bob has blue eyes. ...
 We have a big house. ...

7 A Game

There are many things on the teacher's desk in the classroom, one thing from each boy or girl:

a cap, an English book, a pen, a map, a scarf, a key, a note-book, a handbag, a ball, an apple, a cup, a saucer, a picture, a shoe, an exercise-book, a sock, a jacket, a ruler, an orange, a ham sandwich, a box, a piece of paper, a brush, a hat, a bag.

Teacher: Peter, is this your note-book?

Peter: No, it isn't my note-book, it is Barbara's note-book.

Wolfgang, is this your orange?

Wolfgang: No, it isn't my orange, it is Dieter's orange.

Gisela, is this your ...?

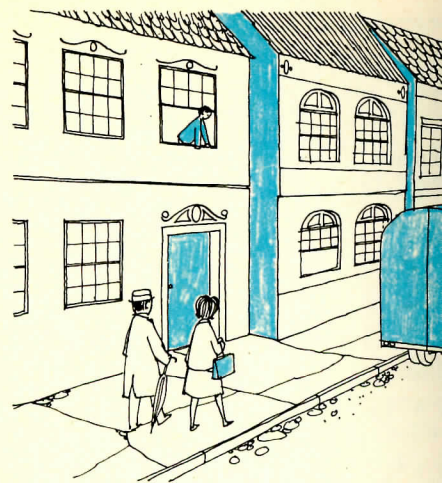
Go on.

8 Opposites

a good apple — a bad apple a locked door — an... door
 a black shoe — a ... shoe a big ball — a ... ball
 a long scarf — a ... scarf a new coat — an... coat
 a thick book — a ... book a dirty hand — a ... hand

9 Translation

1. Es ist Sonnabend morgen. 2. Maud und ihre Mutter machen Bobs Zimmer sauber. 3. Bobs Schuhe sind auf seinem Bett, seine Socken unter einem Stuhl. 4. Einige offene Bücher sind auf dem Tisch nahe bei der Butter. 5. Eine Apfelsine ist unter dem Stuhl und ein Apfel hinter dem Vorhang. 6. Maud hilft ihrer Mutter. 7. Maud: „Hilfe! Hilfe! Eine Maus unter Bobs Bett!“ 8. Maud steht auf einem Stuhl und ihre Mutter auch. 9. Sieh, Bobs Katze ist im Zimmer. 10. Und wo ist die Maus? 11. Sie ist wieder (*back*) in ihrem Loch.



2 A. Moving Day at the Bartons'

It is a quarter to seven. A big van. The men are taking away the furniture. Jack is still in bed. He is rubbing his eyes. He is very happy. Their new house is big.

It is ten past seven. Jack is at the bathroom. The water is running. His sister, Jane, is washing. "Oh, Jane, hurry up, please!" "I'm sorry, Jack, but I'm washing."

It is a quarter past seven. Mr and Mrs Barton are having breakfast.

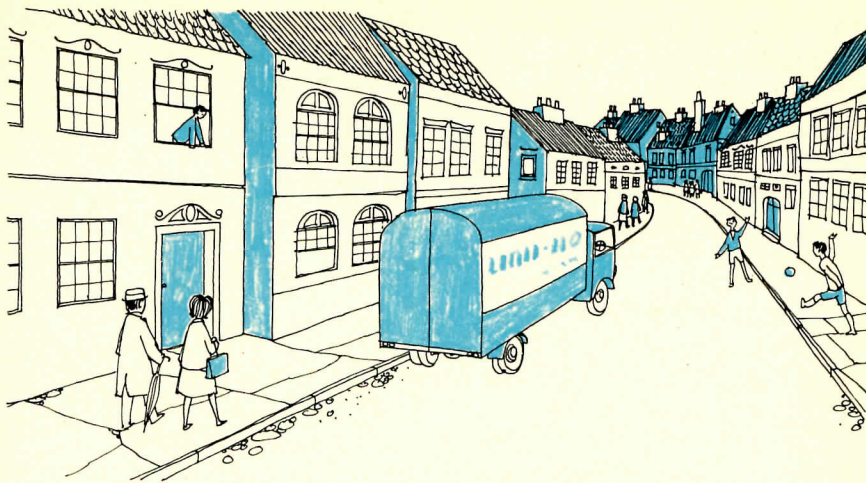
Jack: Good morning, Mummy.

Mrs Barton: Good morning, Jack. Please. Go upstairs and get your schoolbag.

Jack: But, Mummy, Jane is in the kitchen.

Mrs Barton: All right! Sit down and eat your breakfast.

It is twenty past seven. Jack is eating his breakfast with milk and sugar, an egg, toast, and jam. Jack is as hungry as a wolf.



2 A. Moving Day at the Bartons'

It is a quarter to seven. A big van is standing in front of the house. The men are taking away the furniture. They are making an awful noise. Jack is still in bed. He is rubbing his eyes. Today is moving day. Jack is very happy. Their new house is big and modern.

It is ten past seven. Jack is at the bathroom door. The door is locked. The water is running. His sister, Jane, is washing.

"Oh, Jane, hurry up, please!"

"I'm sorry, Jack, but I'm washing. Come back in ten minutes, please."

It is a quarter past seven. Mr and Mrs Barton are sitting in the kitchen. They are having breakfast.

Jack: Good morning, Mummy. Good morning, Daddy.

Mrs Barton: Good morning, Jack. No breakfast in your pyjamas, please. Go upstairs and dress.

Jack: But, Mummy, Jane is in the bathroom.

Mrs Barton: All right! Sit down and have breakfast.

It is twenty past seven. Jack is eating his breakfast. He has porridge with milk and sugar, an egg, toast, bread, butter, marmalade and tea. Jack is as hungry as a wolf.

It is eight o'clock. The men are carrying tables, chairs, boxes, beds and wardrobes to the van.

"That's all. Let's go. Lock the doors," says a man.

Jack is leaving the bathroom. What a surprise: his bedroom is empty!

5 "Mummy, Mummy, where are my clothes?"

His clothes are in the wardrobe. The wardrobe is in the van. And the van is gone. Poor Jack!

B. What's the Time?



It is three o'clock.

It is twenty (minutes) to four.



It is five (minutes) past three.

It is a quarter to four.



It is a quarter past three.

It is ten (minutes) to four.



It is twenty-three minutes past three.

It is seven minutes to four.

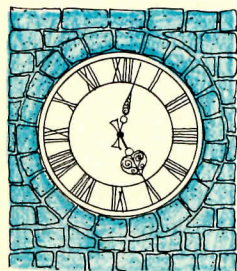


It is half past three.

It is four o'clock.



15 minutes are a quarter of an hour, 30 minutes are half an hour, 45 minutes are three quarters of an hour, 60 minutes are an hour.



What's the time by this clock?

What's the time by your watch?



<A Lovely Day>

This is a lovely day today
The sky is blue, it is not
The sun shines bright, and
This is a lovely day today

Exercises

1 Answer these questions

1. Where is the van?
2. Where is Jack's bedroom?
3. Who is in the big van?
4. What are Jack's parents doing at a quarter past three?
5. What is Jack's bedroom like?
6. What is Jack's bedroom like in the big van?
7. What is Jack's bedroom like at nine o'clock?
8. Where are Jack's clothes?

2 The Present Participle § 11

a) Write down the present participles of the verbs.
Ex.: to look - looking
to sit - sitting
to make - making

to stand, to open, to fetch, to ask, to call, to go, to eat, to paint, to push, to play, to write, to spell, to rub, to run, to wash, to speak, to shut.

b) Now put the present participles in columns.

- | | | |
|------------|------------|-----------|
| 1. looking | 2. sitting | 3. making |
| standing | ... | ... |
| ... | ... | ... |

3 To be. Put in 'am', 'is' or 'are' § 10

1. Mr and Mrs Bart ... having breakfast at the table: bread, butter, jam, ...
2. ... there porridge, too?
3. Yes, there are ... four cups, four saucers, four plates.
4. ... washing. And Jack ... in bed."
5. ... as he is ...
6. ...

<A Lovely Day>

This is a lovely day today.
The sky is blue, it is not grey.
The sun shines bright, and we can say:
This is a lovely day today.

Exercises

1 Answer these questions

1. Where is the van at a quarter to seven? — It is ...
2. Where is Jack at a quarter to seven? — He is ...
3. Who is in the bathroom at ten past seven?
4. What are Jack's parents doing at a quarter past seven? 5. Who has breakfast in his pyjamas? 6. What is Jack's breakfast on moving day? 7. What is in the big van? 8. Where are Jack's clothes? 9. Is the van in front of the house at nine o'clock?

2 The Present Participle

§ 11

a) Write down the present participles.

Ex.: to look — looking
to sit — sitting
to make — making

to stand, to open, to fetch, to ask, to come, to take, to put, to wipe, to do, to go, to eat, to paint, to push, to play, to read, to clean, to learn, to help, to write, to spell, to rub, to run, to wash, to hurry, to dress, to carry, to have, to speak, to shut.

b) Now put the present participles in column 1, 2 or 3.

- | | | |
|------------|------------|-----------|
| 1. looking | 2. sitting | 3. making |
| standing | ... | ... |
| ... | ... | ... |

3 To be. Put in 'am', 'is' or 'are'

§ 10

1. Mr and Mrs Barton ... sitting in the kitchen.
2. They ... having breakfast.
3. There ... many things on the table: bread, toast, butter, marmalade and tea.
4. ... there porridge, too?
5. Yes, there ... porridge with milk and sugar.
6. There ... four cups, four saucers, four plates and four eggs.
7. Mr Barton says: "I ... hungry. Where ... Jack and Jane?"
8. Mrs Barton: "Jack, Jane, where ... you? Breakfast ... ready."
9. Jane: "I ... in the bathroom, I ... washing. And Jack ... in bed."
10. Jack, some minutes later: "Good morning, Mummy and Daddy. I ... as hungry as a wolf."

4 What is the time? § 9



It is ...



It is ...



It is ...



It is ...



It is ...



It is ...



It is ...



It is ...

5 What is Mrs Barton doing? § 12



It is half past seven.
Mrs Barton is making porridge in the kitchen.



It is ...
Mrs Barton ...



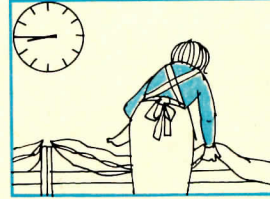
It is ...
...



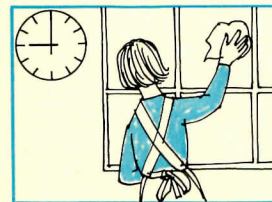
...



...



...



...



...



...

6 A Sentence Switchboard § 12

a) *Form sentences*
Ex.: Look, our t

Look,	Mummy and Daddy	(to be
	our teacher	
	we	
	I	
	my brother	
	our cleaner	

b) *Form questions and give answers.*
Ex.: Is our teacher leaving the room?

7 At the Bartons' § 12



Jack, Jane and their parents are in the room.
The dog and the cat are there, too.
What is Father doing? He is sitting and reading.
What is Mother doing? She is ...
What is ...
Go on with questions and answers!

8 A Game: What am I doing? § 12

One pupil is standing and asking questions.
something, wash

He is asking questions:
Am I cleaning my shoes?
Am I painting a picture?
Am I washing my hands?
Go on with other questions and answers.

6 A Sentence Switchboard § 12

a) *Form sentences.*

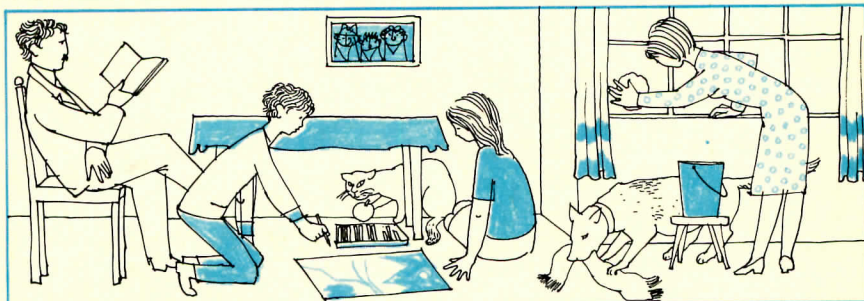
Ex.: Look, our teacher is leaving the room.

Look,	Mummy and Daddy	(to be)	carrying a big box.
	our teacher		having breakfast.
	we		sitting in the kitchen.
	I		standing in front of the house.
	my brother		leaving the room.
	our cleaner		eating ham sandwiches.

b) *Form questions and give answers.*

Ex.: Is our teacher leaving the room? — Yes, he is. No, he isn't.

7 At the Bartons' § 12



Jack, Jane and their parents are in the kitchen.

The dog and the cat are there, too.

What is Father doing? He is sitting on a chair and is reading a book.

What is Mother doing? She is ...

What is ...

Go on with questions and answers:

8 A Game: What am I doing? § 12

One pupil is standing in front of the class. He is 'doing' something, washing his hands, for example.

He is asking questions:

Am I cleaning my shoes?

Am I painting a picture?

Am I washing my hands?

The other pupils are answering:

No, you aren't cleaning your shoes.

No, you aren't painting a picture.

Yes, you are washing your hands.

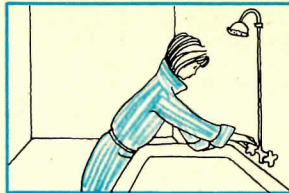
Go on with other questions and answers.

9 Some Prepositions



Jane is going
to the bathroom.

Question: Where? (Wohin?)



Jane is
in the bathroom.

Question: Where? (Wo?)

Put in 'in' or 'to'

- Jane is sitting ... her room.
- She has a book ... her hand and is reading.
- "Jane, please go ... the kitchen and fetch the sugar for our tea," says Mummy.
- "Mummy, the sugar is not ... the kitchen."
- "Go ... Father's room. The sugar is on his desk. Carry it ... your room."
- Mummy and Jane have tea at 5 o'clock.
- They have milk ... their tea, too.

10 Put in the missing words

- My bed is in my ...
- My clothes are in my ...
- The mouse is in its ...
- Our car is in the ...
- The trees are in the ...
- The pipe is in Father's ...
- The cap is on Bob's ...
- The note-books are on the ...

II Translation

- Heute ist Umzugstag für Müllers (the Millers).
- Es ist halb acht.
- Ein großer Möbelwagen steht vor dem Haus.
- David und Susanne helfen ihren Eltern.
- David trägt Stühle zum Möbelwagen.
- Susanne trägt ihre Kleider zum Möbelwagen.
- Die Männer nehmen die Kleiderschränke, die Betten und die Tische fort.
- Mutter und David sind in der Küche.
- Die Küche ist leer.
- David frühstückt: Brot, Butter und eine Apfelsine; kein Haferflockenbrei und kein Tee am Umzugstag.
- Die Katze sitzt in der leeren Küche.
- Sie ist hungrig, aber es gibt (there is) keine Milch für sie am Umzugstag.

Let's prepare lesson 3

What Jack and Jane are doing now

It is 7 o'clock: Jack and Jane are washing

It is 7.30: They are dressing upstairs

It is 7.45: They are having breakfast

It is 8.30: They are going to school

What they always do

They wash every morning

They dress every morning

They have breakfast every day

They go to school from Monday to Friday

3 A. David and his Pen-friend

David is sitting in his room and doing his homework. Suddenly the door-bell rings. David puts his pen down and runs to the door. There is a letter in the letter-box. It is from his German pen-friend, Dieter.

"Tell me what you do every day, David," says Dieter. "What are your favourite subjects? How do you spend your free time? I wonder whether your teachers are strict. What is your time-table?"

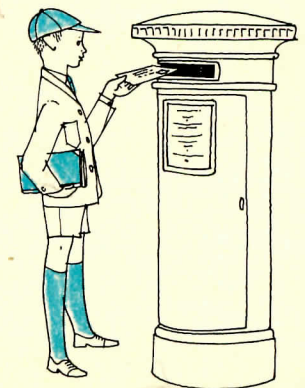
Here is David's answer to Dieter.

Dear Dieter,

Thank you for your letter. You are very kind. My mother wakes me up at ten to ten. I wash, brush my teeth, and dress. At ten to eight and I leave the house fifteen minutes. But I'm a good runner. I finish my morning prayers at nine o'clock.

Lessons begin twenty minutes later. School dinner is at half past twelve. We have soup "SOS" (same old soup), but it is not very good.

We have lessons again in the afternoon. They begin after tea. What a bore!



English is my favourite subject. I like mathematics. I don't like physics. I don't like us a lot of homework. We play football in winter. We have a little love for it, but I take a little rest every day. I must go now. Write soon.

3 A. David and his Pen-friend

David is sitting in his room and doing his homework. Suddenly the door-bell rings. David puts his pen down and runs to the door. There is a letter in the letter-box. It is from his German pen-friend, Dieter.

“Tell me what you do every day,” he writes.
“What are your favourite subjects at school?
I wonder whether your teachers are strict?
What is your time-table?”

Here is David's answer to Dieter's letter.

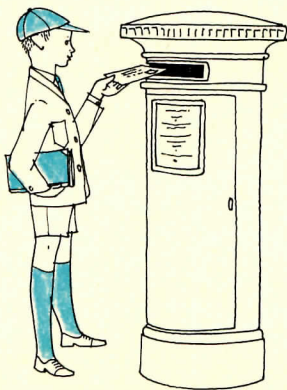
Dear Dieter,

Thank you for your letter. You want to know what I do every day.

Mother wakes me up at ten to eight with my morning tea. I get up, wash, brush my teeth, and dress. After that I have breakfast at ten past eight and I leave the house fifteen minutes later. I miss the bus sometimes. But I'm a good runner. I always reach my school in time for morning prayers at nine o'clock.

Lessons begin twenty minutes later. We get free milk in the morning. School dinner is at half past twelve. My friend, Jack Barton, calls the soup “SOS” (same old soup), but he eats it with a good appetite.

We have lessons again in the afternoon until four o'clock. Homework begins after tea. What a bore!



English is my favourite subject, but I hate mathematics. The mathematics teacher gives us a lot of homework.

We play games on Friday afternoons — football in winter, cricket in summer.

We have no school on Saturdays. I lie in bed a little longer. My sister calls me “lazybones”, but I take no notice. Saturday is my favourite day.

I must stop now. Mother is calling me.

Your English friend,
David



B. Reporter Jack Quick



Jack Quick is a newspaper reporter. Here he is asking Mr Brown questions.

Are you a tennis player, Mr Brown?

Yes, I play tennis every Saturday.



Is Mr Brown playing tennis at this moment?

No, he isn't. He is smoking a cigar.



You read the newspaper every day, Mr Brown?

Yes, I read the newspaper every morning after breakfast.



Is he reading the newspaper at this moment?

No, ...



Have you time to read books?

Yes, I read books every week-end.



Is he reading a book at this moment?



Have you many letters to dictate every day?

Yes, I dictate at least twenty letters every day.



Is he dictating a letter at this moment?



Are you a tea-drinker?

Yes, I drink seven cups of tea every day.



Is he drinking a cup of tea at this moment?



You go home at 5 o'clock?

Yes, I go home at 5 o'clock every day.



Is he going home at this moment?

Thank you very much, Mr Brown. Good-bye.

The next morning after breakfast Mr Brown reads in his newspaper: Mr Brown plays tennis every Saturday.

He reads the newspaper every morning after breakfast.

He reads books every week-end. *Go on.*

<A Riddle>

There is a little green house,
And in the little green house there
And in the little brown house there
And in the little yellow house there
And in the little white house there

Exercises

1 Read David's letter again and tell me ...

1. ... when David's lessons begin.
 2. ... when David begins his homework.
 3. ... when David's favourite day is.
 4. ... when David's lessons begin.
 5. ... what you know about the school.
 6. ... when David begins his homework.
 7. ... what David's favourite subject is.
 8. ... what David and his friends do.
 9. ... what David's favourite day is.
- Now write down your answers.

2 David's Time-table

Name: *David Dent*

		1	2	
Time	9.0— 9.20	9.20— 10.0	10.0— 10.40	10.40— 11.0
Monday		Maths	History	
Tuesday		History	Music	
Wednesday	Assembly	Maths	French	Break
Thursday		Maths	English	
Friday		Maths	English	

<A Riddle>

There is a little green house,
 And in the little green house there is a little brown house,
 And in the little brown house there is a little yellow house,
 And in the little yellow house there is a little white house,
 And in the little white house there is a little heart.

Exercises

1 Read David's letter again and tell me ...

1. ... when David gets up. He gets up ...
2. ... when David has breakfast. He has ...
3. ... when he leaves the house.
4. ... when David's lessons begin.
5. ... what you know about the school dinner.
6. ... when David begins his homework.
7. ... what David's favourite subject is.
8. ... what David and his friends do on Friday afternoons.
9. ... what David's favourite day is.

Now write down your answers.

2 David's Time-table

Name: *David Dent*

First Form

		1	2		3	4		5	6	7
Time	9.0— 9.20	9.20— 10.0	10.0— 10.40	10.40— 11.0	11.0— 11.40	11.40— 12.20	12.20— 2.0	2.0— 2.40	2.40— 3.20	3.20— 4.0
Monday	Assembly	Maths	History	Break	Music	English	Lunch Break	French	Science	Rel. Educ.
Tuesday		History	Music		English	Maths		Geog- raphy	French	Science
Wednesday		Maths	French		English	Geog- raphy		English	Physical Training (P.T.)	
Thursday		Maths	English		Art or Woodwork			French	Music	
Friday		Maths	English		French	History		Games		

Read the time-table.

- a) Say: The first lesson on Monday is mathematics, from twenty past nine to ten o'clock. The second lesson on Monday is history, from ... The third (fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh) lesson ...

Now write your time-table in English. The English word for 'Biologie' is 'biology' [bai'ɒlədʒi].

- b) David has mathematics on Monday, Tuesday, ... David has history on ...
Go on.

3 What we do every school-day and every Saturday § 15

- a) On school-days I get up at eight o'clock. Then I wash and brush my teeth. After that I dress and clean my shoes. Some minutes later I have breakfast. After breakfast I go to school.

In the morning Bob and I get up at eight o'clock. Then we ... Go on.

In the morning Bob and Maud get up at eight o'clock. Then they ... Go on.

- b) On Saturdays I get up late. After breakfast I read an interesting book or paint a picture. Then I clean my father's car. After that I play tennis.

On Saturdays David gets up late. After breakfast he ... Go on.

On Saturdays Susan gets up late. After breakfast she ... Go on.

On Saturdays David and Susan get up late. After breakfast they ... Go on.

- c) Every school-day Mother wakes David up. She ...

(to prepare breakfast, to make tea and porridge, to wipe the table, to clean the rooms, to read the newspaper, to prepare lunch)

4 A Sentence Switchboard § 15

Ex.: My pen-friend writes a letter every week.

I	to write a letter	every day.
My pen-friend	to play games	every week.
We	to eat toast	every Saturday.
Mike's brother	to learn some new words	every week-end.

5 David is ill § 15

It is Saturday afternoon. David is ill. He is lying in bed, but he wants to know what everybody is doing.

He asks:

What is Father doing?

What are Susan and Vivien ... tennis.
doing?

His mother answers:

He is **cleaning** the car. You know he **cleans** the car every Saturday afternoon.

... every Saturday afternoon.

What is Jack doing? ... letter
... every
What is Maud doing? ... a bo
... every

6 Present Continuous or Present Ordinary? § 15

1. Mrs Brown
2. Micky says
(to clean)

3. We ... an exercise every Friday.
4. It is 5 o'clock: Dieter ... a letter
5. Look, the dog ... with Father's l
6. My sisters ... tennis every week-
7. It is half past eight: Father ... t
8. Father ... the house at half past

7 Translation

Hier ist Dieters
Lieber David!

1. Danke schön für Deinen langen I
Tag tue. 3. Es gibt keinen Morgente
auf. 5. Ich wasche mich, putze die
frühstücke mit meiner Schwester u
Milch zum Frühstück. 8. [Die] Unt
9. Wir haben ³jeden ⁴Tag ¹eine ²Eng
sisch (*French*). 11. Wir gehen ²um 1
richtsstunden am Nachmittag, aber
13. Ich hasse englische Hausaufgabe
15. Mein Lieblingstag ist Sonntag.

Let's prepare lesson 4

Mother:

"Where is David? Where is he?"
"Fetch him, please."

Mother five minutes later:

"Where is Vivien? Where is she?"
"Fetch her, please."

Mother five minutes later:

"Where are Vivien, David and Fath
Where are they?"
"Fetch them, please. Lunch is ready

What is Jack doing? ... letters.
 ... every week-end.
 What is Maud doing? ... a book.
 ... every day after tea.

6 Present Continuous or Present Ordinary? §15

1. Mrs Brown ... the classroom every day. (to clean)
2. Micky says: "Look, Mrs Brown ... the classroom." (to clean)
3. We ... an exercise every Friday. (to write)
4. It is 5 o'clock: Dieter ... a letter with his father's pen. (to write)
5. Look, the dog ... with Father's hat. (to play)
6. My sisters ... tennis every week-end. (to play)
7. It is half past eight: Father ... the house. (to leave)
8. Father ... the house at half past eight every morning. (to leave)

7 Translation

Hier ist Dieters Brief:

Lieber David!

1. Danke schön für Deinen langen Brief.
 2. Du willst wissen, was ich jeden Tag tue.
 3. Es gibt keinen Morgentee für mich.
 4. Ich stehe um sieben Uhr auf.
 5. Ich wasche mich, putze die (*my*) Zähne und ziehe mich an.
 6. Ich frühstücke mit meiner Schwester um halb acht.
 7. Wir haben Toast und Milch zum Frühstück.
 8. [Die] Unterrichtsstunden beginnen um acht Uhr.
 9. Wir haben ³jeden ⁴Tag ¹eine ²Englischstunde.
 10. Ich lerne auch Französisch (*French*).
 11. Wir gehen ²um 1 ³Uhr ¹heim.
 12. Wir haben keine Unterrichtsstunden am Nachmittag, aber ich muß meine Hausaufgaben machen.
 13. Ich hasse englische Hausaufgaben.
 14. Wir haben Schule am Sonnabend.
 15. Mein Lieblingstag ist Sonntag.
- Dein Brieffreund Dieter

Let's prepare lesson 4

Mother:

"Where is David? Where is **he**?"

"Fetch **him**, please."

Mother five minutes later:

"Where is Vivien? Where is **she**?"

"Fetch **her**, please."

Mother five minutes later:

"Where are Vivien, David and Father?"

Where are **they**?"

"Fetch **them**, please. Lunch is ready."

Vivien:

"**He** is in the garden."

Father:

"**She** is in the garden."

Shirley:

"**They** are in the garden."

A. Happy Days for Jane

Jane is very happy. Her school report is excellent. Mr and Mrs Barton are proud of their daughter.

The next day Jane sees a letter on the table in the living-room. It is for her. Jane is surprised. Her parents are watching her. Jane looks at the letter. Yes, the letter is for her, but there is no stamp on it. At last she opens the envelope. Inside she finds a card with two sentences: *Go to the sitting-room. Look on your father's desk.*

Jane goes to the sitting-room, and she finds another card on the desk: *Look in your bedroom upstairs.*

Jane rushes upstairs to her bedroom. On her bed she finds a card: *Look in the kitchen.*

Jane is very excited. She hurries downstairs. Her father is laughing. "Is it a surprise?" she asks him.

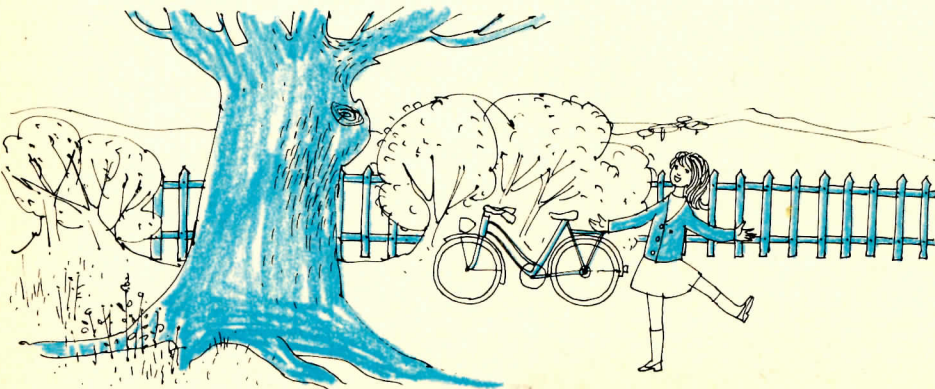
"Yes, it is," he says. "Hurry up, I haven't much time."

On the kitchen table Jane sees cherries, peaches and two boxes of matches. Near them is another card: *Look in the garden.*

In the garden behind the bushes she finds something wonderful. It is a bicycle — a beautiful new bicycle.

Jane dances round it. Then she rushes to her parents and hugs them.

"Is that bicycle for me?" she asks. "Oh, thank you, thank you. Let us all go on a bicycle tour next Sunday."



B. A Family Tree: The Dents and t



John and Mary Dent
(Grandfather and Grandmother)



Robert
(Grandfather)



Mr Dent Mrs Dent
(Father and Mother)

Dorothy
(Aunt)



David Vivien Shirley

David, Vivien and Shirley are Jack's nephew, and Vivien and Shirley are

<Who is it?>

Mr Fog is looking at a picture of
"Brothers and sisters have I none,
But this boy's father is my father."
Who is the boy in the picture?

<Proverbs>

A friend in need is a friend indeed.
All that glitters is not gold.
All is well that ends well.

B. A Family Tree: The Dents and the Bartons



John and Mary Dent
(Grandfather and Grandmother)



Robert and Rose Barton
(Grandfather and Grandmother)

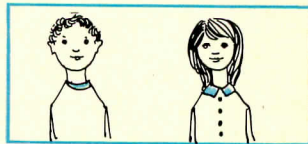


Mr Dent Mrs Dent
(Father and Mother)

Dorothy Barton William and Jane Barton
(Aunt Dorothy) (Uncle Bill and Aunt Jane)



David Vivien Shirley



Jack Jane

David, Vivien and Shirley are Jack's *cousins*. David is Aunt Dorothy's *nephew*, and Vivien and Shirley are her *nieces*.

<Who is it?>

Mr Fog is looking at a picture of a boy. He says:
"Brothers and sisters have I none,
But this boy's father is my father's son."
Who is the boy in the picture?



<Proverbs>

A friend in need is a friend indeed. Hunger is the best sauce.
All that glitters is not gold. No man can serve two masters.
All is well that ends well. Out of sight, out of mind.

Exercises

1 Complete these sentences

- Jane's school report is ...
- Jane's parents are ... of their ...
- The next day Jane finds ... on the ...
- Inside the letter she finds a card with two sentences: ...
- Jane goes to ..., then she rushes to ..., then she ... downstairs to the ...
- In the garden Jane finds ... It is ..., a beautiful ...
- Jane ... round it. Then she ... to her parents.
- She says: ... Let's all go ...

2 Put these words into the plural §§ 2, 16

[s]	[z]	[iz]
cups	friends	bushes
...

letter, daughter, finger, table, bicycle, uncle, school report, street, shirt, match, bridge, peach, orange, game, room, van, dress, nose, sentence, stamp, envelope, pipe, tree, shoe, door.

3 Put in suitable plurals § 16

Ex.: Dieter knows two English ...

Dieter knows two English families.

(sentence, key, bridge, cherry, match, bush, family, bicycle, dress, niece)

- Dieter knows two English ...
- Aunt Dorothy has many nephews and ...
- Jack and Jane clean their ... every Saturday.
- Maud has two new ...
- Complete these ...
- Mr Miller has two ... for his car.
- There are many red ... on the plate.
- Jane finds a card under a box of ...
- Jane sees a bicycle behind the ... in the garden.
- There are many big ... in London.

4 Write and read the plurals

tooth, ...	man, ...
mouse, ...	child, ...

A Game: 5 We form sentences with plurals

There are two teams in the class: A pupil from team A says a noun: **finger**. A pupil from team B makes a sentence with the plural: I have ten **fingers**. Then he says another noun and a pupil from team A makes a sentence. *Go on.* For a correct sentence a team gets a point.

6 Put in the verbs in the right columns § 16

[s]	
she puts	
...	

to look, to speak, to laugh, to listen, to dress, to show, to play, to go, to wait, to paint, to spell, to hug, to forgive, to miss, to reach

7 What David does every day § 16

Read David's letter every day.
David gets up, he

8 Word Order Table § 17

Place or Time	S	P	O
Every morning	David	brushes	his
	Maud	washes	her

Put the following sentences in the table:

- On Saturday afternoon Mr Miller w
- Sometimes Bob and Maud clean the s
- They have tea at half past four.
- After tea Mother and Maud wash th
- Then Bob and Maud play a game.
- Mother writes a letter at Father's des
- Father reads the newspaper every ev
- At half past six Mother prepares the
- At eight o'clock the children go to be

9 Add adverbial phrases of time to the sentences § 18

Ex.: At half past f
English famil

*Here are the adverb
Every Saturday, eve
after tea, every mor*

- Jane hurries to the bus stop.
- Jack does his homework.
- Maud and Vivien play games.

6 Put in the verbs in the right columns § 16

[s]	[z]	[iz]
she puts	she finds	she washes
...

to look, to speak, to laugh, to listen, to begin, to open, to fetch, to push, to dress, to show, to play, to go, to watch, to rush, to dance, to shut, to eat, to paint, to spell, to hug, to forgive, to hurry, to carry, to see, to brush, to miss, to reach

7 What David does every day § 16

Read David's letter in L 3 again and tell me what David does every day.

David gets up, he washes, he ... Go on.

8 Word Order Table § 17

Place or Time	S	P	O	Place or Time
Every morning	David	brushes	his teeth.	in the bathroom.
	Maud	washes	her hands	

Put the following sentences in the table:

1. On Saturday afternoon Mr Miller washes his car in front of his house.
2. Sometimes Bob and Maud clean the seats and the windows.
3. They have tea at half past four.
4. After tea Mother and Maud wash the cups and saucers in the kitchen.
5. Then Bob and Maud play a game.
6. Mother writes a letter at Father's desk.
7. Father reads the newspaper every evening.
8. At half past six Mother prepares the children's supper.
9. At eight o'clock the children go to bed.

9 Add adverbial phrases of time to the sentences § 18

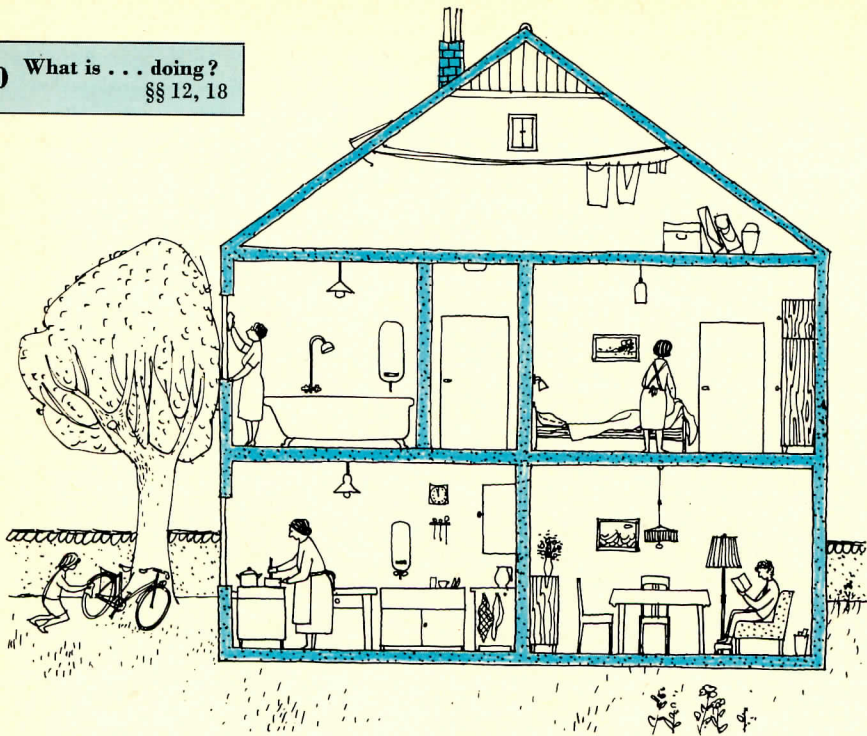
Ex.: At half past four English families have tea.
English families have tea at half past four.

Here are the adverbial phrases:

Every Saturday, every Friday afternoon, at half past four, after tea, every morning, at ten to eight.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Jane hurries to the bus stop. | 4. Jack plays football. |
| 2. Jack does his homework. | 5. Mother wakes David up. |
| 3. Maud and Vivien play games. | 6. English families have tea. |

10 What is . . . doing?
§§ 12, 18



You can see Mother, Aunt Dorothy, Grandmother, Jack and Jane in the picture.

- a) What is Mother doing? She is making the beds.
Where is she doing it? She is making the beds in the bedroom.
What is Aunt Dorothy doing? . . . Where is . . .? *Go on.*

b) *Now ask questions and give answers.*

What is happening in the bedroom? In the bedroom Mother is making the beds. What is happening in . . . *Go on.*

11 A Sentence
Switchboard § 18

Every morning	Bob's uncle	leaves the house at half past eight.
Sometimes	Aunt Dorothy	has an egg for breakfast.
Every day	the reporter	rushes to the bus stop.
	Jack Barton	misses the bus.
	Jane Barton	learns some French words.

12 The Personal
Pronouns
- Object Case - § 19

- a) 1. My school report is very proud
2. Your school report is excellent
3. Jack's school report is not excellent
4. Jane's school report is excellent
5. Our school report is excellent
6. Your school report is excellent
7. Jack's and Jane's school report is excellent

b) My school report is not excellent and your school report is excellent.

Your . . .

Go on.

13 Put in the
personal pronouns § 19

1. My parents have small rooms in their house in the morning. 4. She has a bicycle. Then my brother's school report is excellent, and my parents have new bicycles. 7. We clean . . . every day. 9. On Sunday afternoon I play tennis and I like . . . very much.

14 Translate

Be careful with the German words. For *them* and *they* the German words are *ihnen* and *ihnen*.

- Vivien trägt die Teller in das Esstisch.
- Maud findet eine Karte im Briefkasten.
- Die Kinder lernen jeden Tag neue Wörterhefte.
- Haben Sie ein Auto, Herr Müller?
- Haben Sie auch ein Auto, Herr und Frau Müller?

15 Let's build stairs

- a) One pupil writes the word 'hand'. Another pupil writes the word 'dear'. The third pupil writes the word 'road'.
Go on.
- b) *Build stairs with other words.*
The words can have three, five or more letters.

12 The Personal
Pronouns
- Object Case - § 19

- a) 1. My school report is excellent and my parents are very proud of me.
2. Your school report is ..
3. Jack's ...
4. Jane's ...
5. Our ...
6. Your ...
7. Jack's and Jane's ...

b) My school report is not excellent and my parents are not very proud of me.
Your ...
Go on.

13 Put in the
personal pronouns
§ 19

1. My parents have a new house. 2. My brother and I have small rooms upstairs. 3. Mother wakes ... up in the morning. 4. Sometimes I stay in bed a little longer. Then my brother calls ... 'lazybones'. 5. My brother's school report is excellent, and my parents are very proud of ... 6. We have new bicycles. 7. We clean ... every Saturday. 8. My friend is Susan. 9. On Sunday afternoon I play tennis with ... 10. I learn French at school, and I like ... very much.

14 Translate

Be careful with the German 'SIE':
For *them* and *they*, *you*, *her* and *she*
the German word is often 'SIE'.

1. Vivien trägt die Teller in das Eßzimmer. *Sie* stellt *sie* auf den Eßzimmertisch.
2. Maud findet eine Karte im Briefkasten. *Sie* ist für *sie*.
3. Die Kinder lernen jeden Tag neue englische Wörter. *Sie* schreiben *sie* in ihre Wörterhefte.
4. Haben *Sie* ein Auto, Herr Müller?
5. Haben *Sie* auch ein Auto, Herr und Frau Fog?

15 Let's build stairs

- a) One pupil writes the word 'hand'.
Another pupil writes the word 'dear'.
The third pupil writes the word 'room'.
Go on.
- b) Build stairs with other words.
The words can have three, five or more letters.

hand
|
e
|
a
|
room
|
.
|
.
|
...

16 The Preposition 'at'

Mother wakes me up **at** eight o'clock. ... *um* ...
 I learn French **at** school. ... *in* ...
 Jack is standing **at** the bathroom door. ... *an* ...

Now translate:

- Wir frühstücken *um* acht Uhr.
- Vater sitzt gerade *an* seinem Schreibtisch.
- Englische Kinder bekommen Milch *in* der Schule.
- Unser Lehrer steht gerade *an* der Tür.
- Vater verläßt das Haus *um* halb neun.
- Wir lernen Französisch *in* der Schule.
- Um* 8 Uhr ist der Bus Nr. 12 *an* der Bushaltestelle.

17 A Game: Where is it?

One pupil leaves the classroom. When he comes in again he must guess a 'thing' (a pencil, a book, etc.). He asks: Is it in front of the board? Is it on the teacher's desk? Is it ... ?

You know the prepositions *in, on, under, in front of, behind, near*.

18 Translation

1. Jane schreibt einen Brief an ihre Brieffreundin. 2. Sie hat ein Stück Papier, einen Briefumschlag und eine Briefmarke. 3. Um 5 Uhr steckt sie den Brief in den Briefumschlag. 4. Aber wo ist die Briefmarke? 5. Jane sieht unter den Karten und den Büchern [nach], aber die Briefmarke ist nicht da. 6. Sie geht nach oben in (into) ihr Schlafzimmer, dann eilt sie nach unten in (into) das Wohnzimmer. 7. Danach stürzt sie in die Küche. 8. Mutter wäscht [gerade] Kirschen und Pfirsiche und sagt: „Sieh noch einmal in deinem Zimmer [nach].“ 9. Schließlich findet Jane die Briefmarke unter einer Schachtel Streichhölzer.

Let's prepare lesson 5

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Can you speak French? | No, I cannot . |
| Must I do my homework now? | No, you need not .
You can do it later. |
| May I eat these cherries? | No, you must not . |
| Does Jane find the bicycle in the kitchen? | No, she does not find it there. |
| Do Jane's friends help her to clean the bicycle? | No, they do not help her. |
2. "Don't look in the bathroom," says Jane's father.
 "Don't eat the cherries," says Jane's mother.

**5 A. The Hairdresser**

It is Aunt Dorothy's wedding day and Jane is getting ready, putting on her white silk dress.

She is in front of the mirror in her dressing room.

5 "Jack, Jack," she calls her brother. "What's the matter?"

Jack comes in.

"Well, what's the matter?" he asks.

"Oh, Jack! Doesn't my hair look a little short?"

10 cut it for me."

"Don't be silly, Jane. I can't cut your hair."

"Then I can't go to the wedding."

"Funny idea! Don't blame me for your hair. You mustn't blame me the scissors."

15 Jane sits down in front of the mirror. She looks at her hair. Snip, snip! Jane's pretty curls are getting shorter and shorter.

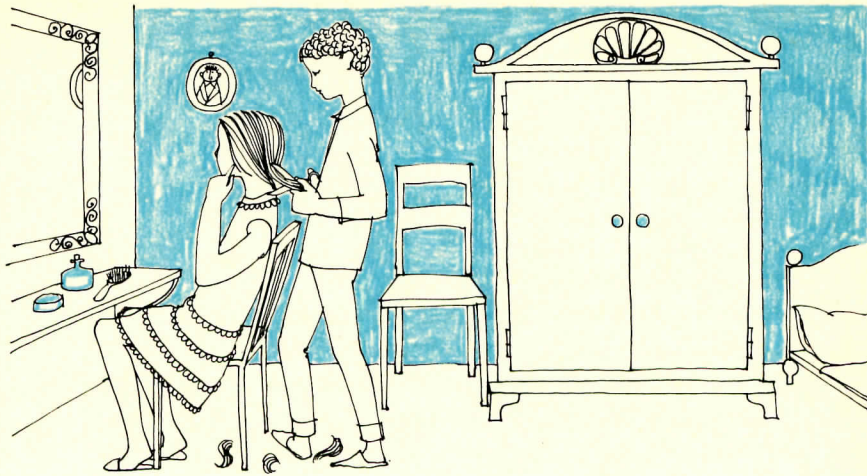
"You mustn't cut it too short, Jane!"

Jane's hair is getting shorter and shorter.

"There!" calls Jack at last and pokes his head in.

20 He takes a hand-mirror and holds it up to Jane's hair.

"Do you like it, Jane?"



5 A. The Hairdresser

It is Aunt Dorothy's wedding day. Jane is her bridesmaid. She is wearing her white silk dress.

She is in front of the mirror in her room.

5 "Jack, Jack," she calls her brother. "Can you come here for a moment, please?"

Jack comes in.

"Well, what's the matter?" he asks.

10 "Oh, Jack! Doesn't my hair look awful? It's much too long. You must cut it for me."

"Don't be silly, Jane. I can't cut it. I'm not a hairdresser."

"Then I can't go to the wedding. Oh, Jack, please."

"Funny idea! Don't blame me if you don't like it afterwards. Give me the scissors."

15 Jane sits down in front of the mirror. Jack begins to cut his sister's hair. Snip, snip! Jane's pretty curls are falling to the floor.

"You mustn't cut it too short, Jack."

Jane's hair is getting shorter and shorter.

"There!" calls Jack at last and puts down the scissors on the table.

20 He takes a hand-mirror and holds it behind Jane's head.

"Do you like it, Jane?"

"Oh no, I don't. Oh, oh, oh! What a mess! My hair is spoilt."

"Well, don't blame me."

"I can't go to the wedding. I can't be a bridesmaid. Oh, oh, oh!"

"Don't make that noise, you cry-baby. Look! Grandma is coming."

5 Hallo, Grandma!"

Grandmother: "Must you make that noise? Why is Jane crying?"

"She doesn't want to go to the wedding, Grandma."

"May I ask why?"

"Oh, Grandma! Look at my hair. It's much too short."

10 "Nonsense!" says Grandma. "Put a white ribbon round your head. You needn't worry. Your short hair looks lovely."

After the wedding Aunt Dorothy says: "How nice your hair looks, Jane. I must do my hair like that, too. Who is your hairdresser?"

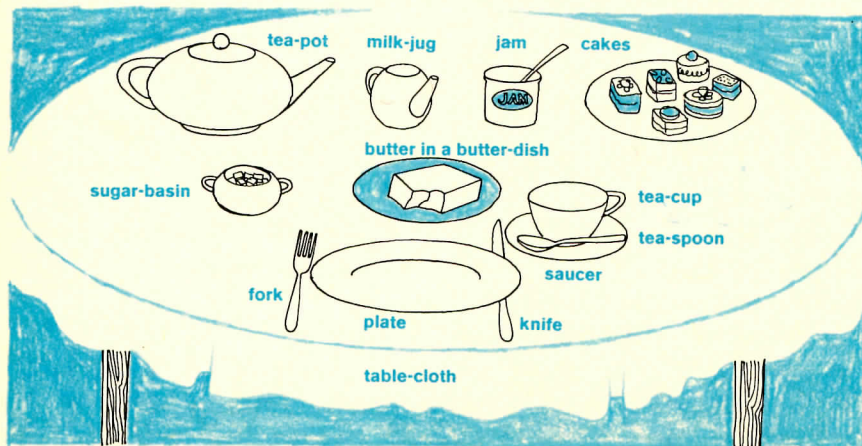
B. Jane Lays the Table

Mr Barton always comes home from his office at 6 o'clock. He is very hungry then and wants his tea.

At ten minutes to six Mrs Barton says: "Please lay the table for Daddy's tea, Jane."

Jane goes to the kitchen, puts all the things on a tray, and carries them to the living-room.

Then she lays the table. Here is the table with all the things on it:



<Who Makes the Money?>

God made the bees,
And the bees make honey,
The miller's man does
But the miller makes

Exercises

1 Can you answer these questions?

a) Answer the

1. Who is A
wearing her w

Jane's hair? 4. Does Jack cut Jan
short hair afterwards? 6. Is her hair
she want to go to the wedding wi
like Jane's short hair? 10. Does Au

b) Use short answers for questions 2-
Ex.: Is Jane wearing her white silk

2 Is your English good? §§ 20-23

a) Dieter's E
can spell h

(to spell many English words, to pl
to write English letters, to answer

b) Monika's English is not good. S
her name in English, she cannot

c) Monika asks Dieter:
Can you speak English? Can yo

d) Dieter asks Monika:
Can you speak English? Can yo

3 Can you . . . ? § 22

a) Susan has

She asks her:
Can you play tennis? Can you . . .
(to make porridge, to make good to
the family, to make a dress, to lay
books)

b) Now ask your friends these questi

〈Who Makes the Money?〉

God made the bees,
And the bees make honey.
The miller's man does all the work,
But the miller makes the money.

Exercises

1 Can you answer these questions?

a) *Answer them in complete sentences.*

1. Who is Aunt Dorothy's bridesmaid? 2. Is Jane wearing her white silk dress? 3. Does a hairdresser cut Jane's hair? 4. Does Jack cut Jane's hair too short? 5. Does Jane like her short hair afterwards? 6. Is her hair spoilt? 7. Does she blame Jack? 8. Does she want to go to the wedding with her short hair? 9. Does Grandmother like Jane's short hair? 10. Does Aunt Dorothy like Jane's short hair?

b) *Use short answers for questions 2—10.*

Ex.: Is Jane wearing her white silk dress? — Yes, she is.

2 Is your English good? §§ 20—23

a) Dieter's English is good. He can speak English, he can spell his name in English, he can ...

(to spell many English words, to play English games, to read English books, to write English letters, to answer the teacher's questions in English)

b) Monika's English is not good. She cannot speak English, she cannot spell her name in English, she cannot ...

c) *Monika asks Dieter:* Can you speak English? Can you ... *Dieter answers:* Yes, I can. ...

d) *Dieter asks Monika:* Can you speak English? Can you ... *Monika answers:* No, I can't. ...

3 Can you ...? § 22

a) Susan has a new friend, Shirley.

She asks her: Can you play tennis? Can you ...? *Shirley answers:* Yes, I can. ...

(to make porridge, to make good tea, to clean windows, to prepare lunch for the family, to make a dress, to lay the table, to speak French, to read French books)

b) *Now ask your friends these questions.*

4 What the teacher says §§ 20—21

You must listen, you must answer my questions in English, you must ...

(to speak English in the English lesson, to open the windows after every lesson, to use a pen for your homework, to wash your hands before dinner)

5 Must I? — No, you needn't §§ 20—22

You want to play with your friend.

a) *You ask your mother:* *Your mother answers:*

Must I do my homework now? No, you needn't. You can do it later.

Must I ...

(to write the letter to Aunt Mary, to paint the picture for Grandfather, to learn the new French words, to help you in the kitchen, to clean my shoes)

b) *You tell your friend:*

I needn't do my homework now, I can do it later. I needn't ...

6 May I...? §§ 20—22

a) Jane is ill. She is lying in bed.

She asks:

May I read a book?

May I eat a peach?

May I ... ?

(to get up, to paint a picture, to look at my school report, to do my hair, to put a ribbon round my hair, to play with the cat)

b) In the classroom.

You ask the teacher:

May I ask a question?

May I ... ?

(to open the window, to leave the room, to wipe the board, to wash my hands, to eat a peach, to begin to read, to do my hair)

Her mother answers:

Yes, you may.

No, you mustn't.

...

The teacher answers:

Yes, you may.

No, you mustn't.

7 What your mother often says §§ 20—21

a) You must not eat when your hands are dirty. You must not ...

(to speak too much, to ask too many questions, to eat too much cake, to lie in bed too long, to clean your shoes in the living-room, to put your dirty shoes on a chair, to sit on the table, to cut your hair too short)

b) Don't eat when your hands are dirty. Don't ... *Use the words in Ex. 7a.*

8 A Sentence Switchboard § 22

a) *Ex.: Do you ... Does yo*

(to do)	you your friend Jane and Jack German boys Bob	help i play t play c rush t play g
---------	-----------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------

b) *Answer these questions and use short*

Ex.: Do German boys play tennis in v

Does Bob help ... ?

Go on.

9 The New Pupil §§ 22, 23

Shirley is a new Vivien wants to k

1. ... whether Shirley eats porridge
2. ... whether she has breakfast in
3. ... whether she eats toast on Sun
4. ... whether she hurries to the bu
5. ... whether she misses the bus so
6. ... whether she cleans her bicycl
7. ... whether she plays tennis.
8. ... whether she goes on bicycle t
9. ... whether she reads French bo
10. ... whether she helps her father
11. ... whether she prepares lunch so
12. ... whether she lies in bed a littl
13. ... whether she likes woodwork.
14. ... whether she likes mathematic

a) *She asks Shirley:*

1. Do you eat porridge in the mor

2. Do you have breakfast in your

3. Do you ... ?

Go on.

b) *In the afternoon the other boys and*

1. Does Shirley eat porridge in the

2. Does Shirley ... ? *Go on.*

8 A Sentence Switchboard

§ 22

- a) *Ex.:* Do you help in the garden every day?
Does your friend help in the garden every day?

(to do)	you your friend Jane and Jack German boys Bob	help in the garden play tennis play cricket rush to the bus stop play games	every day? in summer? in winter? on Sundays?
---------	-----------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------

b) *Answer these questions and use short answers.*

Ex.: Do German boys play tennis in winter? No, they don't.

Does Bob help ... ?

Go on.

9 The New Pupil

§§ 22, 23

Shirley is a new pupil in the class.

Vivien wants to know ...

1. ... whether Shirley eats porridge in the morning.
2. ... whether she has breakfast in her pyjamas.
3. ... whether she eats toast on Sundays.
4. ... whether she hurries to the bus stop every day.
5. ... whether she misses the bus sometimes.
6. ... whether she cleans her bicycle every week.
7. ... whether she plays tennis.
8. ... whether she goes on bicycle tours sometimes.
9. ... whether she reads French books.
10. ... whether she helps her father in the garden.
11. ... whether she prepares lunch sometimes.
12. ... whether she lies in bed a little longer on Sundays.
13. ... whether she likes woodwork.
14. ... whether she likes mathematics.

a) *She asks Shirley:*

1. Do you eat porridge in the morning?
2. Do you have breakfast in your pyjamas?
3. Do you ... ?

Go on.

b) *In the afternoon the other boys and girls ask Vivien questions:*

1. Does Shirley eat porridge in the morning?
2. Does Shirley ... ? *Go on.*

10 Questions with 'don't, doesn't' § 25

An English boy visits his German pen-friend Wolfgang. He is surprised at many things:

1. School begins at 8 o'clock.
2. Wolfgang has only milk and bread and butter for breakfast.
3. He comes home for lunch.
4. He does not go to school in the afternoon.
5. His parents don't have tea in the afternoon.
6. German boys play football in summer.
7. Wolfgang does not learn French.

The English boy asks:

1. Doesn't school begin at nine o'clock here?
2. Don't you have ... ?

11 Funny Questions § 22

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| 1. Do you have paper for breakfast? | No, we don't. We have porridge for breakfast. |
| 2. Do you brush your mouth? | No, I don't. I brush ... |
| 3. Do you go to school in your pyjamas? ... | ... |
| 4. Do you write with a key? ... | ... |
| 5. Do you play cricket with your cat? ... | ... |
| 6. Do you clean your bicycle with tea? ... | ... |

12 Translation

1. Jack hat einen neuen Freund.
2. Er stellt ihm eine Menge Fragen.
3. „Ißt du zum Frühstück ein Ei?“
4. Magst du Haferflockenbrei?
5. Spielt ihr in der Schule Fußball?
6. Geht deine Schwester auch zur Schule?
7. Kann deine Schwester Tennis spielen?
8. Spielt sie mit dir Tennis?
9. Darf ich mit dir Tennis spielen?
10. Hast du ein Fahrrad?
11. Putzt du es jede Woche?
12. Lernst du in der Schule Deutsch?
13. Kannst du einen englischen Brief schreiben?
14. Verpaßt du manchmal den Bus?
15. Hilfst du deiner Mutter in der Küche?“
16. Mutter kommt ins Zimmer.
17. „Stell nicht so viele Fragen“, sagt sie, „[der] Tee ist fertig.“

Let's prepare lesson 6

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Who wants to go to the wedding? | Jane. |
| Who cuts Jane's hair? | Jane's brother Jack. |
| What is Jack doing? | He is cutting Jane's hair. |
| What does Grandma say? | 'Your hair looks lovely, Jane.' |
| How does Jane look? | She looks lovely. |
| How does Aunt Dorothy like Jane's hair? | She likes it very much. |
| Where does Jane find the letter? | In the garden. |



6 A. Who Wants an Apple?

Jack is spending his holidays on his farm. One day Jack is walking in the field full of wonderful apples. He climbs the tree to eat it.

"What are you doing there?" cried the man. Jack looks down and sees a man sitting on the grass. "I ... I'm eating an apple," answered Jack. "That's forbidden. What's your name?" "Barton — Jack Barton." Jack is surprised. "Where do you live?" "I live in London. May I offer you an apple?" "Come down at once." "I ... I don't want to come down." "Why don't you want to come down?" "Your dog doesn't look very friendly." "All right, I can't stay here, but I'll give you an apple." "How do you like that?" The man gives his dog an order: "Sit down." The dog sits down on the grass and the man goes away.



6 A. Who Wants an Apple?

Jack is spending his holidays on his grandfather's farm in the country. One day Jack is walking in the fields. Suddenly he sees an apple-tree full of wonderful apples. He climbs the tree, picks an apple and begins to eat it.

“What are you doing there?” cries an angry voice.

Jack looks down and sees a man with a bulldog under the tree.

“I . . . I'm eating an apple,” answers Jack.

“That's forbidden. What's your name?”

10 “Barton — Jack Barton.” Jack is a little nervous.

“Where do you live?”

“I live in London. May I offer you an apple?”

“Come down at once.”

“I . . . I don't want to come down.”

15 “Why don't you want to come down?”

“Your dog doesn't look very friendly.”

“All right, I can't stay here, but Rover can. Wait until I come back.

How do you like that?”

The man gives his dog an order: “Watch him, Rover, watch him.”

20 The dog sits down on the grass and shows Jack his strong white teeth.

The man goes away.

Jack throws an apple at Rover. The dog begins to bark and tries to jump up the tree.

Jack's appetite for apples is gone.

Half an hour later the man comes back with the farmer.

"Where is the young thief?" asks the farmer.

"There he is," says the man and shows the farmer the tree where Jack is sitting.

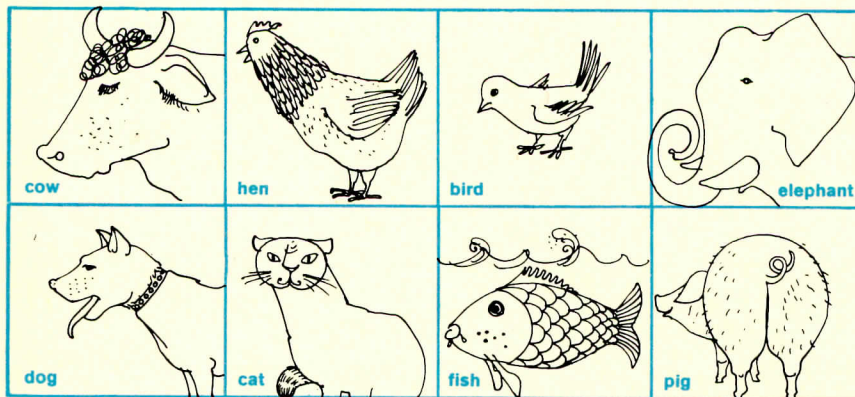
"But that's my grandson, Mr Green!" says the farmer. "He is my daughter's son."

10 Mr Green is astonished. He calls his dog: "Rover, come here."

Jack climbs down the tree, smiling.

"Who wants an apple?" he asks and hands Mr Green an apple.

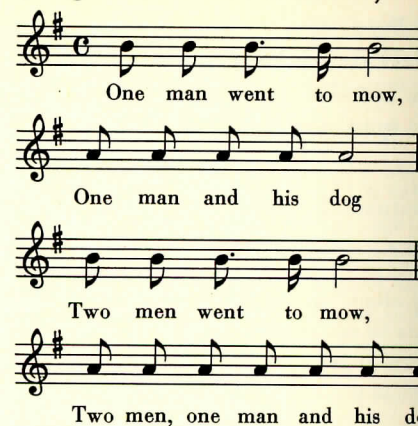
B. Animal Quiz



What is it? Can you guess? The answers are in the pictures.

- It lives under water and swims. Which animal is it?
- It is fat and gives us ham.
- It gives us milk and says, "Moo!"
- It barks. Sometimes it bites people.
- We see it in a zoo or a circus.
- It lives on a farm or in a garden and lays eggs.
- It drinks milk and catches mice.
- It has feathers and can fly, and it makes its nest in a tree or in the grass.

<Song: One Man Went to Mow>



Three men went to mow . . . , three men, t
(Up to: Ten men, ..., one man and his do

Exercises

1 Can you answer these questions?

- Where is Jack?
- What is he doing?
- Who comes to see him?
- What does the man with the bull want to come down?
- Who watches the dog try to do?
- Who comes back with the dog?

2 Ask questions §§ 26—28

- Ask questions. Ex.: Jane wears a white dress. Who wears a white dress?
- Mother makes porridge every morning.
- Mr and Mrs Barton play tennis every day.
- Mrs Brown cleans the classrooms of the school.
- Jack and Maud do their homework every day.
- Now ask questions with 'what'. Ex.: What does Jane wear on Sundays?
- Now ask questions with 'when'. Ex.: When does Jane wear a white dress?

〈Song: One Man Went to Mow〉

One man went to mow, went to mow a mead - ow.
 One man and his dog went to mow a mead - ow.
 Two men went to mow, went to mow a mead - ow.
 Two men, one man and his dog went to mow a mead-ow.

Three men went to mow . . . , three men, two men, one man . . .
 (Up to: Ten men, . . . , one man and his dog . . .)

Exercises

1 Can you answer these questions?

1. Where is Jack spending his holidays?
2. What is he doing in the apple-tree?
3. Who comes to the tree?
4. What does the man with the bulldog say to Jack?
5. Why doesn't Jack want to come down?
6. Who watches Jack in the tree?
7. What does the bulldog try to do?
8. Who comes back with Mr Green half an hour later?

2 Ask questions §§ 26—28

- a) *Ask questions with 'who'.*
 Ex.: Jane wears a white silk dress on Sundays.
Who wears a white silk dress on Sundays?
1. Mother makes porridge every morning.
2. Mr and Mrs Barton play tennis every week-end.
3. Mrs Brown cleans the classrooms on Saturdays.
4. Jack and Maud do their homework in the evening.
- b) *Now ask questions with 'what'.*
 Ex.: **What** does Jane wear on Sundays? She wears a white silk dress on Sundays.
- c) *Now ask questions with 'when'.*
 Ex.: **When** does Jane wear a white silk dress? She wears . . .

3 Ask questions with 'where' §§ 26, 28

a) *Where?* (wo?)

Ex.: Jack sees a bulldog under the apple-tree.

Where does Jack see a bulldog?

1. In summer we have tea in the garden.
2. David does his homework at his father's desk.
3. Jane brushes her hair in front of the mirror.

b) *where?* (wohin?)

1. David hurries to the bus stop every morning.
2. We go to school every day.
3. German children go home for lunch.

4 Questions with 'why' and answers with 'because' §§ 26, 28

1. Why does Jack climb the apple-tree? He climbs it because he wants to eat an apple.

2. Why is Mr Green angry? He is angry because ...

3. Why does Jack not want to come down? ...

4. Why does Mr Green go away? ...
5. Why does the dog begin to bark? ...
6. Why is Jack's appetite for apples gone? ...
7. Why is Mr Green astonished? ...

5 Ask questions with 'who' and 'where' and answer them §§ 26, 28

Ex.: Jack is sitting in the tree.

Who is sitting in the tree? — Jack.

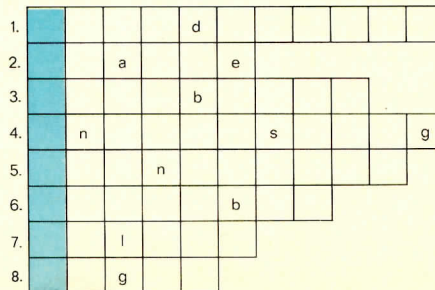
Where is he sitting? — In the tree.

1. Jack is spending his holidays in the country.
2. Jack's grandfather has many big apple-trees on his farm.
3. The thief is waiting behind the apple-tree.
4. Jack's grandfather is sitting in front of his house.
5. Jack is walking in the fields.
6. Jack is offering his friends apples in the classroom.

6 A Puzzle

The letters in the coloured boxes make a word.

1. He cuts your hair.
2. You can eat it.
3. Your mother calls you . . . , when you lie in bed too long.
4. David's letters are always ...
5. Opposite of upstairs.
6. It has 26 letters.
7. It is a colour.
8. We put it in our tea.



7 Use personal pronouns § 19

Ex.: If Father wa
newspaper.
If Father wa
newspaper.

1. If Grandfather asks, "Are you good school report."
2. If the cats are hungry, give the cats
3. If Aunt Dorothy wants the sugar,
4. If the children come, offer the childr
5. If Mother wants the milk, hand Mo
6. If you write to your pen-friend, tell y

8 Ask funny questions § 22

Ex.: Do you offer
milk.
Does your b
eats ham sa

(your grandfather — school dinner, you
your mother — water for breakfast, you
sister — a knife, a little child — match

9 Translation

Frau Braun: Darf ich hereinkommen

Frau Barton: Ja, aber ich habe nich
Garten zu tun.

Frau Braun: Warum hilft Ihr Sohn H

Frau Barton: Er verbringt [gerade] se
Großvaters.

Frau Braun: Wie interessant! Kennt

Frau Barton: Nein. Aber er kann mit d

Frau Braun: Wo spielt er?

Frau Barton: Auf den Feldern oder u

Frau Braun: Wann steht er auf?

Frau Barton: Oh, um 9 Uhr. Er ist ei

Frau Braun: Wer weckt ihn?

Frau Barton: Die Bulldogge kommt i
er auf.

Frau Barton bietet Frau Braun einen A

Frau Braun: Danke. Ihre Äpfel sind

7 Use personal pronouns § 19

Ex.: If Father wants to read, you must give **Father** the newspaper.

If Father wants to read, you must give **him** the newspaper.

1. If Grandfather asks, "Are you good at school?", show Grandfather your school report.
2. If the cats are hungry, give the cats their milk.
3. If Aunt Dorothy wants the sugar, hand Aunt Dorothy the sugar-basin.
4. If the children come, offer the children some oranges.
5. If Mother wants the milk, hand Mother the milk-jug.
6. If you write to your pen-friend, tell your pen-friend about your time-table.

8 Ask funny questions § 22

Ex.: Do you offer your cat tea? No, I don't. I offer it milk.

Does your brother eat mice? No, he doesn't. He eats ham sandwiches. *Go on.*

(your grandfather — school dinner, your aunt — a pipe, your parents — grass, your mother — water for breakfast, your father — paper for lunch, your little sister — a knife, a little child — matches)

9 Translation

Frau Braun: Darf ich hereinkommen und Ihnen mein neues Kleid zeigen?

Frau Barton: Ja, aber ich habe nicht viel Zeit. Ich habe eine Menge im Garten zu tun.

Frau Braun: Warum hilft Ihr Sohn Hans Ihnen nicht?

Frau Barton: Er verbringt [gerade] seine Ferien auf dem Bauernhof seines Großvaters.

Frau Braun: Wie interessant! Kennt er viele Jungen auf dem Lande?

Frau Barton: Nein. Aber er kann mit der Bulldogge seines Großvaters spielen.

Frau Braun: Wo spielt er?

Frau Barton: Auf den Feldern oder unter den Apfelbäumen.

Frau Braun: Wann steht er auf?

Frau Barton: Oh, um 9 Uhr. Er ist ein Faulpelz.

Frau Braun: Wer weckt ihn?

Frau Barton: Die Bulldogge kommt in sein Zimmer und bellt. Dann steht er auf.

Frau Barton bietet Frau Braun einen Apfel an. Frau Braun isst ihn.

Frau Braun: Danke. Ihre Äpfel sind sehr gut.



7 A. Too Much of a Good Thing

Today is Saturday, February 17th. It is Grandfather's seventieth birthday. The Bartons go to visit him.

He lives in Oxford, forty-two miles away. The roads are icy, so they go by train.

"Hurry up!" says Father. "It's five past one now. The train leaves at 1.37."

At half past three they arrive at Grandfather's house. They are the first guests.

"Happy birthday, Grandpa!" They give him their presents. Father gives Grandfather a box of cigars. Jack's present is a pair of slippers.

"How nice!" says Grandfather. "They are just what I need. Thank you, Jack."

At a quarter to five four more people arrive: Aunt Margery, Uncle George, Joyce and Denis. Denis has handkerchiefs for Grandfather, Joyce's present is — a pair of slippers!

Grandfather laughs. "Well, well! But thank you very much, Joyce."

Seven more relations and friends arrive with presents. The first has a scarf, the second gloves, the third socks — and the other four have slippers!

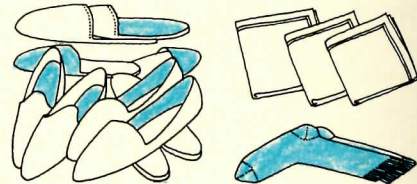
"How funny!" says Grandfather. But he thanks them all.

At a quarter past five they have Aunt Dorothy. She has a present, to

"Let me guess," says Grandfather.

"How clever of you, Grandpa!"

"This is the seventh pair of slippers one pair for each day of the week. member — when you visit me next Wait until my hundredth birthday."



B. The Seasons and the Weather

In winter the weather is cold and sky, and it often rains. In January and there is ice on the lakes and rivers.

In spring the weather becomes warm and begin to grow again.

In summer it is sometimes very hot. The weather is fine and dry, the sun shines in the fields.

In autumn the weather is often calm. Fruit and corn are ripe, and the farm autumn storms begin.

<Two Weather Rhymes>

The south wind brings weather
The north wind wet and cold
The west wind always brings rain
The east wind blows it bare

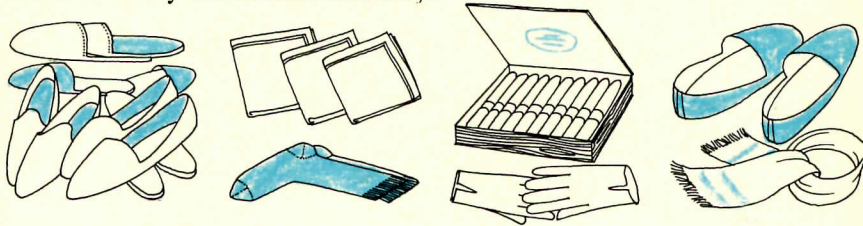
March winds, April showers
Bring forth May flowers.

At a quarter past five they have tea. One late guest arrives. It is Aunt Dorothy. She has a present, too.

"Let me guess," says Grandfather. "Is it a pair of slippers?"

"How clever of you, Grandpa!" says Aunt Dorothy. "Yes, it is."

5 "This is the seventh pair of slippers," says Grandfather. "Now I have one pair for each day of the week. Thank you all very much. But remember — when you visit me next time, don't bring slippers again. Wait until my hundredth birthday."



B. The Seasons and the Weather

In winter the weather is cold and wet. There are grey clouds in the sky, and it often rains. In January and February it sometimes snows, and there is ice on the lakes and rivers.

In spring the weather becomes warmer, and the plants and flowers begin to grow again.

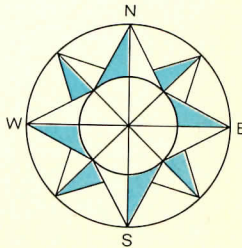
In summer it is sometimes very hot, and we have a heat-wave. The weather is fine and dry, the sun shines, and the farmers make hay in the fields.

In autumn the weather is often calm and sunny, but rather cool. The fruit and corn are ripe, and the farmers bring the harvest in before the autumn storms begin.

<Two Weather Rhymes>

The south wind brings wet weather,
The north wind wet and cold together,
The west wind always brings us rain,
The east wind blows it back again.

March winds, April showers,
Bring forth May flowers.



Exercises

1 Can you answer these questions?

1. When is Grandfather's birthday?
2. How old is Grandfather?
3. Where does Grandfather live?
4. Who goes to visit Grandfather?
5. Why don't the Bartons go by car?
6. When does the Bartons' train leave?
7. When do they arrive at Grandfather's house?
8. What are the Bartons' presents?
9. Does Grandfather like the presents?
10. What does he say?
11. When do the other guests arrive?
12. What are their presents?
13. Who is the last guest?

2 Cardinal and Ordinal Numbers § 31

a) Read the following numbers.

- | | | |
|---------------|---|---------------|
| 3, 13, 30, 33 | — | 4, 14, 40, 44 |
| 5, 15, 50, 55 | — | 6, 16, 60, 66 |
| 7, 17, 70, 77 | — | 8, 18, 80, 88 |
| 9, 19, 90, 99 | | |

b) Write these numbers in words.

c) Form the ordinal numbers and read them.

Ex.: the third, the thirteenth, the ... Go on.

3 A Sentence Switchboard § 31

There are	13 ['-]	children in the class.
	14	cows in the field.
	16	matches in the box.
	17	people in the bus.
	23	new words in the lesson.
	31	exercise-books on the teacher's desk.

Now ask questions and answer them.

Ex.: How many children are there in the class?

There are 13 ['-].

4 Let's count § 31

a) Say the even numbers from 10 to 40 and from 40 to 60.

b) Say the odd numbers from 13 to 39 and from 51 to 69.

c) Count backwards from 100 to 80.

d) Now give the boys and girls in your class similar orders.

5 A Time-table: London—Edinburgh § 30

(dep. = departure)

London
Nottingham
Chesterfield
Sheffield
Leeds
Carlisle
Edinburgh

1. When does the train leave London?
 2. When does it arrive at ...?
 3. When does it leave ...?
- Go on.

6 The Days of the Week § 32

The first day is ...
Now ask the other days.
Which is the ...

7 The Months § 32

a) The first month is ...
Now ask the other months.
Which is the ...

- b) Which month is February? February
- Which month is August? August
- Go on.
- c) Which months have 30 days, which have 31 days?
In which month is Christmas? Easter?

8 The Date § 32

Grandfather's birthday is ...
February the ...

When is your birthday? When is your mother's birthday?

When is Christmas, New Year's Day?

Now ask the other boys and girls when their birthdays are.

9 The Seasons

1. What are the seasons?
2. In which season ...

3. When do they play cricket? 4. When does it snow? 5. When is Easter?
6. When is Easter? 7. When are the fields green? 8. When are the apples ripe? 9. When do the leaves fall? 10. When do the leaves turn yellow? 11. When do the leaves turn red?

5 A Time-table:
London—Edinburgh
§ 30

(*dep. = departure, arr. = arrival*)

London		dep. 9.15 a.m.
Nottingham	arr. 11.13 a.m.	dep. 11.17 a.m.
Chesterfield	arr. 11.59 a.m.	dep. 12.01 p.m.
Sheffield	arr. 12.18 p.m.	dep. 12.25 p.m.
Leeds	arr. 1.27 p.m.	dep. 1.35 p.m.
Carlisle	arr. 3.50 p.m.	dep. 3.52 p.m.
Edinburgh	arr. 6.34 p.m.	

1. *When does the train leave London?*
 2. *When does it arrive at ...?*
 3. *When does it leave ...?*
- Go on.*

6 The Days of the Week
§ 32

The first day is Sunday, the third is ...

Now ask the other boys and girls.

Which is the third day of the week? Which is the ...

7 The Months
§ 32

a) The first month is January, the second month is ...

Now ask the other boys and girls.

Which is the fourth month of the year? Which is the ...

- b) Which month is February? February is the second month of the year.
Which month is August? August ...
- Go on.*
- c) Which months have 30 days, which have 31?
In which month is Christmas? Easter? Your birthday?

8 The Date
§ 32

Grandfather's birthday is on February 17th (read: on February the seventeenth).

When is your birthday? When is your father's (mother's, brother's, sister's) birthday?

When is Christmas, New Year's Day?

Now ask the other boys and girls when their birthdays are.

9 The Seasons

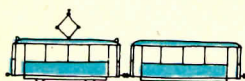
1. What are the four seasons?
2. In which season do English boys play football?
3. When do they play cricket?
4. When are the roads icy?
5. When does it snow?
6. When is Easter?
7. When do the flowers begin to grow again?
8. When are the fields green?
9. When is the weather fine and dry?
10. When are the apples ripe?
11. When do the farmers bring in the harvest?

10 Put in the prepositions 'at, in, on'

1. Grandfather gets up ... 7 o'clock ... summer and ... 8 o'clock ... winter. 2. ... Sundays he lies in bed a little longer. 3. ... the morning, after breakfast, he reads the newspaper. 4. ... Mondays, Wednesdays and Fridays a woman comes to clean Grandfather's rooms and to prepare lunch for him. 5. ... the afternoon Grandfather lies down for an hour. 6. ... half past four he has tea and eats a piece of toast or cake. 7. Sometimes he visits friends ... the afternoon or evening. 8. ... Sundays Grandfather's relations come to visit him. 9. Grandfather's birthday is ... February 17th. 10. His house is always full ... that day, and Grandfather is happy.

11 The Preposition 'by'

The Bartons go to Oxford **by train**. They do not go **by car**. Many English children go to school **by bicycle**. Many American children go to school **by bus**. Many German children go to school **by tram** or go on foot. You can go to America **by ship** or **by plane**.



Now you can answer these questions.

How do you go to school? How do your friends go to school? How does your father go to his office? How can you go to England? How can you go to America?

12 A Play: Grandfather's Birthday

Scene One: The Bartons arrive.

Grandfather: Hallo! Nice to see you all. You're the first guests.

Mr Barton: Hallo, Father. How are you?

Grandfather: I'm fine, thank you. And you?

Mrs Barton: Fine, thank you.

The Bartons: Happy birthday, Grandpa. — Many happy returns of the day. — Here are our presents.

They give Grandfather their presents.

Grandfather: Thank you very much. Come in and take off your coats.

Scene Two: The guests leave.

Mr Barton: We must go now. Our train leaves at 6.49.

Uncle George: And our train leaves in twenty minutes.

Joyce: Where's my coat?

Denis: Where's my cap?

Aunt Dorothy: Here it is.

Uncle George: Where are my gloves?

The others: Aren't they on the chair — or on the floor?

Uncle George: No, they aren't.
Grandfather: Aren't they in your pocket?
Uncle George: Oh yes, they're in my pocket.
Mr Barton: Hurry up, it's very late now.
All together: Good-bye, Grandfather.
Grandfather: Good-bye. Thank you all.
Act this play in the classroom.

13 Test your pronunciation

Pronounce the following words:

peach, dear, head, eat, season, to reach, to read, ready, please, year, teacher, leave, feather.

Make lists:

[iə]	[i:]
ear	peach
...	...

14 Translation

1. Heute ist Großmutter und Onkel Georg die ersten Gäste.

4. Sie sagen: „Herzlich Willkommen, Großmutter!“ und geben ihr ihre Geschenke. 5. Sie dankt ihnen und sagt: „Danke sehr. Sie sind gerade, was ich brauche.“ 6. Taunus (Viertel vor vier) an. 7. Sie bringt ankommen sieben weitere Gäste an. 9. Der erste ein Paar Handschuhe, der dritte ein Paar Handschuhe, der fünfte ein Paar Handschuhe, der sechste ein Paar Handschuhe! 10. „Wie komisch!“ sagen sie allen. 11. Um neun Uhr fahren die Gäste an, aber sie ist nicht klein, das zweite zu groß, das dritte zu klein, das vierte zu groß, das fünfte zu klein, das sechste zu groß, das siebte zu klein, und Großmutter mag diese Farben.

Let's prepare lesson 8

Mr Barton has a big farm.
 Grandfather has a very nice room.
 Our house has seven windows.
 The week has seven days.

Uncle George: No, they aren't.

Grandfather: Aren't they in your pocket?

Uncle George: Oh yes, they're in my pocket.

Mr Barton: Hurry up, it's very late now.

All together: Good-bye, Grandfather.

Grandfather: Good-bye. Thank you all very much again for the presents.

Act this play in the classroom.

13 Test your pronunciation

Pronounce the following words:

peach, dear, head, heat, weather, each, ear, near, seat, eat, season, to reach, to read, ready, speak, bread, breakfast, tea, clean, please, year, teacher, leave, feather.

Make lists:

[iə]

ear

...

[i:]

peach

...

[e]

head

...

14 Translation

1. Heute ist Großmutter's Geburtstag. 2. Tante Dorothea und Onkel Georg kommen um halb vier an. 3. Sie sind die ersten Gäste. 4. Sie sagen: „Herzlichen Glückwunsch zum Geburtstag, Großmutter!“ und geben ihr ihre Geschenke: ein Tischtuch und ein Paar Handschuhe. 5. Sie dankt ihnen und sagt: „Wie hübsch die Handschuhe sind! Sie sind gerade, was ich brauche.“ 6. Tante Margarete kommt um dreiviertel vier (Viertel vor vier) an. 7. Sie bringt auch ein Paar Handschuhe. 8. Um vier kommen sieben weitere Gäste an. 9. Der erste hat Taschentücher, der zweite ein Paar Handschuhe, der dritte ein Paar Hausschuhe, der vierte einen Schal, der fünfte ein Paar Handschuhe, der sechste Blumen und der siebte ein Paar Handschuhe! 10. „Wie komisch!“ sagt Großmutter, aber sie dankt ihnen allen. 11. Um neun Uhr fahren die Gäste ab. 12. Großmutter sieht ihre fünf Paar Handschuhe an, aber sie ist nicht glücklich. 13. Das erste Paar ist zu klein, das zweite zu groß, das dritte zu dünn, das vierte zu dick und das fünfte ist gelb, und Großmutter mag diese Farbe nicht. Arme Großmutter!

Let's prepare lesson 8

Mr Barton has a big farm.

Grandfather has a very nice room.

Our house has seven windows.

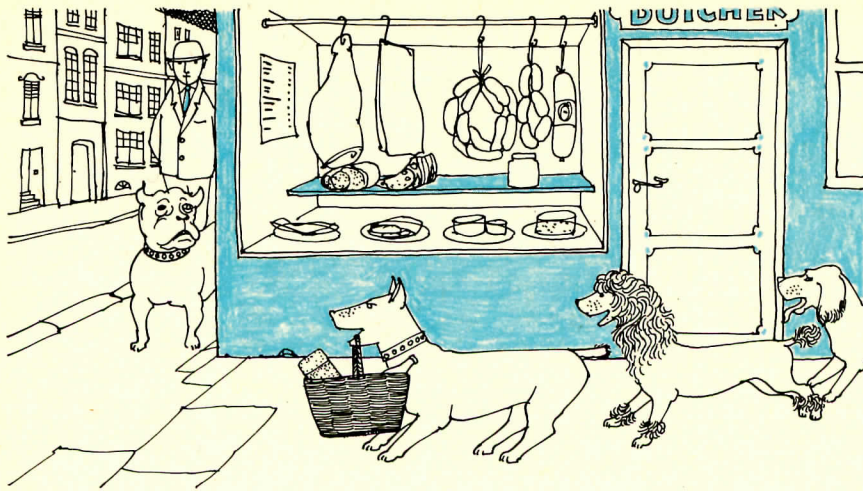
The week has seven days.

It is Mr Barton's farm.

It is Grandfather's room.

They are the windows of our house.

The days of the week are Monday, ...



8 A. Prince

Prince is a big dog. He looks like a wolf. Whose dog is he? He is Mrs Bolton's dog. Mrs Bolton is blind and Prince looks after her every day of the week. He has not much time to play.

5 Every morning Prince goes shopping. He takes the basket with the shopping-list and goes first to the baker's. There he gets a loaf of bread.

Then he enters the grocer's shop.

10 "Hallo, Prince! What does Mrs Bolton want today?" The grocer looks at the list in Prince's basket. Mrs Bolton wants a pound of sugar, a packet of salt, a tin of coffee, some biscuits and a small bottle of lemonade.

Prince's favourite shop is the butcher's.

15 The butcher always gives Prince some bones. But today the butcher is not there, and there are no bones for Prince. The shop-assistant does not see the box for the meat in Prince's basket. He wraps the meat in a piece of paper and puts it in the basket. Prince takes the basket and leaves the shop.

In the street a poodle begins to follow Prince.

The smell of the meat in Prince's basket is good.

20 Soon many dogs are following Prince. Suddenly, at the corner of Fish Street, a bulldog stands in front of Prince. Prince stops. The bulldog is ready to jump.

"Come here, Grip. Come here at once!"
The bulldog hears its master's voice and runs like the wind. The dogs are making a terrible noise.

5 At last Prince reaches Mrs Bolton's house. The door of the house is open, and Prince runs in with his faithful friend. Prince rushes in with a happy bark.
"Well done, Prince," says Mrs Bolton.

B. The Village Shop

At the village shop, Miss Pringle stamps. If you want cigars, sugar, or anything else, you can buy them all at the village shop.

When you enter the shop, you tell the shop-assistant what you want. She fetches it and tells you the price. You can buy anything you like. Miss Pringle likes to chat.

She knows everything about everything in the village. She knows that Farmer Brown's cow is ill, that Mrs Grey's rich Uncle George is dead, and that there is a lot of money in the bank.

Half an hour later you leave the village shop and go home.

<My Doggie>



“Come here, Grip. Come here at once.”

The bulldog hears its master’s voice and turns round. Prince sees his chance and runs like the wind. The other dogs are close behind him. They are making a terrible noise.

5 At last Prince reaches Mrs Bolton’s house at the end of the road. The door of the house is open, and Mrs Bolton is waiting there for her faithful friend. Prince rushes in with the basket.

“Well done, Prince,” says Mrs Bolton, and gives him a big piece of meat.

B. The Village Shop

At the village shop, Miss Pringle sells everything from biscuits to stamps. If you want cigars, sugar, a bottle of milk or a newspaper, you can buy them all at the village shop.

When you enter the shop, you tell Miss Pringle what you want; she fetches it and tells you the price. You pay, and she gives you the change. Then, if you have time, you can hear a lot of interesting things. Miss Pringle likes to chat.

She knows everything about everybody in the village. She knows that Farmer Brown’s cow is ill, that Mrs White’s son has measles, that Mr Grey’s rich Uncle George is dead, and that Mr Grey now has a lot of money in the bank.

Half an hour later you leave the shop with all the latest news of the village.

〈My Doggie〉



I have a dog,
His name is Jack,
His coat is white
With spots of black.

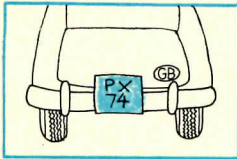
I take him out
'Most every day,
Such fun we have,
We run and play.

C. Nurton

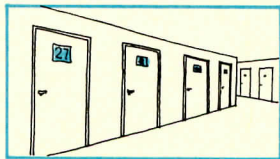
4 A Reading Exercise
§ 33

We arrive at Uncle George's house at a quarter past four. I ring the bell and Aunt Joyce's son Denis opens the door. I like Denis's dog Prince very much. Prince's coat is brown and his tail is black. Father likes Uncle George's cigars and Mother Aunt Joyce's tea. And what is Prince's favourite food? Bones.

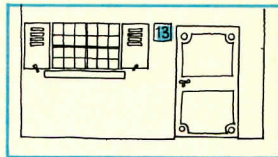
5 The Genitive §§ 7, 34



a) The number of the car is ...



The number of the room ...



The number ...

b) *of-Genitive or s-Genitive?*

Ex.: (The grocer — daughter) does not know (our street — the name).

The grocer's daughter does not know the name of our street.

1. The (our house — key) is in (Father — pocket). 2. (Mr Miller — son) is painting (their garage — the door). 3. (Our wardrobe — the key) is in (Mother — bag). 4. (The butcher — dog) likes (meat — the smell). 5. (The Dents — children) are painting (their kitchen — the walls). 6. (The Millers — cleaner) is cleaning (the boys — the rooms).

6 A Game: s-Genitive or of-Genitive?
§§ 7, 34

It is (Denis — birthday). The children are playing the game 'What is it?' They are in (Denis — room). They must guess a 'thing'.

They ask:

- Is it in the garden?
- Is it in a (house — room)?
- Is it in your (father — room)?
- Is it in your (sister — room)?
- Is it in this room?
- Is it in a (this room — corner)?
- Is it on the table?
- Is it in the (your jacket — pocket)?
- Is it your bicycle key?
- Is it your handkerchief?

Play this game with your friends.

Denis answers:

- No, it isn't.
- Yes, it is.
- No, it isn't.
- No, it isn't.
- Yes, it is.
- No, it isn't.
- No, it isn't.
- Yes, it is.
- No, it isn't.
- Yes, it is.

7 A Game: Shopping

First pupil: I want to buy six eggs.

Second pupil: I want to buy six eggs and a packet of salt.

Third pupil: I want to buy six eggs, a packet of salt and ...

Go on.

If you forget one word, you are 'out'.

8 Ask questions with 'whose' § 27

Ex.: Mrs Bolton's dog looks like a wolf.

Whose dog looks like a wolf? Mrs Bolton's.

1. The butcher's dog does not look very friendly.
2. The Millers' bulldog is a faithful animal.
3. The baker's black poodle hears its master's voice.
4. The grocer's dog makes a terrible noise.
5. Mrs Bolton's dog can go shopping.
6. The hairdresser's poodle is very nervous.
7. Our teacher's dog waits for its master in front of the school.
8. Aunt Joyce's dog can carry a basket in its mouth.

9 Translation

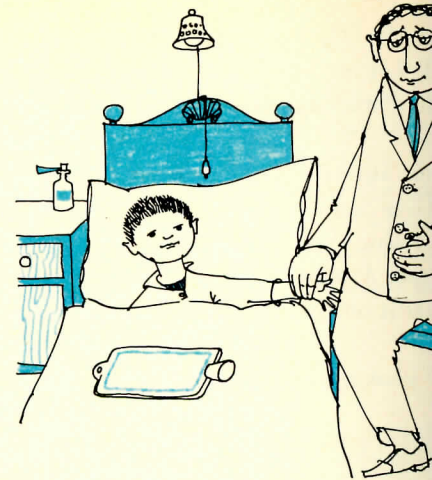
1. Eines Nachmittags hat Frau Barton viel (eine Menge) zu tun. 2. Sie hat keine Zeit, einkaufen zu gehen. 3. „Laß mich für dich einkaufen gehen, Mutti,“ sagt ihre Tochter Susanne. 4. „Nein, Susanne,“ sagt Frau Barton, „du bist zu klein.“ 5. „Nein, bin ich nicht,“ sagt Susanne, „ich bin fünf.“ 6. „Also gut,“ sagt Frau Barton. „Ich brauche ein Pfund Kaffee, ein Brot und eine Flasche Limonade.“ 7. Susanne nimmt ihren Korb und geht einkaufen. 8. Das Lebensmittelgeschäft ist an der Ecke der Straße. 9. „Guten Tag, Susanne,“ sagt der Verkäufer. „Was willst du [haben]?“ 10. „Bitte, kann ich ein Pfund Limonade, eine Flasche Brot und einen Laib Kaffee haben?“ 11. Der Verkäufer lacht, aber er gibt Susanne ein Pfund Kaffee, einen Laib Brot und eine Flasche Limonade. 12. Hinterher sagt Frau Barton: „Du bist ein kluges Mädchen, Susanne.“

Let's prepare lesson 9

The butcher gives **Prince** a bone, but he does not give a bone to the poodle. Mrs Barton wants some bones for her dog, but the butcher offers them to **Prince**.

Jane shows **David** her bicycle. Jack first shows his school report to his mother, then to his father.

Grandma hands **Grandfather** a cigar, and an orange to each of the children.



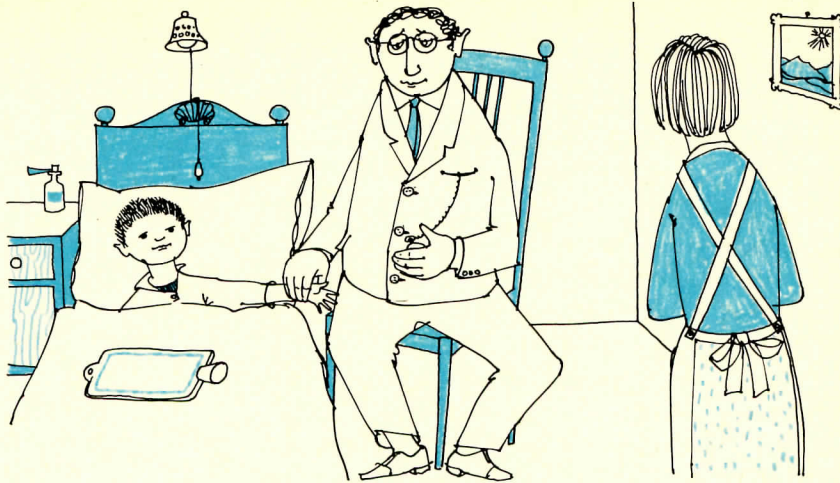
9 A. The Stomach of an Ox

Vivien and David are in the garden. "Who wants a plum?" cries David. The plums fall to the ground. David picks them up. She shakes her head. "No, thank you. I don't eat them. Green plums are bad for the stomach of an ox."

"You are an ox if you eat unripe plums," says David. David laughs and eats one green plum. Later there are cream cakes for tea. He gives it to Vivien.

"Pass me the butter, please, David," says Vivien. But David is not paying attention. "David, pass the butter to your mother," says Mr Dent. But David does not pass the butter. They are on his stomach.

"What's the matter, David?" asks Mr Dent. "I have a stomach-ache, Mummy," says David. "He must be ill," says Mr Dent. David goes to bed with a hot-water bottle. When the doctor arrives, he asks Mr Dent.



9 A. The Stomach of an Ox

Vivien and David are in the garden. The plum-tree is full of plums. "Who wants a plum?" cries David and shakes the tree. A few plums fall to the ground. David picks them up and offers one to his sister. She shakes her head. "No, thank you, David. Give them to Mother, but don't eat them. Green plums are bad for your stomach."

"Don't tell that story to me, Vivien. Tell it to little Shirley. I have the stomach of an ox."

"You are an ox if you eat unripe plums," says Vivien.

David laughs and eats one green plum after the other.

Later there are cream cakes for tea. David does not want his cream cake. He gives it to Vivien.

"Pass me the butter, please, David," says Mrs Dent.

But David is not paying attention. He passes the butter to his sister.

"David, pass the butter to your mother, not to your sister," says Mr Dent. But David does not pass his mother the butter. His hands are on his stomach.

"What's the matter, David?" asks Mrs Dent. "Your face is quite green."

"I have a stomach-ache, Mummy," says David. "I . . . I feel sick."

"He must be ill," says Mr Dent. "We must fetch the doctor at once."

David goes to bed with a hot-water bottle on his stomach.

When the doctor arrives, he asks Mrs Dent: "Has your son a temperature?"

"No, doctor." David's mother takes Dr Black to David's room.

"Hallo, David, give me your hand. Let me feel your pulse."

David's pulse is quite normal. "Show me your tongue, David."

David shows the doctor his tongue.

5 "Thank you," says Dr Black. "Your stomach isn't in order, David."

He hands Mrs Dent a prescription. "Give him a spoonful of this medicine tonight and tomorrow morning. It's nothing serious. Good-bye, David."

Now David is alone. He feels very sad. After a while Vivien comes into the room with a little bottle. She puts it on the bedside table.

10 "What's that?" says David.

"Ox medicine," says Vivien. "For your stomach."

<B. Conversation: How Are You?>

I am very well. I am feeling fine.

I don't feel very well. I feel sick.

What's the matter with you? You look very pale.

I have a headache and a bad cough.

I think I have flu.

You must see the doctor.

Take this medicine three times a day.

You must stay in bed until your temperature goes down.

Are you feeling better today?

Yes, these pills are doing me good.

I feel quite well again.

<Round: Row, row, row your Boat>

1
Row, row, row your boat Gen - tly down the
2
stream; Mer - ri - ly, mer - ri - ly, mer - ri - ly,
3
mer - ri - ly. Life is but a dream.

Exercises

1 Answer these questions

1. To whom does Vivien say to David the other? 4. Who

tea? 5. To whom does he give the cake to his mother? 7. Whom does Mrs Dent say to David? 9. What does the doctor stomach of an ox? 11. To whom does

2 A Sentence Switchboard § 35

Uncle George	offers	sandwich
Mother	gives	a cup of
Grandmother	passes	cream
Aunt Margery	hands	plums
Grandfather		toast

3 Presents for the Millers § 35

David is spending in the country. Jack, Jane and

David arrives, he has presents for them: a football, a tin of coffee, a box of cigars.

To whom does David give his presents?

Does he give the box of cigars to Jane? Does he give it to ...

Does he give the silk dress to Jack?

Does he give the tin of coffee to the parents?

Does he give the dog biscuits to Mrs Miller?

Does he give the football to Maud?

Does he give the little red handbag to ...

4 Presents for Everybody § 35

There is a big number of people entering the room: a man with a black

— a woman in a red and white dress — a green jacket — a young woman with a hat in his mouth — a boy with a cap on.

Exercises

1 Answer these questions

1. To whom does David offer a plum? 2. What does Vivien say to David? 3. Who eats one green plum after the other? 4. Why doesn't David eat his cream cake for tea? 5. To whom does he give the cake? 6. Why can't David pass the butter to his mother? 7. Whom does Mrs Dent fetch after tea? 8. What does the doctor say to David? 9. What does the doctor say to Mrs Dent? 10. Has David the stomach of an ox? 11. To whom does the doctor hand the prescription?

2 A Sentence Switchboard § 35

Uncle George	offers	sandwiches	to David, not to Vivien.
Mother	gives	a cup of tea	to Vivien and David.
Grandmother	passes	cream cakes	to each of the boys and girls.
Aunt Margery	hands	plums	to everybody in the room.
Grandfather		toast	to all the guests.

3 Presents for the Millers § 35

David is spending his holidays with Mr and Mrs Miller in the country. Mr and Mrs Miller have three children: Jack, Jane and Maud, and a little white poodle. When David arrives, he has presents for them: a silk dress, a little red handbag, a football, a tin of coffee, a box of cigars and a tin of dog biscuits.

To whom does David give his presents?

Does he give the box of cigars to Jane? No, he doesn't give it to Jane. He gives it to ...

Does he give the silk dress to Jack? ...

Does he give the tin of coffee to the poodle? ...

Does he give the dog biscuits to Mrs Miller? ...

Does he give the football to Maud? ...

Does he give the little red handbag to Jack? ...

4 Presents for Everybody § 35

There is a big new shop in Baker Street. On the first day many people enter the shop:

a man with a black hat on — a woman in a brown coat — a woman in a red and white dress — a girl with a yellow scarf — a boy in a green jacket — a young woman with black hair — an old man with a pipe in his mouth — a boy with a cap on.

When they leave the shop, a shop assistant gives them presents: a packet of tea — a box of cigars — a tin of meat — a packet of biscuits — a bottle of lemonade — a tin of coffee — a tin of peaches — half a pound of cherries.

Ex.: The shop assistant gives the packet of tea to the woman in the brown coat. He gives ... Go on.

5 Tea-time §§ 19, 35

Ex.: Please pass Father the salt, John. — John passes it to him.

1. Please hand Aunt Dorothy the sugar-basin, Mary. — Mary ...
2. Mike, bring the children the cherry jam. — ...
3. Please give Grandfather his pipe, Bill. — ...
4. Susan, offer Grandmother some biscuits. — ...
5. Maud, hand your cousin Vivien the milk-jug. — ...

6 A Sentence Switchboard § 36

Form questions with 'whom' from the sentences in the switchboard and give answers.

Ex.: Whom does Uncle George visit? He visits Doctor Black.

Mrs Barton	(to know)	the new teacher.
Uncle George	(to thank)	Doctor Black.
The Millers	(to visit)	David's grandmother.

7 Questions and Answers §§ 28, 36

Look again at the switchboard on page 91.

a) Ask questions with 'to whom' and answer them in complete sentences.

Ex.: To whom does Mother offer cream cakes?

She offers cream cakes to each of the boys and girls.

b) Ask questions with 'what' and answer them in complete sentences.

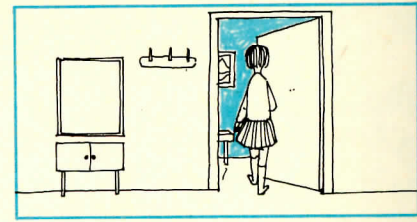
Ex.: What does Mother offer to each of the boys and girls?

She offers cream cakes to each of the boys and girls.

8 Ask questions about the words in bold type with 'who, whom' etc.? §§ 28, 36

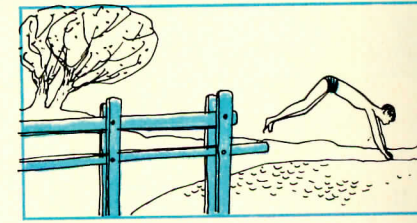
1. Jack is spending his holidays on his grandfather's farm.
2. Jack visits his grandparents every summer.
3. One day Mr and Mrs Green are walking in the fields.
4. They see a boy in a tree.
5. The boy is eating apples.
6. He offers some apples to Mr and Mrs Green.
7. The man gives his dog an order and goes away.
8. Half an hour later two men come to Jack's tree.
9. The farmer sees his grandson in the tree.
10. In the evening Jack's grandmother sends a basket full of apples to Mr and Mrs Green.

9 'Into' or 'in'?



Vivien is going into the room.

Question: Where? (Wohin?)



Jack is jumping into the water.

Put in 'in' or 'into'.

1. There are apples ... the basket.
2. ... the room.
3. A woman is going ... the shop.
4. ... the bottle.
5. The medicine is ... the bottle.
6. ... the garage.
7. Mr Barton is pushing the car ... the garage.
8. ... the garage.
9. Some boys are playing ... the garage.

10 'all, full' and their compounds

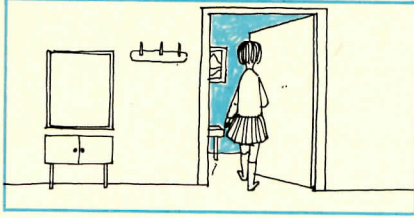
The plum-tree is full. Give him a spoonful full, but: awful, full, but: always.

11 A Dialogue: David is ill

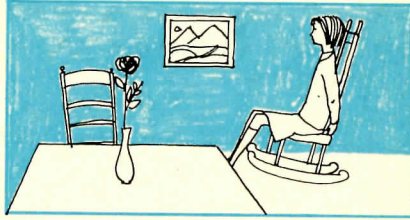
Doctor: Hallo, David.
David: Good morning.
Doctor: Well, David, your face is quite pale.

David: I feel sick. I have a stomach ache.
Doctor: Let me see. Yes, your pulse is fast, your tongue is red, please. Oh, your stomach is very serious. Take a spoonful of medicine.

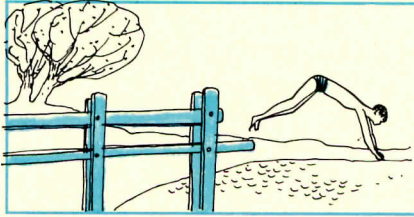
9 'Into' or 'in'?



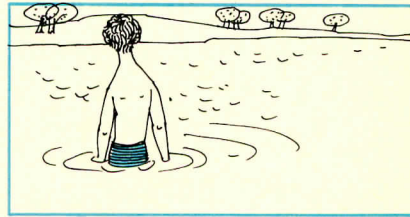
Vivien is going **into** the room.
Question: Where? (Wohin?)



Now she is sitting **in** the room.
Question: Where? (Wo?)



Jack is jumping **into** the water.



Now he is standing **in** the water.

Put in 'in' or 'into'.

1. There are apples ... the basket.
2. The teacher is coming ... the class-room.
3. A woman is going ... the shop.
4. The letter is ... the envelope.
5. The medicine is ... the bottle.
6. Jack is throwing a ball ... the water.
7. Mr Barton is pushing the car ... the garage.
8. The car is standing ... the garage.
9. Some boys are playing ... the street.

10 'all, full' and their compounds

The plum-tree is full of plums.
Give him a spoonful of medicine.

full, but: awful, wonderful, faithful.
all, but: always.

11 A Dialogue:
David is ill

Doctor: Hallo, David.

David: Good morning, Doctor.

Doctor: Well, David, what's the matter with you? Your face is quite green.

David: I feel sick. I have a stomach-ache. But I have no temperature.

Doctor: Let me see. Yes, your pulse is quite normal. Now show me your tongue, please. Oh, your stomach is not in order. But it's nothing serious. Take a spoonful of medicine tonight and tomorrow morning.

David: Must I stay in bed?
 Doctor: Yes. And don't eat unripe plums again. Good-bye.
 David: Good-bye, Doctor, and thank you very much.
 Act this play in the classroom.

12 Rhyming Words

Each word in the left column rhymes with a word in the right column. Can you find the pairs?

a) These are easy		b) These are not so easy		c) These are a little difficult	
arrive	cat	grey	plum	dear	here
bread	house	right	word	cow	wear
mouse	head	some	see	throw	know
hat	five	son	make	where	now
door	chair	third	bite	put	foot
hair	floor	break	day	but	gone
year	seat	these	please	on	alone
eat	ear	key	sun	bone	shut

13 Translation

Am Sonntag ist das Haus der Bartons voller Gäste. Die Gäste sagen: 1. Bring mir bitte eine Tasse Tee. 2. Vivien, gib mir das Brot, bitte. 3. Gib die Streichhölzer Onkel David, aber nicht seinem kleinen Sohn. 4. Reiche Onkel Georg den Toast, Jim. 5. Kannst du mir die Zigarren aus (from) meinem Wagen bringen, Hans? 6. Reich die Pflaumen Tante Margarete und Onkel Georg. 7. Zeige diesen Brief deiner Mutter, aber zeige ihn nicht den anderen Gästen. 8. Biete den Kindern Kekse an. 9. Zeige Tante Margarete dein Schulzeugnis, Susanne. 10. David, kannst du uns einen Federhalter und einen Umschlag bringen? 11. Reiche die Zigarren Herrn Müller und Herrn Bäcker, aber biete sie nicht den Kindern an.

Let's prepare lesson 10

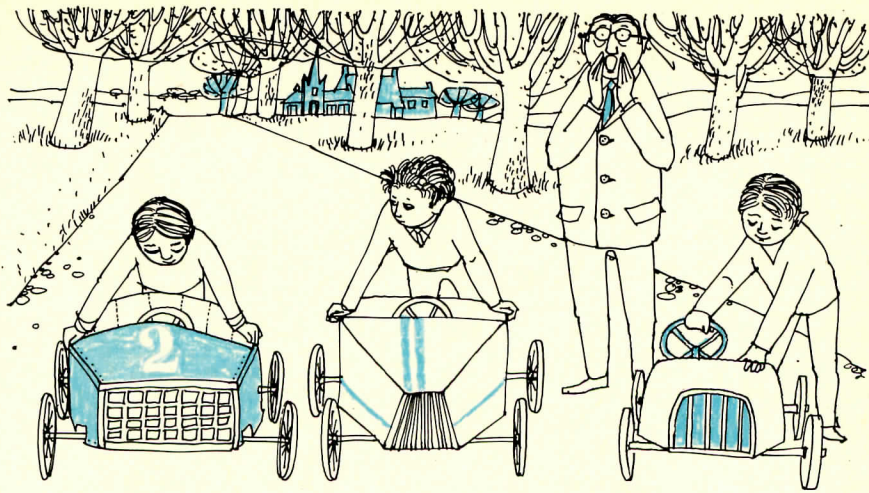
The plums in Mr Dent's garden are **big**. The plums in Mr Barton's garden are **bigger**. The plums in Mr Miller's garden are the **biggest**.
 The porridge is **hot**, the cup of tea is **hotter**, the hot-water bottle is the **hottest** of the three.
 On Grandfather's birthday Denis is very **excited**, Joyce is **more excited**, but Grandfather is the **most excited**.
 David's school report is **good**. Vivien's report is **better**, but Jane's report is the **best** of all.
 Grandmother is as **old** as Grandfather. Aunt Dorothy is **not as old** as Grandmother. Grandmother is **older than** Aunt Dorothy.



10 A. The Soap-box Race

Today is the most exciting day of the year, the day of the Soap-box Race. There are two o'clock the little cars and their drivers are racing up the hill. This year Jim Davis is among the winners. Jim is ten, the youngest boy in the class. His car is so big as Bill's and it is cheaper. Bill's car is much bigger and more expensive. Jim does not want to be in the race.

"Ready — steady — go!" shouts the teacher. The cars start. The hill is steep. At first the course becomes narrower, then it goes down to a pond to reach the winning-post. Who will win? Bolt again. But Jim is not far behind. He is faster than all the others, but it goes very fast. The spectators are very excited. They are shouting now. "Come on, Jim!" they shout. He is just behind him. But he is not afraid. He is shouting, "Come on, Jim! Catch me if you can!" Bill is shouting, "Look out, Bill!" shouts a spectator.



10 A. The Soap-box Race

Today is the most exciting day of the year for the boys in our town, the day of the Soap-box Race. There is a prize for the best driver. At two o'clock the little cars and their young drivers are ready on Castle Hill. This year Jim Davis is among them for the first time.

Jim is ten, the youngest boy in the race. Bill Bolt, the winner last year, is thirteen — much bigger and stronger than Jim. Jim's car is not so big as Bill's and it is cheaper. Bill's car is much heavier than the others and more expensive. Jim does not expect to win, but he is proud to be in the race.

"Ready — steady — go!" shouts the starter.

The cars start. The hill is steep. The worst part is at the bottom. There the course becomes narrower, and they must turn right at the pond to reach the winning-post. Who is leading? Of course — it is Bill Bolt again. But Jim is not far behind him. His car is smaller and lighter than all the others, but it goes very fast.

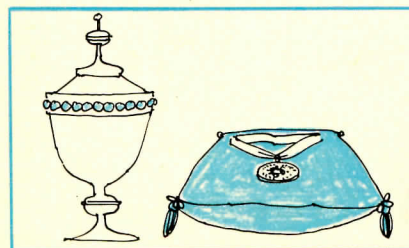
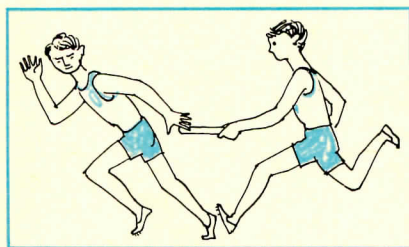
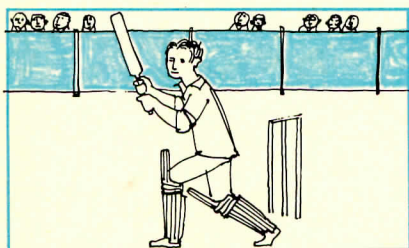
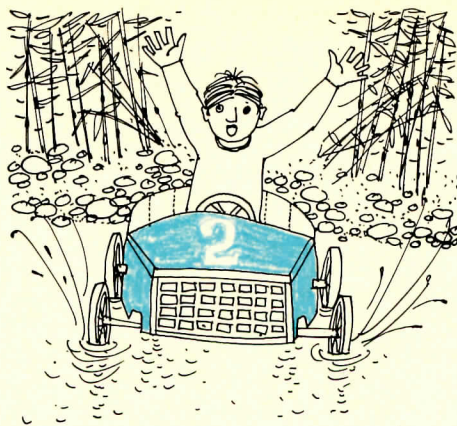
The spectators are very excited. Jim is only three yards behind Bill now. "Come on, Jim!" they shout. Bill looks round and sees Jim's car just behind him. But he is not afraid of Jim. He laughs and calls, "Come on, Jim! Catch me if you can!" Bill quite forgets the pond.

"Look out, Bill!" shouts a spectator.

Too late! Splash! Bill drives straight into the water. No one is more surprised than Bill himself.

As quick as lightning Jim turns right at the pond. The spectators cheer. Jim is the winner.

Jim receives the prize — a camera. This is the proudest moment of his life. He is the happiest boy in the town today. And who is the wettest and the most disappointed? Bill Bolt!



<B. Sport>

David and Vivien are both very keen on sport. David plays football and cricket, and he hopes one day to be in his school team for both games. Vivien plays tennis and hockey. They can both swim, and David is already quite a good diver. On summer evenings after school they often go to the swimming-pool with their friends.

Once a year there is a sports day at their school. The boys and girls are divided into teams, and the best runners and jumpers in each team train for the great day. On sports day the boys and girls assemble on the school playing-field. Many parents come, too. There are sprints, long-distance races, relay races, and many other events. At the end the headmaster gives cups and medals to the winners.

Exercises

1 Answer the following questions

1. What is the most interesting thing in the town? 2. What does Bill say when he is surprised? 3. What does Jim say when he is surprised? 4. What does Bill do at the pond? 5. What does Bill do at the pond? 6. What does Bill do at the pond?

Bill's cars? 4. What does Bill say when he is surprised? 5. What does Bill do at the pond? 6. What does Bill do at the pond?

2 Compare the following adjectives §§ 37, 38

Put the adjectives in order of size.

1. long 2. thin 3. large
longer, thinner, larger,
the longest; the thinnest; the largest;

... young, pretty, exciting, old, thick, hungry, astonished, clever, short, hot, excited, cold, warm, fast, angry, poor, silly, surprised

3 The Comparison with 'as — as' §§ 40

Ex.: December is as cold as January.

1. Jack is as tall as his friend. 2. David is as good as a swimmer. 3. David is as good as a swimmer. 4. My father is as good as a swimmer. 5. My father and my teacher are as good as a swimmer. 6. My bicycle is as expensive as yours. 7. This soup is as cold as yours.

4 Jane and her Brother Jack § 40

a) Jack is older than Jane. He is ... Go on. b) Jane is not so good as Jack. She is not so good as Jack.

5 Good — better — best § 39

Bill is a good swimmer. He is the best swimmer in the school. The first is the best. The third is the best. Go on up to ten.

The boys and girls learn 20 new words. The next day Vivien remembers 15 words. Jane remembers 16 words. She is a better swimmer. Go on. (Jack, David, Jim, Bill)

Exercises

1 Answer the following questions

1. What is the most exciting day of the year for the boys in the town?
2. What do you know about the drivers Jim and Bill?
3. What do you know about Jim's and Bill's cars?
4. What does Bill say when he sees Jim's little car just behind him?
5. What does Bill do at the pond?
6. What do you know about the end of the soap-box race?

2 Compare the following adjectives §§ 37, 38

Put the adjectives in columns 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5.

- | | | | | |
|--------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|-----------------------|
| 1. long | 2. thin | 3. large | 4. happy | 5. interesting |
| longer, | thinner, | larger, | happier, | more interesting, |
| the longest; | the thinnest; | the largest; | the happiest; | the most interesting; |
| ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |

young, pretty, exciting, old, thick, hungry, quick, nervous, easy, small, nice, astonished, clever, short, hot, excited, disappointed, cold, heavy, dirty, rich, warm, fast, angry, poor, silly, surprised, narrow, light, funny.

3 The Comparison with 'as — as' § 40

Ex.: December is as long as January.

1. Jack and his friend (old).
2. Bob and his brother (thin).
3. David and a wolf (hungry).
4. Shirley's dress and grass (green).
5. My father and my teacher (strict).
6. Jim's camera and Jane's bicycle (expensive).
7. This soup and water (thin).
8. This lemonade and ice (cold).

4 Jane and her Brother Jack § 40

- a) Jack is **older than** Jane.
He is ... *Go on.* (strong, big, heavy, clever)
- b) Jane is **not so old as** Jack.
She is not so strong ... *Go on.*

5 Good — better — best § 39

Bill is a good soap-box driver. But Jim is the first at the winning-post. He is the **best** driver of all.
The first is the best. The second is **better than** the third.
The third is **better than** the fourth. The ... etc.
Go on up to ten.

The boys and girls learn 20 new words in their German lesson.
The next day Vivien remembers 15 words. She is a **good** pupil.
Jane remembers 16 words. She is a **better** pupil **than** Vivien.
Go on. (Jack, David, Jim, Bill)

6 Bad—worse—worst § 39

1. Many boys have only 4 mistakes in their dictation. Bob has 8 mistakes. Bob's dictation is **bad**. Jim has 9 mistakes. Jim's dictation is **worse than** Bob's.

David has 10 mistakes. David's dictation is **worse than** Jim's.

Go on. (13, 15, 16, 18, 20, 21 mistakes)

The dictation with 21 mistakes is the **worst** of the whole class.

2. There are 7 mistakes in Susan's homework. Susan's English is **bad**.

There are 9 mistakes in Shirley's ...

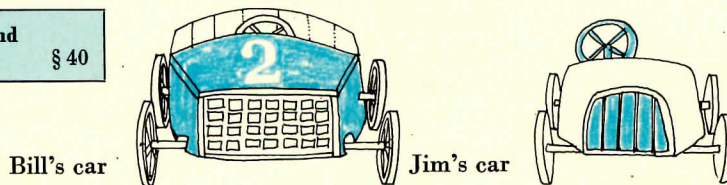
Go on. (Maud 11, Peter 12, Vivien 15, Mike 19, John 23 mistakes)

7 A Sentence Switchboard §§ 37, 38

Ex.: Who has the best school report in the class?

Who has	the (dirty) hands the (long) hair the (white) shirt the (big) feet the (old) English book the (interesting) hobby the (good) school report the (bad) dictation the (expensive) bicycle	in the class?
---------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------

8 Bill's Car and Jim's Car § 40



a) Bill's car is **bigger than** Jim's.
 Jim's car is **smaller than** Bill's.
 Bill's car is ...

Go on.

(long — short, heavy — light, new — old, expensive — cheap, good — bad)

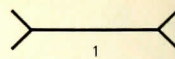
b) Answer these questions.

Is Jim's car as **big** as Bill's?

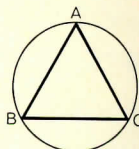
No, Jim's car is **not so big** as Bill's; it is smaller than Bill's.

Is Jim's car ...? Go on.

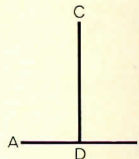
9 Can you believe your eyes?



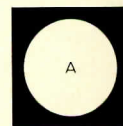
a) Look at the three lines. Isn't line 2 shorter than line 3? Is line 2 as long as line 3? Which is the longest line? Measure them.



b) Look at the triangle. Is the side AB longer than BC?



c) Are the two lines equal? If not, which is longer?



d) Look at the three white balls, A, B and C. Is B smaller than A and C? Which is the largest? If you can find the answers, you are a detective!

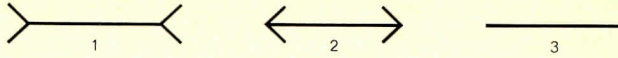
10 Find suitable adjectives

Ex.: pretty, open

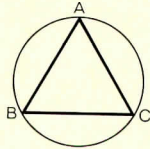
Adjectives

- open, red, strict
- thick, funny, modern
- green, friendly, good
- icy, easy, blue
- interesting, nervous, bad
- new, empty, strong
- yellow, hungry, English
- thin, silly, long

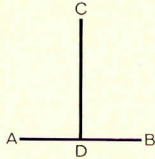
9 Can you believe your eyes?



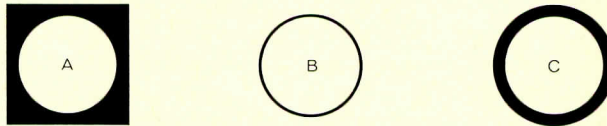
a) Look at the three lines. Isn't line 2 shorter than line 1? Is line 1 longer than line 3? Is line 2 as long as line 3? Which is the shortest line? Which is the longest line? Measure them.



b) Look at the triangle. Is the side AB as long as the side BC? Isn't AC shorter than BC?



c) Are the two lines equal? If not, which is the longer?



d) Look at the three white balls, A, B and C. Isn't C bigger than B? Is A as big as C? Is B smaller than A and C? Which is the smallest? Which is the biggest? If you can find the answers, you are the cleverest pupil in the class.

10 Find suitable adjectives

Ex.: pretty, open, poor farmer: a poor farmer

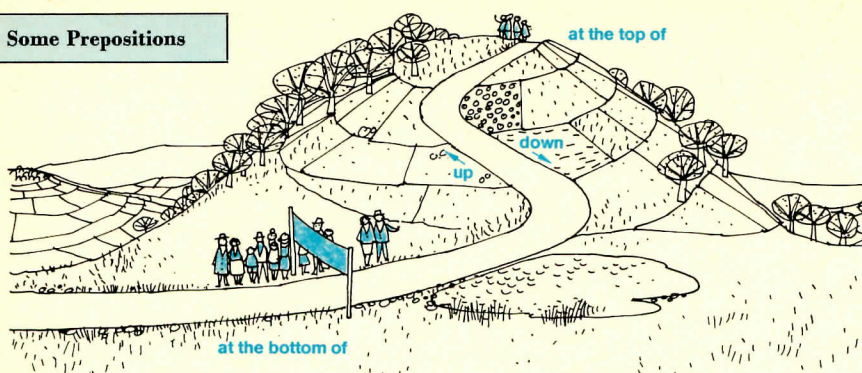
Adjectives

open, red, strict
 thick, funny, modern
 green, friendly, good
 icy, easy, blue
 interesting, nervous, bad
 new, empty, strong
 yellow, hungry, English
 thin, silly, long

Nouns

window ...
 question ...
 cigar ...
 road ...
 tooth ...
 dress ...
 wolf ...
 train ...

11 Some Prepositions



Before the race the boys walk **up** the hill. Then they drive **down** the hill and **past** the pond. The race begins **at the top of** the hill. The winning-post is **at the bottom of** the hill.

Where is the pond? Where is the starter? Where are the spectators waiting?

12 Translation

1. David ist krank im Bett. 2. Es ist der schlimmste Tag seines Lebens. 3. Heute ist der aufregendste Tag für die Jungen in der Stadt, der Tag des Seifenkistenrennens. 4. Zehn junge Fahrer sind da, aber David, der beste Fahrer von allen, ist nicht unter ihnen. 5. Was kann schlimmer sein? 6. Sein Wagen ist so schnell wie der Blitz. 7. Er ist größer, schwerer und teurer als die anderen Wagen. 8. Armer David! 9. Davids bester Freund, Jack, will mit ihm zum Rennen gehen. 10. „Ich kann nicht mit dir gehen, Jack“, sagt David, „in meinem Magen sind zu viele grüne Pflaumen.“ (there are . . .) 11. „Das ist schlimmer als ein schlechtes Zeugnis“, sagt Jack. 12. „Der beste Wagen in der Stadt hat keinen Fahrer. 13. Bill Bolts Wagen ist schlechter. 14. Er ist älter und leichter als dein Wagen, aber jetzt hat Bill Bolt eine gute Chance.“ 15. „Bitte, Jack“, sagt David, „nimm meinen Wagen. 16. Er ist im Garten.“ 17. So schnell wie der Blitz verläßt Jack Davids Zimmer. 18. Es ist der aufregendste Augenblick seines Lebens. 19. Aber David ist nicht so glücklich wie Jack.

Let's prepare lesson 11

Today Jim receives the prize.	Last year Bill received it.
Today the weather is fine.	Last week it was bad.
Today there are fifteen drivers.	Last year there were twenty.
This year Bill has a big car.	Last year he had a small car.
This year Bill wants to win a camera.	Last year he wanted to win a bicycle.



11 A. Dangerous Driving

One day last summer, Mr Honk had an exciting adventure.

Mr Honk had a new black taxi. It was very busy traffic even when big buses and a stand was near Scotland Yard, the

One afternoon a young man stopped. "Taxi!" the man shouted. "To

I must catch the boat train. It leaves at 10. Mr Honk did his best. But there were red traffic lights. Then in the middle of the road lifted his arm to

"Hurry up, man! I don't want to wait." "And I don't want to have an accident."

"You are the slowest driver in London. My taxi leaves in less than ten minutes."

Mr Honk looked in the driver's face. He was Robby Longfellow. The newspapers were full of it.

Mr Honk raced through the street lights, and did everything to attract



11 A. Dangerous Driving

One day last summer, Mr Honk, a London taxi driver, had a most exciting adventure.

Mr Honk had a new black taxi. With his taxi he hurried through the busy traffic even when big buses and lorries blocked the roads. Mr Honk's stand was near Scotland Yard, the London Police Headquarters.

One afternoon a young man stopped Mr Honk's taxi.

"Taxi!" the man shouted. "To Victoria Station as fast as you can. I must catch the boat train. It leaves at three o'clock."

Mr Honk did his best. But there was a lot of traffic. At every corner there were red traffic lights. Then, at a crossing, a policeman in the middle of the road lifted his arm to let the pedestrians pass.

"Hurry up, man! I don't want to miss my train," said the young man.

"And I don't want to have an accident," replied Mr Honk.

"You are the slowest driver in London," shouted the man. "My train leaves in less than ten minutes."

Mr Honk looked in the driving-mirror. Suddenly he recognized the man's face. He was Robby Longfingers. The police were after him. The newspapers were full of it.

Mr Honk raced through the streets at top speed, passed red traffic lights, and did everything to attract attention. Suddenly there was a

police car behind him. Mr Honk raced on until he reached Victoria Station. He stopped in front of the station at two minutes to three, and the young man jumped out of the taxi.

"Hey! The fare! Pay the fare!" cried Mr Honk.

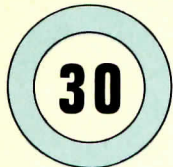
5 At that moment the police car stopped, too.

"Quick! After him!" shouted Mr Honk.

Two policemen rushed into the station. Three minutes later they returned with the young man.

"This man is under arrest," said one of the policemen to Mr Honk.

10 "We had him at Scotland Yard this morning. But he escaped. He is the most dangerous thief in London."



⟨B. Conversation: English Traffic⟩

Inge, a German girl, is visiting her English friends, the Browns.

One day they take her for a ride in their car.

Inge: All the cars are driving on the left. How funny!

Mr Brown: That is a rule of the road here. Now we are coming to a town. Do you see that sign?

Inge: Yes. What does it mean?

Mr Brown: It means that I mustn't drive faster than 30 m.p.h. through the town. This speed limit is for all towns and villages. Look, there's another sign. We are coming to a main road. I must stop at the crossing.

Inge: Why?

Mr Brown: Because the cars on the main road have right of way. I must wait until the road is clear. — Now I can drive on. But there is the sign for a school. I must still be rather careful.

Inge: Now we are leaving the town. Can't you drive faster now?

Mr Brown: No. I must wait until the speed limit ends. Look, there is the sign now.



Exercises

1 At Scotland Yard

a) *At Scotland Yard his adventure Mr Honk's ans*

Policeman: What's your name?

Policeman: Where is your taxi stand?

Policeman: Tell me what the young man stopped your taxi.

Policeman: Tell me how you reached Victoria Station.

Policeman: Tell me what the young man did to your taxi.

Policeman: Tell me what you did to get the taxi back to the police.

Policeman: You helped us to catch a dangerous thief. Thank you very much.

b) *In the evening Mr Honk tells his friends about his adventure. Write down his story.*

c) *Write down the policeman's report about the case.*

2 Read and write the past tense § 43

a) *Read the following text and write the past tense of the verbs. He picked, she rushed, he cheered, you dressed.*

He jumped, we thanked, you waited, they arrived.

b) *Write down the following words in the past tense.*

He opens, she wants, it barks, he brushes, she follows, it attracts, he reaches, she visits.

3 Put the following text into the past tense §§ 41—43

1. It is 10 o'clock. Mr Honk is in the Street with his taxi and shouts: "Taxi! Race on Castle Hill!"

2. Mr Honk opens the door of his taxi and shows Mr Honk a cigar.

3. Mr Honk recognizes the young man and shows him the door.

4. The man opens the window and shows the policeman he opens the door, jumps out and rushes after the man.

5. A boy and a girl are under arrest," says the policeman.

6. The policeman says to Mr Honk: "This man is under arrest."

7. The policeman says to Mr Honk: "This man is under arrest."

8. The policeman says to Mr Honk: "This man is under arrest."

9. The policeman says to Mr Honk: "This man is under arrest."

10. The policeman says to Mr Honk: "This man is under arrest."

11. The policeman says to Mr Honk: "This man is under arrest."

12. The policeman says to Mr Honk: "This man is under arrest."

13. The policeman says to Mr Honk: "This man is under arrest."

14. The policeman says to Mr Honk: "This man is under arrest."

15. The policeman says to Mr Honk: "This man is under arrest."

16. The policeman says to Mr Honk: "This man is under arrest."

17. The policeman says to Mr Honk: "This man is under arrest."

18. The policeman says to Mr Honk: "This man is under arrest."

19. The policeman says to Mr Honk: "This man is under arrest."

20. The policeman says to Mr Honk: "This man is under arrest."

21. The policeman says to Mr Honk: "This man is under arrest."

22. The policeman says to Mr Honk: "This man is under arrest."

23. The policeman says to Mr Honk: "This man is under arrest."

24. The policeman says to Mr Honk: "This man is under arrest."

25. The policeman says to Mr Honk: "This man is under arrest."

26. The policeman says to Mr Honk: "This man is under arrest."

27. The policeman says to Mr Honk: "This man is under arrest."

28. The policeman says to Mr Honk: "This man is under arrest."

29. The policeman says to Mr Honk: "This man is under arrest."

Exercises

I At Scotland Yard

a) *At Scotland Yard a policeman asked Mr Honk about his adventure with Robby Longfingers. Write down Mr Honk's answers.*

Policeman: What's your name?

Mr Honk: ...

Policeman: Where is your taxi stand?

Mr Honk: ...

Policeman: Tell me what the young man said to you when he stopped your taxi.

Mr Honk: ...

Policeman: Tell me how you reached Victoria Station.

Mr Honk: ...

Policeman: Tell me what the young man said to you in the taxi.

Mr Honk: ...

Policeman: Tell me what you did to attract the attention of the police.

Mr Honk: ...

Policeman: You helped us to catch a dangerous thief. Thank you very much.

b) *In the evening Mr Honk tells his friend, another taxi driver, about his adventure. Write down his story.*

c) *Write down the policeman's report about Mr Honk and Robby Longfingers.*

2 Read and write the past tense § 43

a) *Read the following forms*

he picked, she returned, they painted, I handed, we cheered, you dressed, she washed, I showed, we visited, he jumped, we thanked, you waited, they asked, she called, he started.

b) *Write down the following words in the past tense and then say them*

he opens, she wants, it barks, he brushes, she misses, it starts, he calls, she follows, it attracts, he reaches, she visits, he laughs.

3 Put the following text into the past tense §§ 41—43

1. It is 10 o'clock in the morning and Mr Honk is in Fish Street with his taxi. 2. Suddenly a man lifts his arm and shouts: "Taxi!" 3. He wants to see the soap-box race on Castle Hill. 4. He expects to be there in ten minutes. 5. Mr Honk opens the door of the taxi. 6. The man climbs in and offers Mr Honk a cigar. 7. Mr Honk recognizes the man. 8. He calls a policeman. 9. The man opens the window and shows the policeman a long knife. 10. Then he opens the door, jumps out and rushes away. 11. The policeman's dog barks and rushes after the man. 12. A boy on a bicycle blocks the road. 13. "You are under arrest," says the policeman when he reaches the man.

Begin with: One day Mr Honk was in Fish Street with his taxi.

4 Form the present participle and the past tense of the following verbs §§ 11, 43

Ex.: he arrives — arriving — he arrived
 he races, it stops, they try, she carries, she wipes, they dance, he wraps, he hurries, she rubs, he cries, they reply, she recognizes, she hugs, he hates, it plays, she blames, it stays, she lives, he smiles.

5 Put the following text into the past tense §§ 41—43

1. Prince arrives at the butcher's. 2. The butcher smiles and Prince receives a bone. 3. The other dogs hate Prince, because he is the butcher's friend. 4. The dogs want to catch Prince, but Prince hurries away. 5. Prince stops in front of Mrs Bolton's house. 6. The dog rubs its nose in Mrs Bolton's hand. 7. Mrs Bolton hugs her faithful friend. 8. Prince stays at home in the afternoons. 9. The other dogs play in the street. 10. Grip, the bulldog, tries to catch the poodle. 11. The poodle's master hurries to help his dog and carries it away.

Begin with:
 Last Wednesday, Prince ...

6 Present Tense — Past Tense §§ 41—42

Fill in the blanks

- a) 1. Now you are eleven years old. Last year you **were** ten years old.
 2. This is the third week of the month. Last week ... the second week of the month.
 3. Today is Saturday. Yesterday ... Friday.
 4. This month is February. Last month ... January.
 5. This year we are in the second form. Last year we ... in the first.
 6. Today is the 1st of February. A week ago ... the 26th of January.

b) I am taller now than I was a month ago.
 You are taller now ...
 He is ...
 Go on.

Form similar sentences with 'happy, big, strong, old'.

- c) Today is Saturday.
 1. Last Sunday we had good weather.
 2. On Monday we ... better weather than on Sunday.
 3. On Tuesday we ... weather of the week.
 4. On Wednesday we ... bad weather.
 5. On Thursday we ... weather than on Wednesday.
 6. On Friday we ... weather of the week.

7 A Sentence Switchboard § 42

Mr Honk		at the
Three ladies	(was)	at Scot
A dangerous thief	(were)	at the
Robby Longfingers		in the
Two men		at the

a) *Ex.:* Mr Honk

- b) *Form questions*
Ex.: Was Mr Honk at the taxi station?
 c) *Form questions in the negative form*
Ex.: Wasn't Mr Honk at the taxi station?
 d) *Put column four at the beginning of column one*
Ex.: At 9 o'clock Mr Honk was at the taxi station.

8 A Good Day § 41

Ex.: Every day we have a good day we have a good day.

Every day we have ... , but yesterday we had a good day.
 (a mathematics lesson — a German ham for breakfast — ham and eggs; Wasn't that a good day?)

9 A Day in Mr Honk's Life §§ 41—43

1. At 7 a.m. Mr Honk gets up.
 2. At 7.15 a.m. he has breakfast.
 3. At 7.30 a.m. he goes to school.
 Yard.

4. From 8.30 to 12.30 he waits for people.
 5. At 12.30 p.m. he has lunch in Fish Street.
 6. At 1.30 p.m. he returns to his school.
 7. In the afternoon he has many people.
 money.
 8. From 4.30 to 6.30 p.m. there is a match and he does his best for the people in the team.
 9. At 8 p.m. he is at home again.

Put this text in the past tense.
 Last Monday at 6.30 a.m. Mr Honk fetched his car out of the garage. He was late.
 Go on.

7 A Sentence Switchboard § 42

a) *Ex.*: Mr Honk was at the taxi stand at 9 o'clock.

Mr Honk		at the taxi stand	at 9 o'clock.
Three ladies	(was)	at Scotland Yard	last week.
A dangerous thief	(were)	at the police headquarters	yesterday.
Robby Longfingers		in the taxi	last Monday.
Two men		at the traffic lights	in the afternoon.

b) *Form questions*

Ex.: Was Mr Honk at the taxi stand at 9 o'clock?

c) *Form questions in the negative form.*

Ex.: Wasn't Mr Honk at the taxi stand at 9 o'clock?

d) *Put column four at the beginning of the sentence.*

Ex.: At 9 o'clock Mr Honk was at the taxi stand.

8 A Good Day § 41

Ex.: Every day we have a lot of homework, but yesterday we had games.

Every day we have . . . , but yesterday we had . . .

(a mathematics lesson — a German lesson; apples after lunch — oranges; ham for breakfast — ham and eggs; five lessons — only four)

Wasn't that a good day?

9 A Day in Mr Honk's Life §§ 41—43

1. At 7 a.m. Mr Honk fetches his car out of the garage.

2. At 7.15 a.m. he passes Scotland Yard.

3. At 7.30 a.m. he reaches his taxi stand near Scotland Yard.

4. From 8.30 to 12.30 he waits for people.

5. At 12.30 p.m. he has lunch in Fish Street.

6. At 1.30 p.m. he returns to his stand.

7. In the afternoon he has many people in his taxi, and he receives a lot of money.

8. From 4.30 to 6.30 p.m. there is a lot of traffic, but he hurries through it and does his best for the people in his taxi.

9. At 8 p.m. he is at home again.

Put this text in the past tense.

Last Monday at 6.30 a.m. Mr Honk had breakfast with his wife, then he fetched his car out of the garage. He passed . . .

Go on.

10 Adverbial Phrases
of Place and Time §44

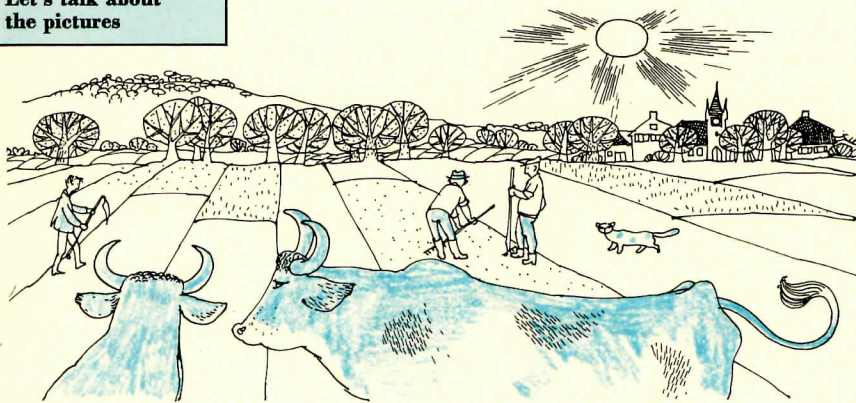
Find suitable adverbial phrases of place and time. Use the adverbial phrase of place before the adverbial phrase of time.

Ex.: The taxi stopped ...

The taxi stopped in front of the station at two minutes to two.

1. Mr Honk arrived at ...
2. Robby Longfingers was in ...
3. Mr Honk had lunch in ...
4. Mr Honk washed his car ...
5. Mrs Honk visited her sister ...
6. There was a lot of traffic ...
7. The bus stopped ...
8. A dangerous thief was at ...
9. Mr Honk returned ...

11 Let's talk about
the pictures



a) *A Day on a Farm*

Here are some questions about this picture. The answers are easy to find.

How many persons are there in this picture?

Who are they?

Where are they?

What are they wearing?

How many animals are there?

Where are they? (in the foreground or in the background of the picture?)

What can you see on the left, on the right, in the background?

What is the weather like?

b) *Now you can ask questions about the picture on page 101*

Ask about the persons, their names,

where they are, what they are doing,

about the cars, the time of day,

what you see on the right, on the left, in the background, in the foreground.

12 Test your spelling
and pronunciation

Spelling:

a

hat — hate, plate, bag, cap, black, take, back, page, make, game, stamp, match, same, lake, face, shake, race

o

not — nose, dog, box, clock, home, those, rose, hole, shop,

i

big — time, write, life, strict, smile, fish, pig, ice, ripe, fine, mile

e

pen — me, leg, desk, Peter, yes, dress, red, help, next, get, hen,

13 Translation

1. Vergangenen Sommer Abenteuer. 2. Ein

von Scotland Yard. 3. Ein junger Mann

Victoria Bahnhof, so schnell wie Sie können

Mr Honk in den Rückspiegel. 5. Sofort

Robby Longfingers in seinem Taxi.

Mr Honk durch die Straßen. 7. Er fuhr

8. Plötzlich war ein Polizeiwagen hinter

den Bahnhof. 10. Zur gleichen Zeit hielt

11. „Sind Sie blind?“ fragte ein Polizist

fuhr an den roten Verkehrsampeln vorbei

zu ziehen. 13. Ich hatte Robby Longfinger

nicht bis morgen, [um] ihn zu fangen!“

Let's prepare lesson 12

The policeman asks Mr Honk:

Where **do you wait** with the taxi every day?

Do you drive home at 6 o'clock every day?

Do you always go to Fish Street for lunch?

You always **stop** at the traffic lights.

12 Test your spelling and pronunciation

Spelling:

Pronunciation:

a	hat — hate, plate, bag, cap, cake, paper, man, black, take, back, page, make, name, ham, van, game, stamp, match, same, lake, wave, fat, late, face, shake, race	↗ [æ]	hat,
		↘ [ei]	hate, ...
o	not — nose, dog, box, clock, go, open, on, no, home, those, rose, hole, shop, bone, grocer, stop	↗ [ɔ]	not,
		↘ [əu]	note, ...
i	big — time, write, life, strict, knife, silk, nice, smile, fish, pig, ice, ripe, fine, swim, bite, shine, mile	↗ [i]	big,
		↘ [ai]	time, ...
e	pen — me, leg, desk, Peter, yes, bed, he, she, we, dress, red, help, next, get, hen, nest, wet	↗ [e]	pen, ...
		↘ [i:]	me,

13 Translation

1. Vergangenen Sommer hatte Mr Honk ein aufregendes Abenteuer. 2. Eines Tages war er um 14.30 in der Nähe von Scotland Yard. 3. Ein junger Mann sprang in das Taxi und rief: „Zum Victoria Bahnhof, so schnell wie Sie können.“ 4. In diesem Moment blickte Mr Honk in den Rückspiegel. 5. Sofort erkannte er den gefährlichen Dieb Robby Longfingers in seinem Taxi. 6. Mit Höchstgeschwindigkeit raste Mr Honk durch die Straßen. 7. Er fuhr an roten Verkehrsampeln vorbei. 8. Plötzlich war ein Polizeiwagen hinter ihm. 9. Um 14.58 erreichte Mr Honk den Bahnhof. 10. Zur gleichen Zeit hielt der Polizeiwagen hinter dem Taxi. 11. „Sind Sie blind?“ fragte ein Polizist. 12. „Nein“, sagte Mr Honk, „ich fuhr an den roten Verkehrsampeln vorbei, um Ihre Aufmerksamkeit [auf mich] zu ziehen. 13. Ich hatte Robby Longfingers in meinem Taxi. 14. Warten Sie nicht bis morgen, [um] ihn zu fangen!“

Let's prepare lesson 12

The policeman asks Mr Honk:

Where do you wait with the taxi every day?	Where did you wait yesterday?
Do you drive home at 6 o'clock every day?	When did you drive home yesterday?
Do you always go to Fish Street for lunch?	Did you go there yesterday?
You always stop at the traffic lights.	Why didn't you stop at the traffic lights yesterday?



12 A. The Pedlar's Dream

In the little village of Swaffham, there once lived a poor pedlar. His name was John. He sold his goods in the country, but often he and his family had nothing to eat.

5 One morning John came into the kitchen and said to his wife: "I must go to London at once. I dreamt last night that I heard a voice. It said: 'Go to London Bridge and wait there for good news'."

"Don't be silly, John," said his wife. "You must be mad with hunger. Eat some bread. It is in the cupboard."

10 "Is there any bread?" asked Jack, their son. "Did Father bring any money home yesterday?"

"No, I didn't," said John. "That's why I must go to London Bridge."

John walked a hundred miles to reach London. When he entered the big town he did not stop to look at the wonderful palaces and churches
15 but went straight to London Bridge. There were big houses and shops on the bridge in those days. John stood in front of a shop and waited. There were many people on the bridge but they did not take any notice of him. Night came and John found a place to sleep on the doorstep of one of the houses. Next morning he awoke and walked from one end of the bridge to
20 the other and then back again. The morning passed, then the afternoon, but nobody spoke to him. Thus he spent four days and three nights on the

bridge. At last, when he wanted to buy
no more money.

"I must go home," he thought. It was
Suddenly a shopkeeper called him:

5 "Did you call me, sir?" asked John.

"Yes, I did. Why did you stand on the
speak to anybody."

"I had a dream ten days ago," said John.
Bridge and wait there for good news."

10 "Did you come to London Bridge?" asked John.
keeper laughed. "I also had a dream."

"Go to Swaffham". I never heard of Swaffham."

"Did you say Swaffham?" asked John.

15 "Yes, I did. Then the voice said: 'Go to
pedlar. His name is John. Dig under the
I'm too wise for that and not a fool!'"

John did not wait for more good news.
could. Tired and hungry he reached home.

20 He went to the kitchen to fetch some food.
took his spade and began to dig under the
dug and dug. After a while he found a box.

children. The box was full of gold. "I was
"And so I, the fool, was wise, and the

B. Conversation: Can You Tell Me the Way?

Stranger: Excuse me, constable, could you tell me the way to
London Bridge?

Policeman: Walk down to the next set of
lights. Then take the second road on the left
straight on. That road leads to London Bridge.

Stranger: How far is it?

Policeman: About twenty minutes, if you
take a bus. The number is 12.

Stranger: Can I go by Underground?

Policeman: Yes, sir. There's a station just
before the bridge.

Stranger: Thank you so much.

bridge. At last, when he wanted to buy some food, he found that he had no more money.

"I must go home," he thought. It was a bitter, bitter moment for him. Suddenly a shopkeeper called him: "Just a minute, my good man."

5 "Did you call me, sir?" asked John.

"Yes, I did. Why did you stand on the bridge every day? You didn't speak to anybody."

"I had a dream ten days ago," said John. "A voice said: 'Go to London Bridge and wait there for good news'."

10 "Did you come to London Bridge because of a dream?" The shopkeeper laughed. "I also had a dream some weeks ago. A voice said: 'Go to Swaffham'. I never heard of Swaffham in my life."

"Did you say Swaffham?" asked John.

15 "Yes, I did. Then the voice said: 'In Swaffham there lives a poor pedlar. His name is John. Dig under the apple-tree in his garden.' But I'm too wise for that and not a fool like you."

John did not wait for more good news and went home as fast as he could. Tired and hungry he reached Swaffham after five days. His wife went to the kitchen to fetch some food. But John did not want to eat. He 20 took his spade and began to dig under the apple-tree in his garden. John dug and dug. After a while he found a big box. He called his wife and children. The box was full of gold. "My dream came true," said John. "And so I, the fool, was wise, and the wise man was a fool."

B. Conversation: Can You Tell Me the Way?

Stranger: Excuse me, constable, can you please tell me the way to London Bridge?

Policeman: Walk down to the next crossing and turn right at the traffic lights. Then take the second turning on the left and keep straight on. That road leads to London Bridge.

Stranger: How far is it?

Policeman: About twenty minutes, if you walk there. But you can also take a bus. The number 35 bus goes over London Bridge.

Stranger: Can I go by Underground?

Policeman: Yes, sir. There's a station at the next corner.

Stranger: Thank you so much.

⟨Song: London Bridge⟩

Lon - don Bridge is fall - ing down, fall - ing down, fall - ing down,
Lon - don Bridge is fall - ing down, my fair la - dy.

⟨London Town⟩

Which is the way to London Town?
Over the hills, across the down,
Over the ridges and over the bridges,
That is the way to London Town.

And what shall I see in London Town?
Many a building old and brown,
Many a broad, imposing bridge
You'll certainly see in London Town.

So onward I hurry to London Town,
Over the hills and across the down,
Over the ridges and over the bridges
Until I arrive in London Town.

Exercises

1 Answer the following questions

1. Where did John, the pedlar, live?
2. Why were John and his family often hungry?
3. What did John dream one night?
4. What did John's wife say when he told her the dream?
5. What did the pedlar do when he entered the big town?
6. What was on London Bridge in those days?
7. Where did John sleep at night?
8. What did the shopkeeper ask the pedlar?
9. What did John do when he came back to Swaffham?
10. What did he find in his garden?

2 On London Bridge — A Dialogue

John, the pedlar, was on London Bridge,

Shopkeeper: Just a moment, my good man

John: Did you call me? What's that?

Shopkeeper: Why did you stand ...

Go on with this dialogue. Act it in the class.

3 The Past Tense § 45

a) Form the past tense of the verbs: he does, he stands, he begins, he speaks, he buys, he sells, he says, he hears, he dreams, he sleeps.

b) Put this story into the past tense:

1. John is a poor pedlar.
2. He sells his family has nothing to eat.
3. One night
4. The voice says to him: "Go to London."
6. He spends four days and three nights on the doorstep of one of the houses.
8. Nobody speaks to him.
9. When he begins to eat bread.
10. He hears of the shopkeeper's
11. At home he takes a spade and digs
12. He finds a big box full of gold and his

4 Prince § 45

Put lesson 8 (Prince and the Peas) into the past tense of the verbs.

- to get — got; to make — made; to give — gave; to put — put; to leave — left.

5 The Butcher Visits John § 46

The butcher of Swaffham asks John a lot of questions. Form the past tense of the verbs.

1. ... when John heard the voice.
2. ... what the voice said.
3. ... what John's wife said before he
4. ... what there was on London Bridge.
5. ... what he did on London Bridge.
6. ... where he slept in London.
7. ... who spoke to him on the bridge.
8. ... what the shopkeeper said to him.
9. ... what he did when he reached Swaffham.

**2 On London Bridge —
A Dialogue**

John, the pedlar, wants to go home again after many days on London Bridge, but a shopkeeper calls him:

Shopkeeper: Just a moment, my good man.

John: Did you call me? What's the matter?

Shopkeeper: Why did you stand . . .

Go on with this dialogue. Act it in the classroom.

3 The Past Tense § 45

a) *Form the past tense of the following verbs:*

he does, he stands, he comes, he goes, he finds, he awakes, he begins, he speaks, he buys, he sells, he tells, he takes, he digs, he spends, he says, he hears, he dreams, he sleeps.

b) *Put this story into the past tense:*

1. John is a poor pedlar. 2. He sells his goods in the country, but often his family has nothing to eat. 3. One night John dreams that he hears a voice. 4. The voice says to him: "Go to London Bridge." 5. John goes to London. 6. He spends four days and three nights on the bridge. 7. At night he sleeps on the doorstep of one of the houses. 8. Many people are on the bridge, but nobody speaks to him. 9. When he begins to feel hungry, he buys a loaf of bread. 10. He hears of the shopkeeper's dream and goes back to Swaffham. 11. At home he takes a spade and digs under the apple-tree in his garden. 12. He finds a big box full of gold and his dream comes true.

4 Prince § 45

Put lesson 8 (Prince) into the past tense. For this you need the past tense of the following verbs:

to get — got; to make — made; to give — gave; to see — saw; to run — ran; to put — put; to leave — left.

5 The Butcher Visits John § 46

The butcher of Swaffham came to see John and asked him a lot of questions. He wanted to know

1. . . when John heard the voice.
2. . . what the voice said.
3. . . what John's wife said before he went to London.
4. . . what there was on London Bridge.
5. . . what he did on London Bridge.
6. . . where he slept in London.
7. . . who spoke to him on the bridge.
8. . . what the shopkeeper said to him.
9. . . what he did when he reached Swaffham again.

a) Ask the butcher's questions and answer them.

Ex.: Butcher: When did you hear the voice?

John: I heard it in the night.

b) One of you is the butcher and one the pedlar. Act the dialogue in the classroom.

c) Here are the pedlar's answers. Can you find the butcher's questions?

Ex.: When did you have the dream?

I had the dream one night.

1.? I told the shopkeeper about my dream.
2.? The shopkeeper said: "I am not a fool like you."
3.? Yes, I bought some food.
4.? I went back to Swaffham on the fifth day.
5.? I took my spade, began to dig and found the box.
6.? I found it under the apple-tree in my garden.
7.? Oh, I found gold and a lot of money in the box.
8.? My wife said: "You are a wise man, John."

6 A Sentence Switchboard § 46

Ex.: The pedlar went to London Bridge a week ago.

The pedlar	(to go to)	London Bridge	a week ago.
A stranger	(to arrive at)	Swaffham	on Monday.
A policeman	(to come to)	Scotland Yard	yesterday.
Mr Pringle	(to reach)	the rich man's house	last week.

b) Form negative statements.

Ex.: The pedlar did not go to London Bridge a week ago.

c) Form questions in the past tense.

Ex.: Did the pedlar go to London Bridge a week ago?

d) Form negative questions in the past tense.

Ex.: Didn't the pedlar go to London Bridge a week ago?

7 Questions and Answers in the Negative Form § 46

Bill is in bed. He could not go and see Grandpa on his birthday. So he wants to know what happened. He asks his sister Joyce

1. ... why they didn't go by car.
2. ... why they didn't arrive at Grandpa's in time for lunch.
3. ... why Mother didn't wear her new silk dress.
4. ... why Uncle George wasn't at Grandpa's.
5. ... why Aunt Margery didn't eat the cream cakes.
6. ... why Grandpa didn't like his presents.

a) Ask Bill's questions

Ex.: Why didn't you go by car?

b) Form Joyce's answers

- Ex.:
1. We didn't go by car because
 2. ... because we missed the tr
 3. ... because she wanted to he
 4. ... because he was ill.
 5. ... because her stomach was
 6. ... because all his presents v

8 John is Now Rich § 46

Today the pedlar

Four weeks ago the pedlar

has a lot
lives in a
gives his
sends his
has a big
gives pre
days.
eats crea

didn't ha
didn't liv
...

9 Some — any § 48

a) When the news
Swaffham, they beg

Ex.: The butch

The grocer	(to find)
The butcher	(to pick up)
Grandpa	(to dig up)
The baker's wife	(to get)

b) A stranger came to Swaffham. He he
people of Swaffham:

Did the baker find any gold watches?
(the baker, the pedlar's wife, you, y
to dig up, to see; — gold watches, gold

c) The people of Swaffham told him:

No, the baker didn't find any gold wa

Go on.

a) *Ask Bill's questions*

Ex.: Why didn't you go by car?

b) *Form Joyce's answers*

- Ex.:* 1. We didn't go by car because the roads were icy.
 2. ... because we missed the train.
 3. ... because she wanted to help Grandma in the kitchen.
 4. ... because he was ill.
 5. ... because her stomach was not in order.
 6. ... because all his presents were slippers!

8 John is Now Rich §46

Today the pedlar

{ has a lot of fine clothes.
 lives in an expensive house.
 gives his wife a lot of money for new dresses.
 sends his children to school.
 has a big farm with pigs and cows.
 gives presents to his relations on their birth-
 days.
 eats cream cakes for tea

Four weeks ago the pedlar

{ didn't have a lot of fine clothes.
 didn't live ...
 ...

Go on.

9 Some — any §48

a) *When the news of the box of gold reached the people of Swaffham, they began to dig under all the trees in the village.*

Ex.: The butcher found some old shoes

The grocer	(to find)	some	old shoes.
The butcher	(to pick up)		medicine in a bottle.
Grandpa	(to dig up)		bones.
The baker's wife	(to get)		socks with holes in them.

b) *A stranger came to Swaffham. He heard about the box of gold and asked the people of Swaffham:*

Did the baker find any gold watches? Did the ...?

(the baker, the pedlar's wife, you, your children; — to find, to pick up, to dig up, to see; — gold watches, gold pieces, boxes with money in them)

c) *The people of Swaffham told him:*

No, the baker didn't find any gold watches. No, my children ...

Go on.

10 Put in 'some' or 'any' § 48

a) *The pedlar's wife went shopping.* She bought ... bread, but she didn't buy ... ham. She bought ... *Go on.*

(jam — marmalade, sugar — salt, tea — coffee, butter — milk)

b) 1. Is there ... bread in the house? 2. Did you see ... churches and palaces in London? 3. Please go and fetch ... bones for the dog. 4. ... people are waiting at the taxi stand. 5. There aren't ... taxis at the taxi stand.

c) 1. The pedlar found ... gold, but the other people didn't find ... 2. The pedlar's wife bought ... silk dresses, but the other women couldn't buy ... 3. The pedlar had ... cream cakes every day, but the other men didn't have... 4. The cat found ... food in the kitchen, but the dog didn't find ... bones. 5. The pedlar suddenly had ... friends, but when he was poor he didn't have...

d) *At the Village Shop*

Have you ... coffee? Yes, I have ... How much do you want?

Have you ... meat? No, I haven't ... You can get ... at the butcher's.

Have you ... sugar? Yes, I have ... Do you want ...?

No, thanks. I only wanted to ask ... questions with "any".

11 Translation

Frau Brown: Hat die Frau des Hausierers (irgendeine) Nachricht von John?

Frau Davis: Hörten Sie nicht, daß er gestern abend zurückkam?

Frau Brown: Nein, das wußte ich nicht.

Frau Davis: Wußten Sie nicht, daß er eine Kiste voller Gold fand?

Frau Brown: Nein! Wo fand er sie?

Frau Davis: Er fand sie in seinem Garten unter einem Apfelbaum.

Frau Brown: Wie wußte er, daß eine Kiste unter seinem Apfelbaum war?

Frau Davis: Ein Ladeninhaber in London kam zu ihm und fragte: „Warum standen Sie jeden Tag auf der Brücke?“ John antwortete: „Ich hatte vor einigen Wochen einen Traum.“ Der Ladeninhaber lachte und sagte: „Ich hatte vor einigen Tagen auch einen Traum. Ich träumte von (*about*) einigen Goldstücken unter einem Apfelbaum. Der Apfelbaum stand in dem Garten eines Hausierers in Swaffham.“ John ging zurück nach Swaffham, so schnell er konnte, und fand die Kiste mit dem Gold unter seinem Apfelbaum.

Let's prepare lesson 13

John was **dreaming** when he heard a voice.

He was still **waiting** for good news on the bridge when a shopkeeper **called** him.

John's wife and children were **sitting** in the kitchen when he **entered** the house.

He was **digging** under an apple-tree when a friend **called** him.

A. First Aid in a Train

The train was standing at number 1 platform in Paddington Station, London. The summer holidays were over, and 5 girls and boys were now returning to boarding schools for the new school year.

Tom was standing at the window of his compartment. He was leaving home for the first time. His mother, on the platform, was 10 looking up at him. "Good-bye, my darling," said his mother as the train was starting. "And don't forget to write."

Tom blushed as he closed the window and sat down in his corner. Oh! Why didn't his mother always call him 'darling' in front of other people? After all, he was eleven years 15 old.

On the seats opposite, two schoolgirls were looking at him. They were about ten years older than Tom. One had fair hair, the other dark. The fair-haired girl had whispered into her friend's ear. Then they both 20 laughed. Tom wondered whether they were laughing at him. He got up, opened the window, and put his head out. The wind blew the girls' hats off and played a rough game with their hair.

"Please close the window," said the dark-haired girl. Tom took no notice. Suddenly a piece of dirt flew into his eye. Tom closed the window and sat down. He rubbed his eye while tears rolled down his cheeks. He took his handkerchief out of his pocket and put it against his face.

"The poor boy is crying because he can't 35 leave his mother," whispered the dark-haired girl to her friend.

13 A. First Aid in a Train

The train was standing at number five platform in Paddington Station, London. The summer holidays were over, and many girls and boys were now returning to their boarding schools for the new school term.

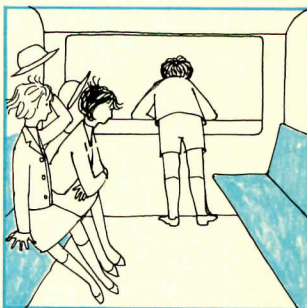
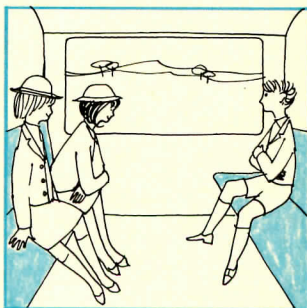
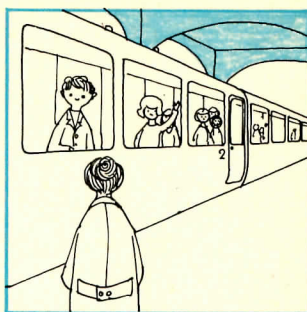
Tom was standing at the window of his compartment. He was leaving home for the first time. His mother, on the platform, was looking up at him. "Good-bye, my darling," said his mother as the train was starting. "And don't forget to write."

Tom blushed as he closed the window and sat down in his corner. Oh! Why did his mother always call him 'darling' in front of other people? After all, he was eleven.

On the seats opposite, two schoolgirls were looking at him. They were about two years older than Tom. One had fair hair, the other dark. The fair-haired girl whispered into her friend's ear. Then they both laughed. Tom wondered whether they were laughing at him. He got up, opened the window, and put his head out. The wind tore the girls' hats off and played a rough game with their hair.

"Please close the window," said the fair-haired girl. Tom took no notice. Suddenly a piece of dirt flew into his eye. Tom closed the window and sat down. He rubbed his eye while tears rolled down his cheek. He took his handkerchief out of his pocket and put it against his face.

"The poor boy is crying because he must leave his mother," whispered the fair-haired girl to her friend.





"Don't cry," said the dark-haired girl to Tom. "Have a chocolate."

She took a box of chocolates out of her bag. "I'm not crying. I never cry," said Tom. "It's the dirt in my eye, that's all."

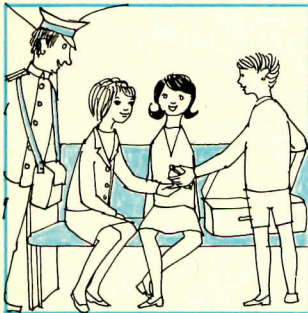
"Let me take it out," said the fair-haired girl. "I am a Girl Guide and I can give first aid."

She jumped up, took Tom's handkerchief, and the dirt was soon out of his eye.

"Thank you," said Tom, and took a chocolate. "Do you often travel on this line?" he asked.

"Six times a year," answered the fair-haired girl. "We always go home for the holidays."

When the ticket collector came in he saw three happy youngsters. Tom was offering the girls ham sandwiches from his suitcase.



<B. Conversation: At the Ticket-office>

Passenger: Give me a ticket to London, please.

Booking-clerk: Single or return, sir?

Passenger: Return, please. When does the train leave?

Booking-clerk: The next train leaves at 9.45, sir — change at Oxford.

Passenger: Is there a dining-car on that train?

Booking-clerk: Yes, sir. The train leaves from number five platform.

Passenger: Thank you very much. — Porter! Please take my luggage to the London train.

Porter: Right, sir.

<A Silly Answer>

A passenger: I want a return ticket, please.

Booking-clerk: Where to, madam?

A passenger: Here, of course!

<Tongue-twister>

Betty Botter bought some
But she said, "This butter
If I put it in my batter,
It will make my batter
So she bought some better
Better than the bitter
And it made the batter

Exercises

1 Answer the following questions

1. Why were m...
2. Why was Tom...
3. What did Tom's mother say as the...
4. What did the girls in Tom's com...
5. Why did the girls ask Tom to clos...
6. What happened to Tom when he p...
7. What did the fair-haired girl whis...
8. What did Tom answer?
9. How did the fair-haired girl help T...
10. What did the ticket-collector see v...

2 Tom's First Hour at the Boarding-school § 49

When Tom arriv...
boys are standi...
talking, others...
taking the new b...
ers are waiting

sitting on his suitcase and is watching the names of the new boys from a list. "He is dreaming about home. What ar... having tea in the sitting-room. And h... alone without a friend. "Tom Brown... "Go to Mr Castle at once. He is waiti...
One of the boys tells his friends about T...
"When Tom arrived ..."
Go on.

<Tongue-twister>

Betty Botter bought some butter,
But she said, "This butter's bitter,
If I put it in my batter,
It will make my batter bitter."
So she bought some better butter,
Better than the bitter butter,
And it made the batter better.

Exercises

1 Answer the following questions

1. Why were many girls and boys returning to their boarding schools?
2. Why was Tom standing at the window of his compartment when the train left the station?
3. What did Tom's mother say as the train was starting?
4. What did the girls in Tom's compartment do when they heard Tom's mother say good-bye to him?
5. Why did the girls ask Tom to close the window?
6. What happened to Tom when he put his head out of the window?
7. What did the fair-haired girl whisper to her friend?
8. What did Tom answer?
9. How did the fair-haired girl help Tom?
10. What did the ticket-collector see when he came in?

2 Tom's First Hour at the Boarding-school § 49

When Tom arrives at the boarding school, a number of boys are standing in front of the school. Some are talking, others are playing, a few bigger boys are taking the new boys to the classrooms where their teachers are waiting for them. Five minutes later Tom is sitting on his suitcase and is watching the bigger boys. One big boy is calling the names of the new boys from a list. "Tom Brown!" But Tom is not listening. He is dreaming about home. What are his sisters doing now? Yes, they are having tea in the sitting-room. And he, Tom, is sitting here on his suitcase, alone without a friend. "Tom Brown!" The big boy shouts into Tom's ear. "Go to Mr Castle at once. He is waiting for you in classroom No. 1."

One of the boys tells his friends about Tom's arrival in the afternoon:

"When Tom arrived ..."

Go on.

**3 Tom and Mr Castle—
A Dialogue § 49**

Mr Castle, Tom's new teacher, asks Tom a lot of questions about his old school. He wants to know:

1. ... where Tom went to school before. (in London)
2. ... which subjects he liked best. (English and history)
3. ... whether he had a lot to do at school. (mathematics teacher — lot of homework)
4. ... what games they played. (football, tennis, cricket)
5. ... whether Tom's last school report was good. (not bad)
6. ... why Tom didn't arrive at Bedford School in time for tea. (to miss the bus)
7. ... whether Tom liked his old school. (Yes, very much)

Now ask Mr Castle's questions and give Tom's answers.

Ex.: Where did you go to school before? — I went to school in London, sir.

**4 A Sentence
Switchboard § 49**

Continuous Form

Most of the boys were writing letters,



Ordinary Form

when the teacher came in.



Most of the boys
Two or three boys
Colin
Tom and his new friend
All the boys

(to play) cards,
(to read) a book,
(to chat),
(to listen) to a big boy,
(to dance) round the room,

when the teacher
opened the door.
when the new boy
came into the
room.

Now read the sentences in this way:

Ex.: When the teacher came in, most of the boys were writing letters.

**5 A Bad Day for Tom
§ 49**

Put in the continuous and the ordinary form of the past tense.

1. He (to do) his mathematics homework in the geography lesson, when the geography teacher (to take) it from him.
2. He (to dream) of the holidays, when his teacher (to ask) him a question.
3. A boy (to throw) water at him, while he (to read) an interesting book.
4. It (to begin) to rain, while he (to walk) in the fields.
5. He (to eat) his cake, when he (to find) a hair in it.
6. He (to lead) in the bicycle race, when a policeman (to lift) his arm and (to block) the road.

**6 Which adverb fits
best? § 50**

a) *always, often,*

1. Mother ... I he is at home
2. At the boarding-school Tom ... g
3. Tom ... writes home, because he l
4. Tom ... forgets to do his homev school report.

b) *soon, still, already, just*

1. Tom is ... ill in bed, but he is mu
2. He was ... taking his medicine w
3. He is ... feeling much better, but h
4. Tom ... had many new friends at

c) *at first, then, now, at once*

1. ... Tom was not happy at his bo
2. ... he got ill and was in bed for tv
3. When he was up again he wrote to
4. ... there is no happier boy than T

**7 Tom is Missing
at Breakfast § 50**

Put the adverbs i

1. *Jim: (always)* Tom gets up in t in the dining-hall
2. *Bill: (never)* Tom misses his b room ?
3. *Jim: (often)* I see him there, before breakfast.
4. *Bill: (always)* Tom has a good yesterday.
5. *Jim: (still)* Tom is lying in bed
6. *Bill: (at once)* We must fetch the
7. *Jim: (first)* We cannot tell M day before yester
8. *Bill: (seldom)* Tom is ill. (*never*)

8 A Letter for Tom § 50

Put the adverbs

My dear Tom,

Thank you for your nice letters. from you. (*often*) We speak of you. (

6 Which adverb fits best? § 50

a) *always, often, never, seldom*

1. Mother ... brings Tom a cup of tea in bed when he is at home.
2. At the boarding-school Tom ... gets a cup of tea in bed.
3. Tom ... writes home, because he likes his parents.
4. Tom ... forgets to do his homework, because he wants to get a good school report.

b) *soon, still, already, just*

1. Tom is ... ill in bed, but he is much better than a week ago.
2. He was ... taking his medicine when his friends came in.
3. He is ... feeling much better, but he must ... stay in bed for another week.
4. Tom ... had many new friends at the boarding-school.

c) *at first, then, now, at once*

1. ... Tom was not happy at his boarding-school.
2. ... he got ill and was in bed for two weeks.
3. When he was up again he wrote to his mother ...
4. ... there is no happier boy than Tom at Bedford.

7 Tom is Missing at Breakfast § 50

Put the adverbs in brackets in their right places

1. *Jim: (always)* Tom gets up in time for breakfast, but I didn't see him in the dining-hall at 7.30.
2. *Bill: (never)* Tom misses his breakfast. Did you see him in the wash-room?
3. *Jim: (often)* I see him there, but I didn't see him when I washed before breakfast.
4. *Bill: (always)* Tom has a good appetite, but he didn't eat his dinner yesterday.
5. *Jim: (still)* Tom is lying in bed. *(always)* On other days he is the first up.
6. *Bill: (at once)* We must fetch the doctor. He came to Bill Taylor last week.
7. *Jim: (first)* We cannot tell Mr Castle, because he went to London the day before yesterday.
8. *Bill: (seldom)* Tom is ill. *(never)* He told me that he was ill.

8 A Letter for Tom § 50

Put the adverbs in brackets in their right places.

My dear Tom,

Thank you for your nice letters. *(always)* I'm glad when I get a letter from you. *(often)* We speak of you. *(still)* Do you remember when you were

at home? (*always*) You went to see Prince and Mrs Bolton every Friday. (*often*) You played tennis with the Bartons. Do you remember when the police arrested Robby Longfingers just when we reached Victoria Station?

Everything is very quiet at home now. Jane has an excellent school report again. (*already*) She is second in her class. I'm glad to hear that you are happy at school now. I know it was not easy for you at first. (*soon*) But you had new friends, and that is always good.

Love, *Mummy*

9 Word-formation

happy glücklich — unhappy unglücklich

Now form opposites of the following adjectives
interesting, friendly, faithful, true, locked, ripe, wise

10 Translation

1. Es war der erste Tag der Ferien. 2. Tom wartete auf dem Bahnhof von Bedford. 3. Der Zug nach London lief gerade ein (*to come in*). 4. Als der Zug hielt, sah Tom die beiden Schulfrauen wieder. 5. Sie standen am Fenster eines Abteils. 6. „Komm herein!“ riefen sie. 7. Tom nahm seinen Koffer, öffnete die Tür des Abteils und stieg ein (*to get in*). 8. Die Mädchen halfen ihm. 9. „Strecke deinen Kopf nicht aus dem Fenster, Tom,“ sagte das dunkelhaarige Mädchen. 10. „Vor einigen Monaten streckte ein Junge seinen Kopf aus dem Fenster und [da] flog etwas Schmutz in seine Augen.“ 11. „Gefällt dir deine neue Schule?“ fragte das blonde Mädchen. 12. „Zuerst ist es immer schrecklich.“ 13. „Es war niemals schrecklich für mich,“ antwortete Tom. „Ich hatte bald Freunde.“ 14. „Wir wollen jetzt etwas essen,“ sagte das dunkelhaarige Mädchen. 15. „Bist du schon hungrig?“ fragte ihre Freundin. 16. „Ich bin immer hungrig im Zuge,“ antwortete das dunkelhaarige Mädchen. 17. Sie nahm aus ihrem Koffer Obst, belegte Brote und Schokolade. 18. Dann bot sie den beiden andern Kuchen an. 19. Zwei Stunden später kam der Zug in Paddington an. 20. Toms Mutter wartete auf dem Bahnsteig. 21. „Da bist du, mein Liebling,“ rief seine Mutter, als sie ihren Sohn sah. 22. Dieses Mal errötete Tom nicht, als seine Mutter ihn ‚Liebling‘ nannte.

Let's prepare lesson 14

The train is slow.

Tom is sad.

The Girl Guide was very quick.

The youngsters were happy.

Heavy rain was falling.

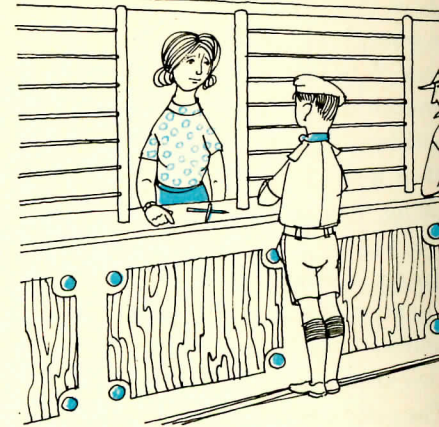
It slowly leaves the station.

He sadly says good-bye to his mother.

She quickly took the dirt out of Tom's eyes.

They laughed happily.

It was raining heavily.



14 A. "X" for Danger

One evening Peter took the test from his scoutmaster, asked him a lot of questions and answered them easily.

5 "Now here's the last question, Peter. What is the Scout sign for danger?"

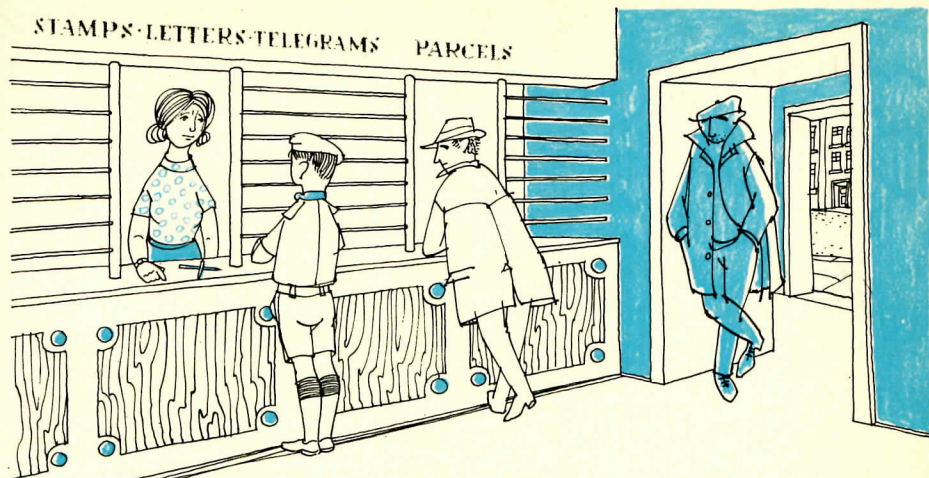
"Two crossed sticks," said Peter. He took them from his pocket and laid them in the form of an X.

10 "Well done," said Mr Jackson. "That's the Scout sign for danger." At that moment Mr Jackson's daughter came to the post-office.

"What's that?" she asked curiously. "That's the Scout sign for danger," said Peter.

15 "Then if I need your help one day, please help me in a friendly way," said Peter. "I must simply make an X." Peter and Mr Jackson laughed heartily.

20 A week later Peter went to the post-office a few minutes before closing-time. One was silently standing at the counter talking to Miss Jackson.



14 A. "X" for Danger

One evening Peter took the test for his first Scout badge. Mr Jackson, his scoutmaster, asked him a lot of difficult questions, but Peter answered them easily.

5 "Now here's the last question, Peter," said Mr Jackson. "What's the Scout sign for danger?"

"Two crossed sticks," said Peter. He took a pen and a pencil out of his pocket and laid them in the form of a cross on the table.

10 "Well done," said Mr Jackson. "Now I can give you your Scout badge." At that moment Mr Jackson's sister unexpectedly came in. She was on her way home from the post-office where she worked.

"What's that?" she asked curiously and pointed to the pen and pencil on the table.

"That's the Scout sign for danger," said Peter.

15 "Then if I need your help one day, Peter," said Miss Jackson in a friendly way, "I must simply make the sign."

Peter and Mr Jackson laughed heartily.

20 A week later Peter went to the post-office to buy some stamps. It was a few minutes before closing-time, and there were only two men in the post-office. One was silently standing at the door, and the other was talking to Miss Jackson.

"Hallo, Peter," said Miss Jackson, but she did not smile. She was looking pale and worried. She slowly gave Peter the stamps. When Peter handed her the money, he saw that she was laying a pen and a pencil carefully in front of her in the form of a cross. Peter understood immediately.
5 The sign for danger! He opened his mouth to speak, but she anxiously shook her head and slowly said, "Good-bye, Peter."

Peter turned and left the post-office quietly. Miss Jackson was in danger. She obviously needed help. Who were those men? What were they doing in the post-office?

10 While Peter was wondering what to do, a police car came round the corner. Peter stopped it and told the policemen about Miss Jackson and the two men. The policemen jumped out and ran to the post-office.

When they reached the door, the two men were just coming out. One of them had a black bag in his hand. The policemen stopped them at once and looked into the bag. It contained more than £500 in bank-notes.

15 "Yes," said Miss Jackson to the police inspector later, "those men were robbing the post-office when Peter came in. They ordered me to serve him without a word. It was lucky that I knew the sign for danger."

"And it was lucky that Peter kept his eyes open," said the inspector.

20 "Well, I didn't forget the Scout motto," said Peter.

"What's that?" asked the inspector.

"Be prepared!" said Peter.

T. H. Pinder and E. O. Hann (adapted)

B. Conversation: At the Post-office

Peter: Good morning, Miss Jackson. I want four threepenny stamps, please.

Miss Jackson: Here you are, Peter. Anything else?

Peter: No, thank you.

Miss Jackson: That is twelve pence, please.

Mrs Miller: Can I make a telephone call to Manchester from here?

Miss Jackson: Certainly, madam. What number, please?

Mrs Miller: Manchester 5 - 7 - 9 - 0 - 4.

Miss Jackson: Thank you. Please go to Box number 2 and wait until the telephone rings.

Mr Dent: I want to send this
it cost, please?

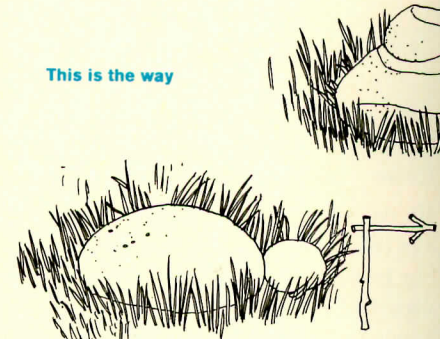
Miss Jackson: I must first put it
pounds. That is this

<The Scout Promise>

On my honour I promise
to do my duty to God
to help other people at
to obey the Scout law.

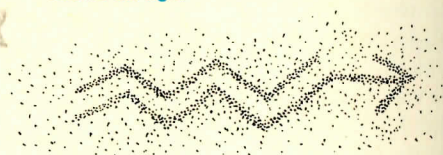
<Some more Scout Signs>

This is the way



Turn to the right

This way to water



<Oh! Look at the Moon>

Oh! look at the moon, Las
She is shining up there; An
Oh! Mother, she looks Bu
Like a lamp in the air. An

Mr Dent: I want to send this parcel to Scotland. How much does it cost, please?

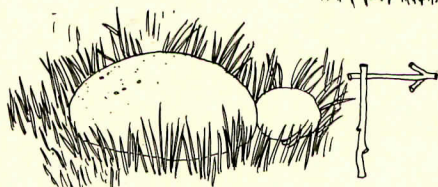
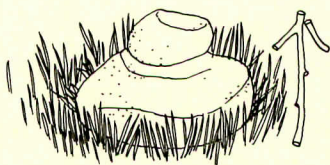
Miss Jackson: I must first put it on the scales. It weighs nearly eight pounds. That is thirty-five pence, please.

⟨The Scout Promise⟩

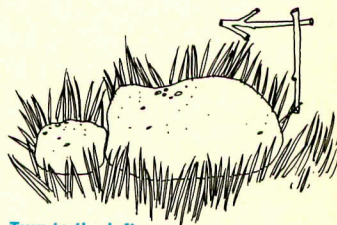
On my honour I promise that I will do my best
to do my duty to God and the Queen,
to help other people at all times,
to obey the Scout law.

⟨Some more Scout Signs⟩

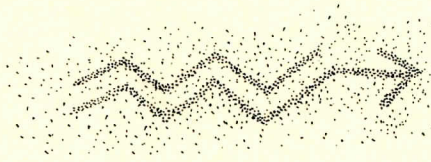
This is the way



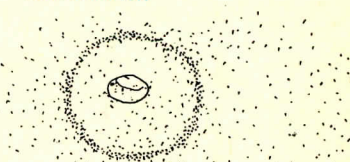
Turn to the right



Turn to the left



This way to water



I have gone home

⟨Oh! Look at the Moon⟩

Oh! look at the moon,
She is shining up there;
Oh! Mother, she looks
Like a lamp in the air.

Last week she was smaller,
And shaped like a bow;
But now she's grown bigger,
And round as an O. Eliza Lee Follen

Exercises

1 Answer the following questions

1. What test did Peter take? 2. What is the Scout sign for danger? 3. What did Miss Jackson say when she saw the sign for danger? 4. Why did Peter go to the post-office? 5. Was Miss Jackson alone when Peter came in? 6. Did Miss Jackson look happy? 7. How did Miss Jackson attract Peter's attention to the two dangerous men? 8. What did Peter do when he saw that Miss Jackson was in danger? 9. What did the policemen do when they heard Peter's story? 10. What is the Scout motto?

2 Form adverbs of the following adjectives § 51

bad, quiet, happy, awful, simple, excellent, silly, calm, lucky, strict, proud, quick, wise, friendly, hearty, nice, curious, hungry, nervous, clever, angry, good, excited, careful, bitter, heavy, slow, terrible, busy, easy, unexpected.

3 Fill in the missing adverbs § 51

Adjective

Ex.: Peter is a quick boy.

- His friend Jack is a slow boy.
- Miss Jackson is a quiet woman.
- Miss Jackson is sometimes nervous.
- The men were very angry.
- Peter's answers were good.

Adverb

He answers quickly.

- He replies ...
 She talked ... to the two men.
 She looked ... at the two men in the post-office.
 They replied ... to the police inspector.
 He answered the questions ...

4 Adjective or Adverb? § 51

1. Miss Jackson was very (happy) when the police arrested the men so (quick). 2. She was (busy) until five o'clock. 3. She was (busy) selling stamps. 4. Then she (quick) closed the post-office and went to see Peter. 5. Peter was (proud) telling his adventure to his friends when Miss Jackson came in. 6. "Hallo, Miss Jackson," said Peter and smiled (friendly). "How are you?" 7. "I'm feeling quite (good)," answered Miss Jackson (happy). "I am very (proud) of you, Peter. You were so (clever) when I (serious) needed help." 8. "That's very (nice) of you, Miss Jackson, but I knew (immediate) what to do. I understood that you were in (serious) danger. I saw that the men were (dangerous)." 9. "It was (lucky) for me that you came in," said Miss Jackson (quiet).

5 Three Sentence Switchboards § 52

a)

S	V + O
Peter	did the work
The boys	told the story
They	spoke French
Miss Jackson	played the game
You	write(s)

b)

S	Adverb
Miss Jackson	quickly
We	happily
My friend	slowly
They	excitedly

c)

S	v	Adverb
You		calmly
Mr Jackson	(was)	quickly
The men	(were)	slowly
She		carefully

6 Peter and the Police Inspector § 52

Put the adverbs in the sentences.
 The police inspector inspected the two men.

Inspector: (quickly) Can you tell me what happened?

Peter: (quietly) When I entered the room I saw the policeman talking to Miss Jackson. (calmly) He was showing me some cards.

Inspector: Could you hear what the policeman was saying?

Peter: I couldn't hear very well. (quietly)

5 Three Sentence Switchboards § 52

a)

S	V + O	Adverb
Peter	did the work	very slowly.
The boys	told the story	carefully.
They	spoke French	quickly.
Miss Jackson	played the game	excellently.
You	write(s)	well.
		badly.

b)

S	Adverb	V + O
Miss Jackson	quickly	read the letter.
We	happily	told the story.
My friend	slowly	took the test.
They	excitedly	opened the box.

c)

S	v	Adverb	V + O
You		calmly	asking some questions.
Mr Jackson	(was)	quickly	entering the room.
The men	(were)	slowly	opening the door.
She		carefully	reading the letter.

6 Peter and the Police Inspector § 52

*Put the adverbs in brackets in the right places.
The police inspector asks Peter a lot of questions about the two men.*

Inspector: (quickly) Can you tell me what you saw at the post-office, Peter?

Peter: (quietly) When I entered the post-office I saw that one man was talking to Miss Jackson. (curiously) The other man was looking at some cards.

Inspector: Could you hear what the man was saying?

Peter: I couldn't hear very well what he was saying. He spoke very quietly.

Inspector: What was Miss Jackson doing?

Peter: (anxiously) She was trying to attract my attention. (nervously) She was looking at the men. (carefully) Then I saw that she was laying a pen and a pencil in front of her. (immediately) I understood that Miss Jackson was in danger.

Inspector: What were the men wearing?

Peter: They were wearing old clothes.

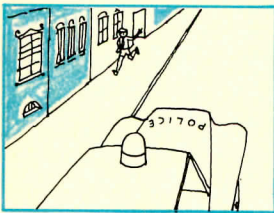
Inspector: (unexpectedly) We found some new clothes in their bag. They wanted to wear some other clothes afterwards. These men were dangerous.

Peter: (immediately) I saw that.

Inspector: Thank you very much for your help.

7 A Story in Pictures

Look at the following pictures and retell the story 'X for Danger'. Begin like this: "One evening Peter took the test for his Scout badge. Mr Jackson asked him ..." Go on.



8 Test your pronunciation

[ð] = voiced
the
this
father
...

[θ] = voiceless
thin
thick
tooth
...

that, mouth, they, these, those, brother, there, three, Thursday, nothing, bathroom, clothes, mathematics, another, table-cloth, mother, thing, then, thief, throw, feather, weather, rather, thank, other, faithful, through, everything, thus.

1. "Thank you," says the thin man.
2. This is my thin brother's seventh birthday.
3. Father sold three shirts on Thursday.
4. There is something the matter with the car.
5. My brother's birthday is on the 3rd of June.
6. There are three bad teeth in Susan's mouth.
7. These three brothers are rather silly.

9 Mrs Davis was Busy §§ 43, 45, 50

Say what Mrs Davis was doing in the following sentences with 'I' for lunch, at ... o'clock

First Mrs Davis had breakfast, then she went to the post office (to clean the windows, to make the bed, to buy a taxi, to return with the heavy basket, to wash the dishes and plates, to rush to the bus stop, to wait for the bus to come back)

10 Translation

1. Fräulein Jackson ist glücklich.
2. Es war ein paar Minuten.

3. Die Männer kamen sehr langsam. 4. Ihn haben die drei Männer sprach sehr schlecht Englisch. 5. Die Männer wollten. 7. „Ihr Geld! Geben Sie es mir.“ 8. Fräulein Jackson ging langsam zu ihm. 9. Die Männer waren gefährlich. 10. Die Männer waren gefährlich. 11. Postamt. 12. Er wollte nur einige Briefe. 13. Er in Fräulein Jacksons Gesicht. 14. Sie gab ihm ein Stück Papier. 15. Sie gab ihm ein Stück Papier. 16. Sie gab ihm ein Stück Papier. 17. Dann sah Peter, daß sie sorgfältig in Form eines Kreuzes vor sich legte. 18. Peter verließ das Postamt so schnell er konnte. 19. Peter verließ das Postamt so schnell er konnte. 20. erzählte er aufgeregt einem Polizisten. 21. Bald verhaftete die Polizei die drei Männer. 21. Bald verhaftete die Polizei die drei Männer schnell nach Hause und erzählte seinem Vater.

Let's prepare lesson 15

Peter is happy. He has just answered the letter. Miss Jackson is tired. She has been cleaning the windows. Mr Jackson is proud. His Scouts have passed their test. Miss Jackson wants to give Peter a book to buy him a book.

1. "Thank you," says the thin man.
2. This is my thin brother's seventh birthday.
3. Father sold three shirts on Thursday.
4. There is something the matter with these clothes.
5. My brother's birthday is on the 3rd March. That is a Thursday this year.
6. There are three bad teeth in Susan's mouth.
7. These three brothers are rather silly.

9 Mrs Davis was Busy
§§ 43, 45, 50

Say what Mrs Davis did yesterday. Begin some of your sentences with 'first, then, after a while, after tea, after lunch, at . . . o'clock'.

First Mrs Davis had breakfast, then she . . .

(to clean the windows, to make the shopping-list, to go shopping, to wait for a taxi, to return with the heavy basket, to prepare lunch, to wash the cups and plates, to rush to the bus stop, to visit her niece, to help her in the garden, to come back)

10 Translation

1. Fräulein Jackson zählte langsam das Geld im Postamt.
2. Es war ein paar Minuten vor Schalterschuß.
3. Plötzlich kamen zwei Männer herein.
4. Ihre Kleider waren sehr alt.
5. Einer der Männer sprach sehr schlecht Englisch.
6. Fräulein Jackson fragte, was sie wollten.
7. „Ihr Geld! Geben Sie es mir schnell! Wir haben nicht viel Zeit.“
8. Fräulein Jackson ging langsam zu ihrem Pult.
9. Sie war bleich und nervös.
10. Die Männer waren gefährlich.
11. In diesem Augenblick betrat Peter das Postamt.
12. Er wollte nur einige Briefmarken kaufen.
13. Plötzlich schaute er in Fräulein Jacksons Gesicht.
14. Sie war sehr bleich.
15. Sie war bleicher als ein Stück Papier.
16. Sie gab Peter die Briefmarken sehr langsam.
17. Dann sah Peter, daß sie sorgfältig einen Bleistift und einen Federhalter in Form eines Kreuzes vor sich legte.
18. Es war das Zeichen für Gefahr.
19. Peter verließ das Postamt so schnell, wie er konnte.
20. Auf der Straße erzählte er aufgeregt einem Polizisten von Fräulein Jackson und den zwei Männern.
21. Bald verhaftete die Polizei die beiden Männer.
22. Peter ging schnell nach Hause und erzählte seinen Eltern stolz von seinem Abenteuer.

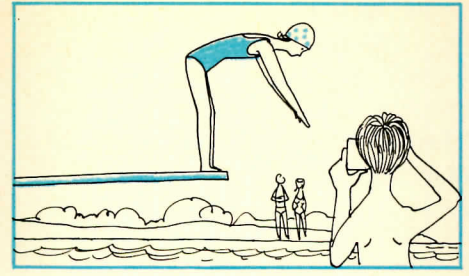
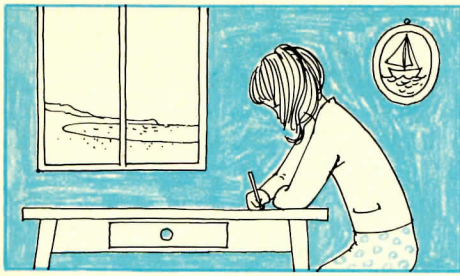
Let's prepare lesson 15

Peter is happy. He **has just answered** all Mr Jackson's questions.

Miss Jackson is tired. She **has been very busy this week.**

Mr Jackson is proud. His Scouts **have helped** many old people **this year.**

Miss Jackson wants to give Peter a present. She **has gone** into town **today** to buy him a book.



15 A. The Snapshot Competition

Sea View
Westcliff Road
Bournemouth
July 27th, 1965

5 Dear Daddy,

I'm sorry to say that I have not enjoyed our holiday in Bournemouth very much. I must tell you why.

10 Last Saturday a little girl on the beach asked me to look after her dolls. I had just taken them into my arms, when Colin came up with his camera and took a photo of me.

Now Colin wants to send the snapshot of me with the dolls to our school magazine. It's a terrible photo. It looks as if I still play with dolls at the age of twelve. It's babyish and silly. I've asked Colin not to send it, 15 but he insists. He has written to you about it today.

I'm so unhappy. Please, Daddy, help me.

Your loving daughter,
Diana

Sea View
Westcliff Road
Bournemouth
July 27th, 1965

20

Dear Daddy,

25 We are having a lovely holiday with Aunt Margery. The first few days were rather cool, but this week the weather has been hot and we have been in the sea every day.

I've taken lots of photographs with my new camera, and at last I have a good snap for the competition in our school magazine. It's a snapshot

of Diana on the beach with two dolls. It's a much better snapshot. The light and shade is just what I need for the competition. There is a lovely girl in a blue racket, shorts and shoes. I must win!

5 Diana has been most unreasonable. I must give it to her, she tried to take it away from me. I must have a moment's peace the whole time. Last night I took the snap.

I'm sending you my snaps with the dolls.

10

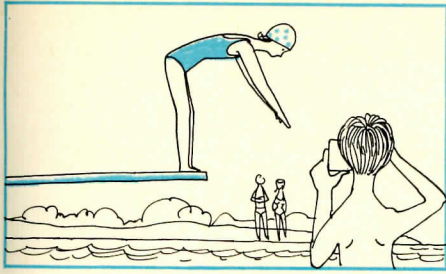
15 My dear children,

I have just received your letters. The weather has been fine, and that you are all well.

20 I have had a look at Colin's snapshot. However, I don't think that the snapshot is the best, Colin. Send in the photograph of the girl in the swimming-pool. It is much better.

Give my love to Aunt Margery, please. How is she? Remember that you promised to write to me.

25



of Diana on the beach with two dolls in her arms. I've never taken a better snapshot. The light and shade on it are wonderful. I hope to win the competition. There is a lovely prize for the best snap: a tennis racket, shorts and shoes. I must win it.

5 Diana has been most unreasonable about the snap. After I had shown it to her, she tried to take it away and tear it up. She hasn't given me a moment's peace the whole time. Last night she even got up to look for the snap.

I'm sending you my snaps with this letter. Aren't they lovely?

10

Lots of love,
Colin

35 Whitehouse Rd.
Wolverhampton
August 1st, 1965

15 My dear children,

I have just received your letters and I am glad to hear that the weather has been fine, and that you have bathed every day.

I have had a look at Colin's snapshots. I think they are very good. However, I don't think that the snapshot of Diana with the dolls is the
20 best, Colin. Send in the photograph of Diana on the diving-board in the swimming-pool. It is much better.

Give my love to Aunt Margery, please. Have you helped her in the house? Remember that you promised to clean your rooms.

25

Love from
Daddy

35 Whitehouse Rd.
Wolverhampton
September 22nd, 1965

Dear Aunt Margery,

5 Thank you very much for the lovely holiday. We have heard this morning that Colin has actually won our snapshot competition with the photo of me on the diving-board. Isn't it wonderful?

We hope to see you again soon.

Your loving niece,
Diana

10

B. Private Letters

1. *How to begin:*

Dear Bill, (Mother, Father,
Uncle George,
My dear Mary,
Dear Mr Dent,
Dear Mr and Mrs Dent,

<p>Mr George Baker 49 Brook Street Hounslow Middlesex</p>

2. *How to send greetings at the end:*

Remember me to David and Vivien.
Kind regards to all the family.
Give my love to Aunt Margery.
Best wishes. — All good wishes.
All the best.

3. *How to end the letter:*

(Much) Love,
Yours, — Yours ever,
Yours sincerely,
Yours very sincerely,

4. *A letter of thanks:*

23 Walpole Road
Brighton
4th June 1965

Dear Uncle George,

Thank you very much for the adventure book. It is a lovely birthday present. The stories are very exciting.

Ten boys and girls came to my birthday party. We had cake and ice-cream for tea, and then we played games until nine o'clock. It was great fun.

Much love,
David

Exercises

1 Answer the following questions

1. When did Diana go to Bournemouth? 2. Why didn't Diana like the snapshot? 3. Which snapshot did Diana and Colin promised to do? 4. How was Diana very happy when she wrote to Aunt Margery?

2 Aunt Margery's Letter

Diana tells Aunt Margery about the dolls. Tell her about the children's father.

Dear John,

Poor Diana is very unhappy, and she has lost the snapshot of her . . .

Go on and finish Aunt Margery's letter.

3 Form the present perfect § 54

Ex.: I have laughed, I have said, I have brushed, I have walked, I have taken, I have sent, I have raced, I have liked, I have traveled, I have cried, I have come, I have replied, I have thanked, I have lifted, I have started, I have expected, I have received, I have . . .

4 A Sentence Switchboard § 56

Use the present perfect.
a) *Ex.:* This summer . . .

This summer	you my friend
This month	
This week	

b) *Form questions*

Ex.: Have you been in London this summer?

c) *Form negative questions*

Ex.: Haven't you been in London this summer?

Exercises

1 Answer the following questions

1. When did Diana and Colin spend their holiday in Bournemouth? 2. What did a little girl on the beach ask Diana to do? 3. What did Colin do at that moment? 4. Why didn't Diana like the snapshot? 5. What was the prize for the best snapshot? 6. Which snapshot did the children's father like best? 7. What had Diana and Colin promised to do for Aunt Margery? 8. Why was Diana very happy when she wrote to Aunt Margery?

2 Aunt Margery's Letter

Diana tells Aunt Margery about Colin's snapshot of her and the dolls. Then Aunt Margery also writes a letter to the children's father.

Dear John,

Poor Diana is very unhappy, and I am sorry for her. Colin has taken a snapshot of her . . .

Go on and finish Aunt Margery's letter. Write at the end:

Love from us all,
Margery.

3 Form the present perfect § 54

Ex.: I have laughed, you have danced, he has . . . etc. to say, to be, to stop, to want, to hurry, to tell, to brush, to walk, to climb, to enjoy, to play, to watch, to take, to send, to race, to like, to travel, to offer, to get, to win, to remember, to cry, to come, to reply, to thank, to come up, to hear, to think, to see, to lift, to start, to expect, to receive, to learn.

4 A Sentence Switchboard § 56

Use the present perfect for the verbs in brackets.

- a) *Ex.:* This summer you have not been in London.

This summer	you my friend	(to take) many funny snapshots.
This month		(to learn) to drive a car.
This week		(to see) many friends on the beach. (not to be) in London. (to play) tennis.

b) Form questions

Ex.: Have you been in London this summer?

c) Form negative questions

Ex.: Haven't you been in London this summer?

5 The Position of the Adverb with the Present Perfect

a) *A Sentence Switchboard*

Ex.: Diana has never taken a good snapshot.

You Diana	(to have)	often never sometimes	(to win) the snapshot competition. (to take) a good snapshot. (to jump) from the diving-board. (to think) of the snapshot competition.
--------------	-----------	-----------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

b) *Put the adverbs in their right places.*

1. Diana has shown her friends the snapshot with the dolls (never).
2. Colin has wished to win a snapshot competition (always).
3. Diana has played with Colin's new racket (sometimes).
4. Diana has promised to clean her room (often).

6 Colin and His Friend in Bournemouth § 56

Colin meets his friend David in Bournemouth. David had not known that Colin was in Bournemouth.

Now he wants to know:

1. ... whether Colin has enjoyed his holidays.
2. ... whether the weather has been fine.
3. ... whether they have been in the water every day.
4. ... whether he has been in the water today.
5. ... whether Colin has taken any good photographs.
6. ... whether Colin has won a snapshot competition before.
7. ... whether they have had tea this afternoon.
8. ... whether he wants to have tea with him and his parents.
9. ... whether Aunt Margery is very strict.

Words for Colin's answers:

- (Yes, very much.)
(Yes, this week, hot and sunny.)
(Yes, this week.)
(No, today, rather cool.)
(Yes, school magazine.)
(No, to hope, to win.)
(No, this afternoon.)
(Yes, to ask Aunt Margery.)
(Yes, always during the holidays.)

Form David's questions and Colin's answers.

Ex.: Have you enjoyed your holidays? Yes, I have enjoyed them very much.
Go on.

7 A Sentence Switchboard § 56

a) *Use the verbs*
Ex.: Yesterday

Last year	David	(n
Last month		(t
Two weeks ago		(t
Three weeks ago		(t
Yesterday		(t

b) *Now begin your sentences with 'this' and put the verbs in brackets into the*

8 Colin's Letter to Aunt Margery § 56

Put the verbs in

Dear Aunt Margery,

Last week I (to win) the graph of Diana on the diving-board. I and the dolls. You know how she (to think) that I (to want) to win the Vivien, David's sister, also her school a few days ago. In the holiday foot when he was lying on the beach of David's foot. She (to call) the ph Wasn't that funny?

9 Past Tense or Present Perfect § 56

Ex.: Yesterday he only (to Yesterday has only w

1. Last year Diana and Colin (to stay) year they (to be) to Bournemouth. 2 times, but yesterday she only (to bathe) day. Colin only (to take) one snapshot fine, and Colin (to take) a lot of nice work) in the kitchen, but yesterday Diana and Colin. 5. Some days ago and today he (to send) a snapshot to

7 A Sentence Switchboard § 56

a) *Use the verbs in the past tense.*
Ex.: Yesterday David went to London.

Last year	David	(not to win) the soap-box race.
Last month		(to go) to London.
Two weeks ago		(to jump) from the diving-board.
Three weeks ago		(to take) a snapshot of Vivien.
Yesterday		(to play) football.

b) *Now begin your sentences with 'this year', 'this month', 'this week' and 'today' and put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect.*

8 Colin's Letter to Aunt Margery § 56

Put the verbs in brackets into the right form.

Sept. 23rd, 1965

Dear Aunt Margery,

Last week I (to win) the snapshot competition with the photograph of Diana on the diving-board. I (not to send) in the snapshot of Diana and the dolls. You know how she (to cry) the last weekend in July when she (to think) that I (to want) to win the competition with that snapshot.

Vivien, David's sister, also (to win) the snapshot competition at her school a few days ago. In the holidays she had taken a snap of her brother's foot when he was lying on the beach. Nobody (to know) that it was a part of David's foot. She (to call) the photograph "Black Hill without Trees." Wasn't that funny?

Love from
Colin

9 Past Tense or Present Perfect § 56

Ex.: Yesterday Colin (to write) two letters, but today he only (to write) one.
 Yesterday Colin wrote two letters, but today he has only written one.

1. Last year Diana and Colin (to stay) at home in their holidays, but this year they (to be) to Bournemouth. 2. Today Diana (to be) in the sea three times, but yesterday she only (to bathe) once. 3. Last week it (to rain) every day. Colin only (to take) one snapshot, but this week the weather (to be) fine, and Colin (to take) a lot of nice snapshots. 4. Today Aunt Margery (to work) in the kitchen, but yesterday morning she (to go) to the beach with Diana and Colin. 5. Some days ago Colin (to take) some nice photographs and today he (to send) a snapshot to the school magazine.

10 The Past Perfect §57a) *Put the verbs of Exercise 3 into the past perfect.*

Ex.: I had laughed.

b) *Put the verbs in brackets into the past perfect.*

Ex.: Peter just (to take) his test when Miss Jackson came in.

Peter had just taken his test when Miss Jackson came in.

1. Peter just (to give) Miss Jackson the money when she laid the pen and pencil on the table. 2. Before Peter saw the two men in the post-office, he never (to see) a thief. 3. Peter just (to open) his mouth to speak when Miss Jackson anxiously shook her head. 4. Before the thieves left the post-office, they (to take) £500. 5. The two men (to leave) the post-office before the policemen arrived.

c) *Connect the two sentences and begin with 'after'. Use the past perfect for the first clause.*

Ex.: Tom's mother called her son 'darling'. The girls laughed.

After Tom's mother had called her son 'darling', the girls laughed.

1. Tom said 'good-bye' to his mother. He sat down in his corner. 2. Tom opened the window. Some dirt flew into his eye. 3. The Girl Guide saw that Tom had tears in his eyes. She helped him. 4. Tom told the girls about his boarding-school. Soon they were friends. 5. The girls gave Tom some chocolates. Tom gave them some fruit.

d) *Connect the two sentences and begin with 'as soon as'. Use the past perfect for the first clause.*

1. Mr Honk looked into the driving-mirror. He recognized Robby Longfingers' face. 2. The taxi driver passed the red traffic lights. The police car was behind him. 3. The taxi reached Victoria Station. The man jumped out. 4. The policemen heard the name of Robby Longfingers. They rushed into the station. 5. The policemen came back with Robby Longfingers. Mr Honk went to Scotland Yard.

e) *Put the past perfect of the sentences under b) into the interrogative form.*

Ex.: Had Peter just taken his test when Miss Jackson came in?

11 Translation

1. Am Sonntag kamen Colin und Diana Baker aus Bournemouth zurück, wo sie ihre Ferien verbracht hatten. 2. Nachdem sie mit ihren Eltern Tee getrunken hatten (to have tea), sagte Colin: „Diesen Sommer haben wir wunderbare Ferien gehabt. 3. Wollt ihr unsere Photos sehen?“ 4. Dann nahm er sie aus seiner Tasche. 5. „Hier ist Tante Margery auf dem Bahnsteig. Sie hatte auf uns gewartet. 6. Dort seht ihr Diana am Strande mit den zwei Puppen. Ein kleines Mädchen hatte ihr

die Puppen gegeben. 7. Ich habe nie gemacht“, sagte Colin. 8. „Aber Vater Sprungbrett besser.“ 9. „Dies ist Colin mit dem Jungen aus London Tennis seht ihr Tante Margery am Strand. Sie 11. Und hier seht ihr [die] arme Diana schußwettbewerb erzählt hatte“, lachte

12 Diana and Colin Went to Bournemouth*Tell the story from the pictures.**Begin like this: On the first day of the holidays and Colin packed their suitcase ...***Let's prepare lesson 16**

The holidays are over.

Yesterday we were still in the sea. T

Yesterday I took a photo of Diana on t
it to the school magazine.

Yesterday Diana wrote to her friend. T

Yesterday Diana and Vivien played te
prepare their lessons for the next da

die Puppen gegeben. 7. Ich habe niemals einen besseren Schnappschuß gemacht“, sagte Colin. 8. „Aber Vater fand das Photo von Diana auf dem Sprungbrett besser.“ 9. „Dies ist Colin mit seinem Tennisschläger, nachdem er mit dem Jungen aus London Tennis gespielt hatte“, sagte Diana. 10. „Hier seht ihr Tante Margery am Strand. Sie war gerade mit uns im Wasser gewesen. 11. Und hier seht ihr [die] arme Diana, nachdem ich ihr von dem Schnappschußwettbewerb erzählt hatte“, lachte Colin.

12 Diana and Colin
Went to
Bournemouth

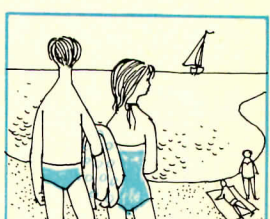
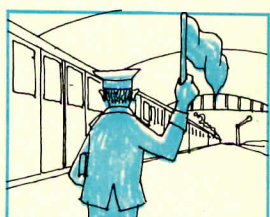
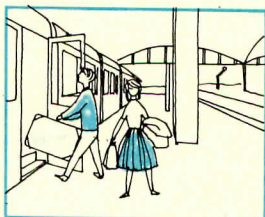
flag =



stationmaster =

Tell the story from the pictures.

Begin like this: On the first day of their holidays Diana and Colin packed their suitcase ...



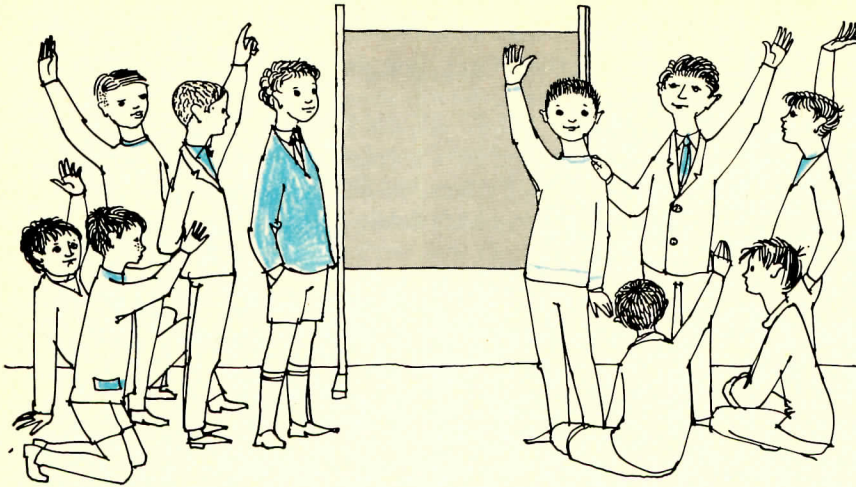
Let's prepare lesson 16

The holidays are over.

Yesterday we were still in the sea. **Tomorrow** we shall leave Bournemouth. Yesterday I took a photo of Diana on the diving-board. **Tomorrow** I shall send it to the school magazine.

Yesterday Diana wrote to her friend. **Tomorrow** she will see her again.

Yesterday Diana and Vivien played tennis on the beach. **Tomorrow** they will prepare their lessons for the next day.



16 A. A Meeting of the Second Form

After school the second form of Greyfriars Grammar School for Boys in London are having a meeting in their classroom.

The speaker is David Dent.

5 "I shall not make a long speech . . ." he begins.

"Let's hope for the best!" shouts Jack Barton, his rival on the playing-field.

"Jack Barton," says the speaker, "if you are not quiet you'll go outside. I'll speak as long as I like, and you won't stop me."

10 There is applause from David's friends.

"Well," continues David. "Let's write a play and perform it next month in front of the whole school. We'll use the stage in the school hall."

There are loud cheers from all sides this time.

"What play will it be?" asks Bob Miller.

15 "Robin Hood and the Sheriff."

Again there is a universal cheer.

"We shall be outlaws in the forest. We'll help the poor and we'll fight our cruel enemy, the Sheriff of Nottingham."

20 "Will you be Robin Hood, David?" asks Billy Taylor. He is David's best friend.

"If you like," says David modestly, "I'll play the part of Robin Hood."

"And I'll be the Sheriff," shout
soldiers. We'll go to the forest and
" Well, we shall see whether you'l
" Who will play the women's part
5 " Our sisters will," answers Davi
What shall we do with the money f
" We shall give it to the School S
" Let's go to the seaside for a day
" As we are Robin Hood and his m
10 Children's Home. What do you thin
helped people in need. Let's do the
" Hands up, please! Who is for the
Most of the boys are for the Chil
" All right!" says Jack Barton. " B
15 Then we shall all go to the seaside
tea and three ice-creams for everyb

B. Conversation: Let's Go to the Cinema

Peter: Let's go to the cinema this

Jürgen (his pen-friend from Germa

Peter: Well, there's a western film
Palace, and . . .

Jürgen: Let's go to the Royal. I

Peter: No, you can't book seats
gramme is continuous, and

Jürgen: What happens if the cinema

Peter: Then we must stand in a c

*In the cinema Jürgen is surprised
but Peter tells him that this is allowed*

After the performance the two boys

Peter: How did you like the film

Jürgen: Oh, I liked it very much.

the picture of the Queen ap

then the music played 'Go

Peter: Oh, they always do that

"And I'll be the Sheriff," shouts Jack Barton. "I'll have twenty soldiers. We'll go to the forest and catch you and your outlaws."

"Well, we shall see whether you'll do that," says David.

"Who will play the women's parts?" asks Bob Miller.

5 "Our sisters will," answers David. "And there is another question. What shall we do with the money from the sale of the tickets?"

"We shall give it to the School Sports Fund," says Billy.

"Let's go to the seaside for a day," suggests Jack Barton.

10 "As we are Robin Hood and his men, let's give the money to the local Children's Home. What do you think of that? Robin Hood and his men helped people in need. Let's do the same."

"Hands up, please! Who is for the Children's Home?" shouts Bob Miller.

Most of the boys are for the Children's Home.

"All right!" says Jack Barton. "But our next play will be 'Ship, ahoy!'"

15 Then we shall all go to the seaside for one whole day. Free lunch, free tea and three ice-creams for everybody!"

B. Conversation: Let's Go to the Cinema

Peter: Let's go to the cinema this evening.

Jürgen (his pen-friend from Germany): What's on?

Peter: Well, there's a western film at the Royal, a thriller at the Palace, and ...

Jürgen: Let's go to the Royal. I like westerns. Can we book seats?

Peter: No, you can't book seats at most English cinemas. The programme is continuous, and we can go in at any time.

Jürgen: What happens if the cinema is full?

Peter: Then we must stand in a queue. Come on. Let's go.

In the cinema Jürgen is surprised to see that many people are smoking, but Peter tells him that this is allowed in most English cinemas.

After the performance the two boys go home by bus.

Peter: How did you like the film?

Jürgen: Oh, I liked it very much. But what a surprise at the end when the picture of the Queen appeared and everybody stood up. And then the music played 'God Save the Queen'.

Peter: Oh, they always do that at the end of the last performance.

〈National Anthem: God Save the Queen〉



God save our gra-cious Queen Long live our
no-ble Queen, God save the Queen! Send her vic-
to-ri-ous, Hap-py and glo-ri-ous,
Long to reign o-ver us; God save the Queen!

Exercises

1 After the Meeting

Mrs Miller asks her son Bob questions about the meeting. Can you answer them?

1. Where did you have the meeting? 2. Who was your speaker? 3. What did he say when he began his speech? He said: "... 4. Did all the boys listen to him quietly? 5. What did David say to Jack Barton? He said: "... 6. What did David suggest? He suggested: "... 7. What play will it be? 8. Who will be Robin Hood? 9. What will the outlaws do in the play? 10. What will the boys do with the money from the sale of the tickets?

2 A Sentence Switchboard § 58

a) Ex.: I shall go to the seaside tomorrow.

I		go to the meeting in the classroom	later.
You	(shall)	take a photo of the sheriff	this afternoon.
He, She	(will)	make a speech in the school hall	next week.
We		go to the seaside	tomorrow.
They		give the money to the Children's Home	after lunch.

b) Now use the short forms for these sentences.

Ex.: I'll go to the seaside tomorrow.

c) Now read the sentences in the negative form. Use also the short forms.

Ex.: I shall not go to the seaside tomorrow.

I shan't go to the seaside tomorrow.

3 The Play at Greyfriars School § 58

a) Put the verbs in

The boys of Greyfriars School want to perform the play a month later at their school.

David: I (to play) the part of Robin Hood and his men to rob the rich.

Jack: What (to be) my part?

David: You (to be) the sheriff. Robin Hood and his men.

Tom and Bill: We (to be) Robin Hood and his men (to fight) the sheriff and his men.

Jim and Bob: We (to follow) the sheriff and his men.

Jack: Who (to play) the woman?

David: Our sisters (to play) the part of the woman who has a dinner in the forest and who is to perform the play.

Bill: Where we (to perform) the play?

David: We (to use) the stage in the school hall.

b) Do the same exercise and use the short forms.

Ex.: David: I'll play the part of Robin Hood.

Go on.

4 An Article in the School Magazine § 58

A week after the play:

"Last Thursday the boys of the second year performed the play 'Robin Hood and the Sheriff' in front of the school in the school hall for the play. David D. was the Sheriff of Nottingham. The other boys were Robin Hood's men and the Sheriff's soldiers. The girls were the women's parts. The money from the sale of the tickets was given to the Children's Home."

The next day the boys of Greyfriars School performed the play on the school notice board:

"Next Thursday the boys of the second year will perform 'Robin Hood and the Sheriff' in the school hall. They ..."

Put the above text into the future tense.

3 The Play at Greyfriars School § 58

a) *Put the verbs in brackets into the future tense.*

The boys of Greyfriars School want to write a play. They will perform it a month later at their school.

David: I (to play) the part of Robin Hood. I (to help) the poor and rob the rich.

Jack: What (to be) my part?

David: You (to be) the sheriff. You (to go) to the forest and look for Robin Hood and his men.

Tom and Bill: We (to be) Robin Hood's men, the outlaws in the forest. We (to fight) the sheriff and his soldiers.

Jim and Bob: We (to follow) the sheriff as his soldiers. We (to catch) Robin Hood and his men.

Jack: Who (to play) the women's parts?

David: Our sisters (to play) the women's parts. They (to prepare) our dinner in the forest and they (to wash) our shirts and socks.

Bill: Where we (to perform) the play?

David: We (to use) the stage in the school hall.

b) *Do the same exercise and use the short forms of the future.*

Ex.: David: I'll play the part of Robin Hood. I'll ...

Go on.

4 An Article in the School Magazine § 58

A week after the play the school magazine wrote about the play:

"Last Thursday the boys of the second form had a big day. They performed 'Robin Hood and the Sheriff' in front of the whole school. They used the stage in the school hall for the play. David Dent was Robin Hood and Jack Barton the Sheriff of Nottingham. The other boys of the second form played Robin Hood's men and the Sheriff's soldiers. The boys' sisters played the women's parts. The money from the sale of the tickets went to the local Children's Home."

The next day the boys of Greyfriars School could read the following notice on the school notice board:

"Next Thursday the boys of the second form will have another big day. They will perform 'Robin Hood and the Sheriff' again. They ..."

Put the above text into the future tense.

5 An Interview § 58

a) *A reporter of the school magazine asks the players a lot of questions. He wants to know ...*

1. ... when they will perform another play.
2. ... what the name of the play will be.
3. ... whether the boys' sisters will play again.
4. ... whether the boys will wear the same clothes as in 'Robin Hood'.
5. ... whether the boys will perform the play in the school hall again.
6. ... whether they will not perform it in the Girls' School.
7. ... whether they will give the money to the local Children's Home.

Write down the reporter's questions and the boys' answers.

Ex.: "When will you perform another play?" — "... next month." Go on.

b) *Here are some more answers. What were the questions?*

1. No, "X for Danger" won't be our next play.
2. Yes, most of the boys and their sisters will have parts in the play.
3. Yes, Billy Taylor will write "Ship, ahoy".
4. No, we shan't give the money to the School Sports Fund.
5. Yes, our parents will help us to make the dresses.
6. No, the teachers won't have parts in the play.

6 Before the Play § 59

Put the verbs in brackets into the future.

a) *It is ten minutes before the play begins. This is what Mr Fog says to the boys.*

1. When the bell rings, the lights (to go out).
2. When the lights are out, Mike (to open) the curtain.
3. When the curtain is open, I (to lift) my hand.
4. When my hand is lifted, David (to begin) to speak.

b) *It is five minutes before the play begins. The players are very nervous.*

David: If Jim forgets his part, I (to whisper) the words to him.

Jack: But if you only whisper, he (not to hear) you.

David: If he doesn't hear me, he (to get) nervous.

Jack: If he gets very nervous, he (to do) something silly.

David: If he does something silly, Mr Fog (to stop) the play.

7 Put the adverbs in the right place §§ 52, 58

Ex.: We'll play "Ship, ahoy" again (never).

We'll never play "Ship, ahoy" again.

1. The boys of the second form will remember "Robin Hood" (always).
2. David will forget how he played the part of Robin Hood (never).
3. Many pupils will think of that play (often).
4. The boys will perform "Robin Hood" (soon).

8 Test your spelling and pronunciation

a) Pronunciation [ei]

b) Pronunciation: [ai]

c) *Read these words:*

rain, right, pipe, tail, paint, play, fi
bite, fly, shine, train, away, while, f
pale, silent, to contain, age, shade, r

Write these words:

[wai], [wei], [weit], [wait], [stei], [s
[eit], [grei], [bai]

9 Translation

1. Die Schülerzeitung
Woche wird die z

2. Sie werden „Robin Hood“ aufführen.
werden kommen.
4. Auch die Lehrer wer
Hood spielen, Jack Barton wird der Sher
Geächtete werden auf der Bühne kämp
Frauen spielen?
8. Natürlich die Schw
hang aufgeht (*to go up*), werden wir zu
Nottingham.
10. Die zweite Klasse wi
11. Wollt ihr ihnen helfen?
12. Natürl
ganze Schule wird kommen und ihnen v

Let's prepare lesson 17

If we **play** "Robin Hood" next month,
we **shall perform** it in front of the
whole school.

If you **play** the part of Robin Hood,
Bill **will play** the part of the sheriff.

If we **go** to the seaside with the
money we **shall have** free lunches
and ice-creams.

8 Test your spelling and pronunciation

- a) Pronunciation Spelling:
[ei] paper wait
 face day
 *Try to find more words*
- b) Pronunciation: Spelling:
[ai] time my
 smile dry
 *Try to find more words*

c) *Read these words:*

rain, right, pipe, tail, paint, play, five, life, surprise, hay, dry, fine, ripe, bite, fly, shine, train, away, while, faithful, prize, afraid, reply, aid, line, pale, silent, to contain, age, shade, rival, sale, stage.

Write these words:

[wai], [wei], [weit], [wait], [stei], [steid], [streit], [mei], [bait], [lei], [lai], [eit], [grei], [bai]

9 Translation

1. Die Schülerzeitung „The Greyfriars“ schreibt: Nächste Woche wird die zweite Klasse ihren großen Tag haben. 2. Sie werden „Robin Hood“ aufführen. 3. Die Eltern und Freunde der Schüler werden kommen. 4. Auch die Lehrer werden da sein. 5. David Dent wird Robin Hood spielen, Jack Barton wird der Sheriff sein. 6. Eine Menge Soldaten und Geächtete werden auf der Bühne kämpfen. 7. Und wer wird die Rollen der Frauen spielen? 8. Natürlich die Schwestern der Schüler. 9. Wenn der Vorhang aufgeht (*to go up*), werden wir zuerst einen Wald sehen, dann die Stadt Nottingham. 10. Die zweite Klasse wird das Geld dem Kinderheim geben. 11. Wollt ihr ihnen helfen? 12. Natürlich werden wir ihnen helfen. 13. Die ganze Schule wird kommen und ihnen viel Applaus geben.

Let's prepare lesson 17

If we **play** “Robin Hood” next month, we **shall perform** it in front of the whole school.

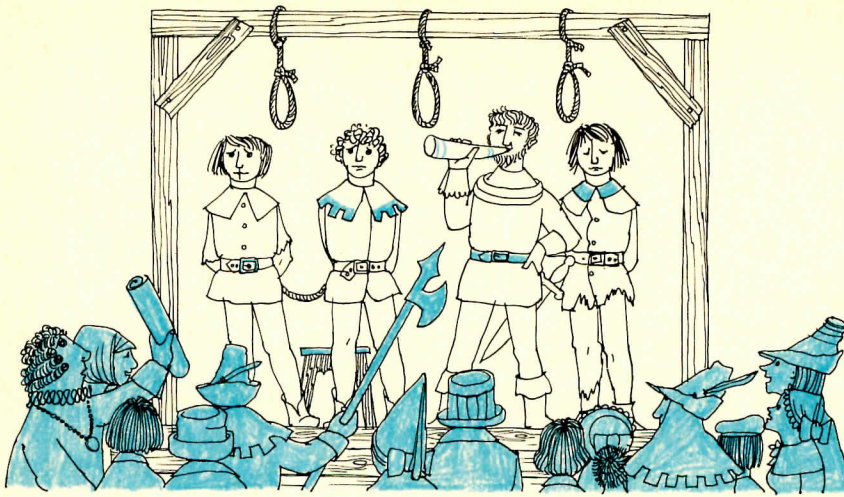
If you **play** the part of Robin Hood, Bill **will play** the part of the sheriff.

If we **go** to the seaside with the money we **shall have** free lunches and ice-creams.

If we **played** “Robin Hood” next month we **should perform** it in front of the whole school.

If you **played** the part of Robin Hood, Bill **would play** the part of the sheriff.

If we **went** to the seaside with the money we **should have** free lunches and ice-creams.



17 A. Robin Hood and the Sheriff

In Sherwood Forest, near the town of Nottingham, there once lived an outlaw called Robin Hood, the leader of a band of bowmen. They robbed the rich and helped the poor.

Robin Hood's greatest enemy was the cruel sheriff of Nottingham. The sheriff wanted to catch Robin Hood and hang him in the market-place of Nottingham. The road to London would be safe without those outlaws in the forest.

One day, the sheriff's soldiers caught some of Robin Hood's men, three brothers. The sheriff threw them into prison and gave the order to build the gallows in the market-place.

When Robin Hood heard the news of the brothers' arrest, he was very angry. "I should like to storm the prison and rescue them," he said. "But that wouldn't be wise. If we went to Nottingham, the sheriff's soldiers would catch us and we should land in prison, too."

While Robin Hood was speaking, an old beggar came into the camp. He brought news from Nottingham.

"They have built the gallows," he said. "But the sheriff hasn't found a hangman yet. He wants to hang the brothers tomorrow at twelve o'clock." Suddenly Robin had an idea. "Would you sell me your dirty coat?" he asked the old beggar.

"I should only be too glad," replied to Robin. Robin put it on and asked if you saw me in this dirty coat?"

"Your mother wouldn't know her tallest of the outlaws.

The next day Robin went to Nottingham. His coat he carried his horn.

Many people were in the market square. Robin's mother and the three brothers and the

Robin went to the sheriff and said he was looking for a hangman."

"Yes, I am," replied the sheriff. "I will hang any man. If I only had a hangman, I should be glad to hang you."

"How much would you give me if I could hang you?"

"Thirty silver coins," replied the sheriff. Robin. The sheriff told his soldiers to

When the three were standing under the gallows, the sheriff, "I'd like to hear the last words they'll tell me where Robin Hood is."

"Hurry up," replied the sheriff. "The execution will be."

Robin Hood went to the prisoners. Suddenly he threw off his beggar's coat and

blew it three times. This was the signal for the soldiers to help him. They were in the crowd, and

the horn they took off their coats and hats. "Treason! Treason! It's Robin Hood!"

"Long live Robin Hood!" shouted the soldiers. They raised their swords to defend their leader and

their way out of Nottingham into the forest.

<B. The Eight Bells>

Not many years ago there was an inn in the town of Lion'. The innkeeper did his best to serve the people who came to his house to eat and drink.

One day his wife said, "I've got a good idea."

"I should only be too glad," replied the beggar and handed the coat to Robin. Robin put it on and asked his men, "Would you recognize me, if you saw me in this dirty coat?"

"Your mother wouldn't know her own son," said Little John, the
5 tallest of the outlaws.

The next day Robin went to Nottingham, dressed as a beggar; under his coat he carried his horn.

Many people were in the market-place to watch the hanging. The mother of the three brothers and their brides were waiting in the crowd.

10 Robin went to the sheriff and said, "Sir, they tell me that you are looking for a hangman."

"Yes, I am," replied the sheriff. "I've caught three of Robin Hood's men. If I only had a hangman, I should hang these rascals at once."

"How much would you give me if I hanged them for you?" asked Robin.

15 "Thirty silver coins," replied the sheriff quickly. — "All right," said Robin. The sheriff told his soldiers to fetch the three brothers.

When the three were standing under the gallows, Robin Hood said to the sheriff, "I'd like to hear the last confessions of these men. Perhaps they'll tell me where Robin Hood is."

20 "Hurry up," replied the sheriff. "The sooner they go to hell the better it will be."

Robin Hood went to the prisoners and whispered his orders to them. Suddenly he threw off his beggar's coat, lifted his horn to his lips and blew it three times. This was the sign for his men to come forward and
25 help him. They were in the crowd, dressed as farmers. At the sound of the horn they took off their coats and stood there in their green suits.

"Treason! Treason! It's Robin Hood!" cried the sheriff.

30 "Long live Robin Hood!" shouted Robin Hood's men. They drew their swords to defend their leader and the three brothers, and fought their way out of Nottingham into the green forest.

⟨B. The Eight Bells⟩

Not many years ago there was an inn near Nottingham called the 'Red Lion'. The innkeeper did his best to attract customers, but very few people came to his house to eat and drink. Business was really bad.

One day his wife said, "I've got a good idea. Let's change the name of

the inn. Let's call it 'The Eight Bells' and hang seven bells outside as a sign."

"What a silly idea!" grumbled the innkeeper. But he did as his wife had said.

The next day a lot of people stopped outside the inn. They read the sign, and counted and recounted the bells. Finally, they hurried into the inn to tell the innkeeper about the mistake. From early morning until late at night the inn was full of people. Naturally, most of them stayed to eat or drink something. So it went on, day after day and week after week. 'The Eight Bells' became famous, and the innkeeper, thanks to his wife, made a lot of money.

⟨If . . .⟩

If all the seas were one sea,
 What a great sea that would be!
 And if all the trees were one tree,
 What a great tree that would be!
 And if all the axes were one axe,
 What a great axe that would be!
 And if all the men were one man,
 What a great man he would be!
 And if the great man took the great axe,
 And cut down the great tree,
 And let it fall into the great sea,
 What a splish splash that would be!

Exercises

1 Ask questions about . . .

- ... Robin Hood. Who? Where?
- ... Robin Hood's men. Who? What?
- ... the three brothers. Whom? What? etc.
- ... Robin Hood and the beggar.
- ... the Sheriff of Nottingham.
- ... what happened in the market-place.
- ... the soldiers and the gallows.
- ... Robin Hood's idea to save the prisoners.
- ... the end of the story.

2 Different People
 Tell the Story

- a) You are Robin
- b) You are the she
- c) You are one of

3 Short Forms and
 Full Forms § 60

What are the full she'd, I'll, we sh wouldn't he?

4 The Sheriff and
 his Soldiers § 62

a) Take the last c if-clause of the The sheriff is i

1. If I hang the brothers at once, Robin
2. If Robin Hood comes alone, I'll cat
3. If I catch him, I'll find a hangman.
4. If, he will hang Robin
5. If, the roads to London
6. If, they'll give me a lot
7. If, I'll buy a big house.
8. If, Prince John will co
9. If, he will give me new
10. If, I shall be the riches

- b) The sheriff calls his soldiers and says
1. If I hanged the brothers at once, Rob ham.
 2. If Robin Hood came alone, I'd catch
 3. If I caught him, . . .

Go on. Put the if-clause into the past ten Use the sentences under 4 a.

5 Robin Hood and
 Little John § 62

a) Robin Hood is

1. If I don't help the brothers, the she
2. If the sheriff hangs them, the other
3. If the other outlaws , I shan't v
4. If, the poor
5. If, they won
6. If, they will
7. If, they won
8. If, the sherif

**2 Different People
Tell the Story**

- a) *You are Robin Hood. Tell the story.*
- b) *You are the sheriff. Tell the story again.*
- c) *You are one of the three brothers. Tell your story.*

**3 Short Forms and
Full Forms § 60**

What are the full forms of *I'd, they'll, he won't, we'd, she'd, I'll, we shouldn't, we shan't, we'll, won't you? wouldn't he?*

**4 The Sheriff and
his Soldiers § 62**

- a) *Take the last clause of the sentence and use it for the if-clause of the next sentence.
The sheriff is in his castle and thinks:*

1. If I hang the brothers at once, Robin Hood will come alone to Nottingham.
2. If Robin Hood comes alone, I'll catch him.
3. If I catch him, I'll find a hangman.
4. If, he will hang Robin Hood.
5. If, the roads to London will be safe for the rich.
6. If, they'll give me a lot of money.
7. If, I'll buy a big house.
8. If, Prince John will come to Nottingham.
9. If, he will give me new farms and fields.
10. If, I shall be the richest man in Nottingham.

b) *The sheriff calls his soldiers and says:*

1. If I hanged the brothers at once, Robin Hood would come alone to Nottingham.
2. If Robin Hood came alone, I'd catch him.
3. If I caught him, . . .

Go on. Put the if-clause into the past tense, the main clause into the conditional. Use the sentences under 4 a.

**5 Robin Hood and
Little John § 62**

- a) *Robin Hood is in the forest and thinks:*

1. If I don't help the brothers, the sheriff will hang them.
2. If the sheriff hangs them, the other outlaws will leave me.
3. If the other outlaws, I shan't win against our enemy, the sheriff.
4. If, the poor will be without help.
5. If, they won't have enough money to buy food.
6. If, they will be ill.
7. If, they won't work.
8. If, the sheriff will throw them into prison.

b) *Robin Hood's friend, Little John, says to him:*

1. If you didn't help the brothers, the sheriff would hang them.
2. If the sheriff hanged them, the other outlaws would leave you.
3. If the other outlaws

Go on. Use the sentences under 5 a. Put the if-clause into the past tense, the main clause into the conditional.

6 An Outlaw's Dream
§ 62

a) *The three brothers are in prison. The youngest of the three is dreaming:*

The sheriff's soldiers open the door to fetch them. In the market-place they see their mother and their brides for the last time. Their mother looks at them and tears roll down her cheeks. Then the hangman arrives to take them to the gallows. It is the end. The sheriff gives the sign, and his eldest brother is the first. The second follows . . .

b) *The youngest brother awakes and thinks what would happen if his dream came true:*

If my dream came true, the sheriff's soldiers would open the door . . .

Go on. Use the sentences under 6 a) and put them into the conditional.

7 If I were . . . § 62

Connect the two sentences. Begin the first sentence with if.
Ex.: My friend is rich. He has bought a car.

If I were rich, I'd buy a car, too.

1. My father is ill. My mother has fetched the doctor. If I . . .
2. Jane's school report is very good. She has got a bicycle.
3. Jack is a cry-baby. People laugh at him.
4. My friend is strong. He often climbs trees.
5. Jim is the winner of the soap-box race. He is very proud.

Now do this exercise in this way:

Ex.: My friend is rich. He has bought a car.

If my brother were rich, he'd buy a car, too.

8 What would you do if . . . ?
§ 60

There are two teams. Team A answers the questions with odd numbers, team B those with even numbers. The team with the most correct answers has won.

What would you do if . . .

1. . . you had a dog?
2. . . you had an uncle in America?
3. . . you couldn't find your bus ticket?
4. . . you missed the bus?
5. . . you had a lot of money?
6. . . you saw a street accident?
7. . . you had stomach-ache?
8. . . you left your suitcase in the train?
9. . . a piece of dirt flew into your eye?
10. . . your dog took the butcher's meat?

9 The Game of "Ifs"

a) *I want to go to*

If I had some money, I'd buy a suitcase.
If I had a suitcase, I'd buy a suit.
If I had a suitcase and a suit, I'd buy
If I had a suitcase, a suit and a scarf,

b) *I want to be a farmer.*

If I had some money, I'd buy a hen.
If I had a hen, I'd buy a cat.
If I had a hen and a cat, I'd buy a . . .

10 The Youngest Brother Remembers his Dream
§ 61

Put exercise 6 into

What would have brothers? The yo

If my dream had come true, the sheriff
to fetch us. In the market-place

11 Test your pronunciation

Read these words

[dʒ] [tʃ]
badge — peach
change — reach
bridge — watch
village — church
porridge — butch
stranger — kitchen
danger — match

1. John's jacket is on the chair.
2. Mike has an orange after lunch.
3. Jack visited Aunt Jane in June and
4. Where's Jane? She's fetching peaches
5. The pictures of the German children

12 Translation

Eines Tages fing
Ritter (*knight*), S

Robin Hood sehr freundlich und gab
den Ritter zu zahlen.

Sir Richard: Ich würde zahlen, wenn i

Robin Hood: Wenn ich ein Ritter wäre,

Little Johns starke Hände

9 The Game of "Ifs"a) *I want to go to Scotland.*

If I had some money, I'd buy a suitcase.

If I had a suitcase, I'd buy a suit.

If I had a suitcase and a suit, I'd buy a scarf.

If I had a suitcase, a suit and a scarf, I'd buy a shirt. *Go on.*b) *I want to be a farmer.*

If I had some money, I'd buy a hen.

If I had a hen, I'd buy a cat.

If I had a hen and a cat, I'd buy a ... *Go on.***10 The Youngest Brother Remembers his Dream** § 61*Put exercise 6 into the past perfect and conditional perfect.*

What would have happened if Robin had not saved the brothers? The youngest brother remembers his dream.

If my dream had come true, the sheriff's soldiers would have opened the door to fetch us. In the market-place *Go on.***11 Test your pronunciation***Read these words and sentences:*

[dʒ]	[tʃ]	[tʃ]	[dʒ]
badge	— peach	chair	— Jack
change	— reach	chance	— Jane
bridge	— watch	change	— jacket
village	— church	cheek	— jump
porridge	— butcher	cherry	— German
stranger	— kitchen	cheer	— jam
danger	— match	chat	— jug

- John's jacket is on the chair.
- Mike has an orange after lunch.
- Jack visited Aunt Jane in June and July.
- Where's Jane? She's fetching peaches from the kitchen.
- The pictures of the German children are on that chair.

12 TranslationEines Tages fingen Robin Hoods Männer einen armen Ritter (*knight*), Sir Richard of the Lea. Im Lager war

Robin Hood sehr freundlich und gab ihm Brot und Früchte. Dann bat er den Ritter zu zahlen.

Sir Richard: Ich würde zahlen, wenn ich könnte, aber ich habe kein Geld.*Robin Hood:* Wenn ich ein Ritter wäre, würde ich zahlen. Oder möchtet Ihr Little Johns starke Hände fühlen?

Sir Richard: Würde ich nicht zahlen, wenn ich Geld hätte? Schau her.
(*Er zeigt seine leeren Taschen.*)

Robin Hood: Ich würde gerne wissen, warum Ihr so arm seid?

Sir Richard: Ich wäre reich, wenn ich nicht all mein Geld dem Sheriff von Nottingham gäbe.

Robin Hood: Was würde passieren, wenn Ihr nicht bezahltet?

Sir Richard: Der Sheriff würde meine Felder und mein Schloß nehmen. Er würde mich ins Gefängnis werfen. Vielleicht würden einige Freunde meiner Frau und meinen Kindern helfen.

Robin Hood: Was würdet Ihr sagen, wenn ich Euch das Geld gäbe?

Sir Richard: Ich wäre der glücklichste Mann in England.

Robin Hood: Wieviel Geld würdet Ihr benötigen?

Sir Richard: 100 Pfund würden genug sein.

Robin Hood: Wartet auf mich. (*Er steht auf und geht in den Wald. Nach einigen Minuten kehrt er zurück und gibt dem Ritter 100 Goldstücke.*) Hier ist das Geld. Was hättet Ihr getan, wenn ich Euch nicht geholfen hätte?

Sir Richard: Wenn Ihr mir nicht geholfen hättet, wäre ich nicht nach Nottingham zurückgekehrt. Ich wäre nach London gegangen, um ein neues Leben zu beginnen. Dann hätte ich meine Familie geholt. Ich werde niemals vergessen, was Ihr für mich getan habt. Wenn Ihr Hilfe braucht, ruft mich und ich werde kommen.

Let's prepare lesson 18

Robin Hood lived in Sherwood Forest. He was the leader of a band of bowmen.

The sheriff wanted to catch Robin Hood. He was a cruel man.

The three brothers were Robin Hood's men. The sheriff caught them.

The beggar sold his old coat to Robin. Robin saw him in the forest.

The town of Nottingham had a big market-place. It was near Sherwood Forest.

The gallows were very high. The sheriff's soldiers had built them.

Robin Hood, **who** was the leader of a band of bowmen, lived in Sherwood Forest.

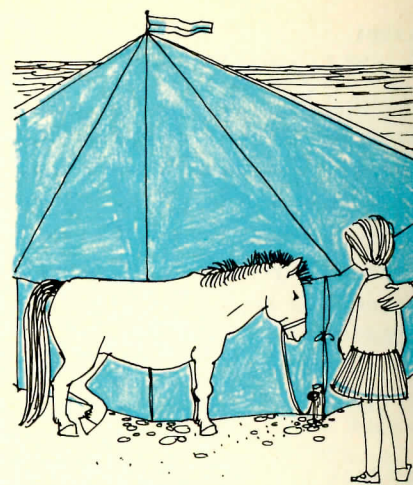
The sheriff, **who** was a cruel man, wanted to catch Robin Hood.

The three brothers, **whom** the sheriff caught, were Robin Hood's men.

The beggar, **whom** Robin saw in the forest, sold his coat to Robin.

The town of Nottingham, **which** was near Sherwood Forest, had a big market-place.

The gallows, **which** the sheriff's soldiers had built, were very high.



18 A. A Pony for Mary

The sun, which nobody had seen for a week, shined brightly over the pool's long, yellow beach thousands of people were bathing in the sea. Mr Butler, who had a pony, was riding one of his ponies. Mr Butler was a busy man. Nearly every child had a pony. Mr Butler had ten ponies, but only nine were working. He had a pony all alone. Its head was hanging from the top of the tree.

10 "What's the matter with Charlie?" asked Mary Wheatley, who recognized the pony the week before.

"He's ill. He caught a cold in the water every day. Tomorrow I'll sell him to the butcher."

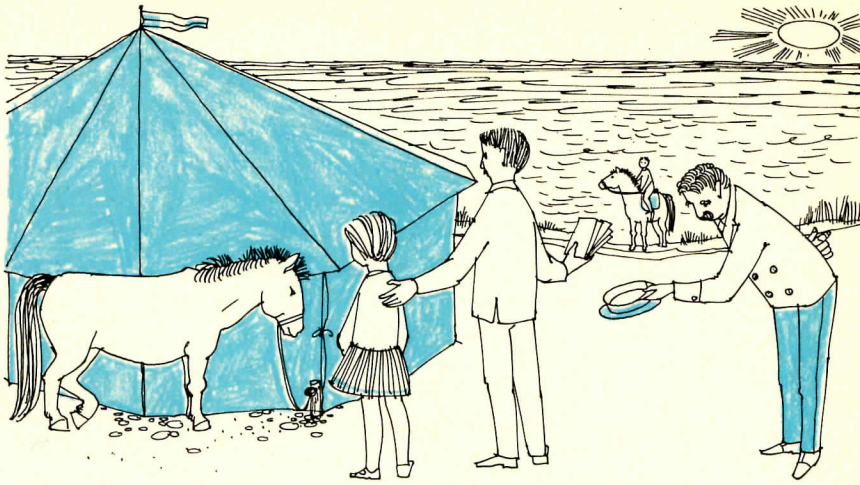
15 "Oh, how terrible! They'll make a mess of him!"

Mr Butler shrugged his shoulders.

"That's not my business."

Mary ran to tell the bad news about the pony to the band on the pier. The band was listening to the band on the pier. The band was listening to the band on the pier.

20 from his chair. "Where is that pony?" he asked.



18 A. A Pony for Mary

The sun, which nobody had seen for days, was shining again. On Black-pool's long, yellow beach thousands of people were lying on the sand or bathing in the sea. Mr Butler, who was the owner of ten ponies, had had a busy morning. Nearly every child on the beach wanted to have a ride on one of his ponies. Mr Butler was very pleased, for the coins filled his pockets, which had been empty for more than a week. Mr Butler had ten ponies, but only nine were working. Behind Mr Butler's tent stood a pony all alone. Its head was hanging low and it was breathing hard.

“What's the matter with Charlie, Mr Butler?” asked twelve-year-old Mary Wheatley, who recognized the little horse which she had ridden the week before.

“He's ill. He caught a cold in the rain last week and has got worse every day. Tomorrow I'll sell him to the slaughter-house.”

“Oh, how terrible! They'll make cats' meat of him there.”

Mr Butler shrugged his shoulders.

“That's not my business.”

Mary ran to tell the bad news about Charlie to her parents, who were listening to the band on the pier. Mr Wheatley, who was a vet, got up from his chair.

“Where is that pony?” he asked.

Mary led her father to Mr Butler's tent.

"May I have a look at that sick pony?" he asked Mr Butler.

"Certainly, sir," said Mr Butler. "There it is."

Mr Wheatley examined the little horse, whose eyes were closed.

5 "It's very ill," he said at last. "It won't live long without treatment."

"That's not my business," said Mr Butler again.

"Please, Daddy," said Mary, "let's buy Charlie."

"Well, Mr Butler," her father said, "what will you take for the pony?"

10 Mr Butler, to whom the question came as a big surprise, could not trust his ears. "Twenty pounds," he said.

"Twenty pounds for a sick pony? Nonsense! I'll give you three pounds."

"I bought it for thirty pounds last year," said Mr Butler. "Make it five pounds, sir, and it is yours."

15 Mr Wheatley opened his wallet and took out five pounds, which he handed to Mr Butler.

At their bungalow, which they had rented for the holidays, they took their old car out of the garage, which now became a stable for Charlie.

Mary and her father fetched some hay, on which the pony could lie. Mr Wheatley gave it some medicine and then covered the pony with

20 blankets.

For three days Mary and her father looked after the sick pony. Then, on the fourth morning, Mary got up early, went to the garage, opened the door, and looked in.

25 The pony was standing on its four legs. It was obviously enjoying the food which it had not touched the day before. It shook its head up and down and then pushed it into her hand. When Mr Wheatley came in, he had a good look at Charlie and said one word: "Saved."

<A Riddle>

As I was going to St. Ives,
I met a man with seven wives;
Each wife had seven sacks,
Each sack had seven cats,
Each cat had seven kits;
Kits, cats, sacks, and wives,
How many were going to St. Ives?

<Two Jokes>

1. *Teacher:* Name five things which begin with 'B'.
Jack: Butter and cheese, ice cream, bread, banana, blueberry.
2. *Jane:* Let's play school.
Jack: All right, but let's play with the alphabet.

Exercises

1 Answer the following questions

1. Why was Mr Butler's pony sick?
2. What did Mr Butler want to do with the pony?
3. What did Mr Butler's father do with the bad news?
4. What did Mr Butler examine when he had examined the pony?
5. What did Mr Butler offer to give for the pony?
6. Why did Mr Butler offer to give three pounds?
7. How much did the Wheatleys get Charlie for?
8. What did Mr Wheatley do with the money?
9. What treatment did Mr Wheatley give to Charlie?

2 Connect the sentences with 'which' § 63

- a) *Ex.:* Mary had a pony which she loved to ride.
The pony which she loved to ride was very fat.
Mary had a pony which she loved to ride.
The pony which she loved to ride was very fat.

1. A farmer brought some hay. It was very good.
2. Mr Wheatley opened his wallet. It was empty.
3. Many families spent their holidays in the country.
- b) *Ex.:* The sun had not shown its face. The sun, which had not shown its face, was very hot.
1. Mr Butler's pockets had been empty. They were full of coins.
2. The pony had carried Mary to school. The pony which had carried Mary to school was very fat.
3. The little horse was standing all alone. The little horse which was standing all alone was very fat.

3 Charlie's Tricks § 63

Connect the following sentences with 'could'.
Ex.: Charlie could not find a scarf. Charlie could not find a scarf.

1. Charlie could not find a scarf.
2. Charlie could not find a scarf.
3. Charlie could not find a scarf.
4. Charlie could not find a scarf.
5. Charlie could not find a scarf.

<Two Jokes>

1. *Teacher:* Name five things which contain milk.

Jack: Butter and cheese, ice-cream and two cows.

2. *Jane:* Let's play school.

Jack: All right, but let's play that I'm absent.

Exercises

1 Answer the following questions

1. Why was Mr Butler very pleased?
2. Why was one of Mr Butler's ponies not working?
3. What did Mr Butler want to do with Charlie?
4. Why did Mary run to her father with the bad news?
5. What did Mr Wheatley tell Mr Butler after he had examined the pony?
6. Why did Mary want to buy the pony?
7. For how much did the Wheatleys get Charlie?
8. Where did the Wheatleys find a new home for Charlie?
9. What treatment did the pony get?

2 Connect the sentences with 'which' § 63

- a) *Ex.:* Mary bought a book. It contained a lot about horses.
 Mary bought a book, **which** contained a lot about horses.

1. A farmer brought some hay. It was Charlie's favourite food.
2. Mr Wheatley opened his wallet. It was full of bank-notes.
3. Many families spent their holidays in bungalows. They were near the sea.

b) *Ex.:* The sun had not shown its face for days. It was shining again.
 The sun, **which** had not shown its face for days, was shining again.

1. Mr Butler's pockets had been empty for more than a week. Now they were full of coins.
2. The pony had carried Mary the week before. It was now ill.
3. The little horse was standing all alone. It was breathing hard.

3 Charlie's Tricks § 63

Connect the following sentences.

Ex.: Charlie could pick up a handkerchief, **which** Mary had put on the grass.

- | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 2. 3. Charlie could 4. 5. | } | <p>pick up a ball.
 find a scarf.
 jump over a chair.
 drink from a bottle.
 count the pencils.</p> | Mary had | { | <p>put it on the grass.
 it in her pocket.
 found it in the garage.
 put it on a table.
 them in her hand.</p> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

4 Definitions with 'which' § 63

Ex.: A dog is an animal **which** can bark.
A swimming-pool is a place **in which** we swim.
An orange is a fruit **which** we can eat.

What is an apple-tree, a cow, a bird, a butcher's shop, a children's home, a baker's shop, a bedroom, a school, a diving-board?

5 Definitions with 'who' § 63

Ex.: A vet is a man **who** looks after animals when they are ill.
A baker is a man **who** sells bread and cakes.

What is a doctor, a farmer, a beggar, a hairdresser, a schoolgirl, a cleaner, a grocer, a butcher?

6 Put in 'who' or 'which' and answer the questions § 63

What do you call ...
Ex.: the man ... catches thieves?
The man **who** catches thieves is a policeman.

1. the animals ... can fly?
2. a boy ... does not like to work?
3. the animal ... catches mice?
4. the man ... drives a taxi?
5. the boy ... wins a race?

7 Do you remember Robin Hood? § 63

Connect the sentences with whom.
Ex.: Robin Hood was the leader of a band of bowmen.
The Sheriff wanted to catch them.
Robin Hood was the leader of a band of bowmen, **whom** the Sheriff wanted to catch.

1. The Sheriff hated Robin Hood. He wanted to hang him.
2. Do you remember the old beggar? Robin saw him in the forest.
3. In the market-place Robin saw the brides. He recognized them at once.
4. Little John knew the three prisoners. Robin saved them from the gallows.

8 Mary's Guests § 63

Many friends visited Mary after the holidays.

Ex.: Shirley wanted to see Charlie. Mary had written to her from Blackpool.
Shirley, **to whom** Mary had written from Blackpool, wanted to see Charlie.

1. Jane was very interested to hear about Blackpool. Mary showed the photographs to her.
2. Susan also wanted to see the photographs. Mary had sent her a card from Blackpool.
3. Diana was late. Mary had said to her, 'Please come at 4 o'clock'.

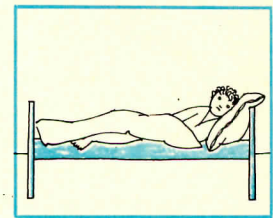
9 Connect the sentences with 'whose' § 63

Mr Wheatley, who ...
Ex.: He visits old ...
He visits old ...

- He visits ...
1. Mr Barton. His dog has a bone in its mouth. He does not give any milk.
 2. Grandma M. Her hens do not lay any eggs.
 3. Grandma M. Her poodle is very ill.
 4. Farmer Green's wife. Her hens do not lay any eggs.
 5. Mr Barton. His dog has a bone in its mouth.
 6. Miss Jackson. Her poodle mouse has no appetite.

10 Colin had a Cold — A Story in Pictures

Last winter Colin had a cold for a week. Look at the pictures. Begin like this: Colin had a cold.



11 Verbs and Nouns

a)	besuchen	to
	antworten	to
	sprechen	to
	regnen	to

Here are some more verbs. Write down the infinitive form of each verb.
to smile, to drink, to look, to help, to hurry, to dance, to laugh, to fall, to cheer, to race, to reply, to chat, to love, to promise

9 Connect the sentences with 'whose' § 63

Mr Wheatley, who is a vet, visits many people.

Ex.: He visits old Mrs Brown. Her cat is ill.

He visits old Mrs Brown, whose cat is ill.

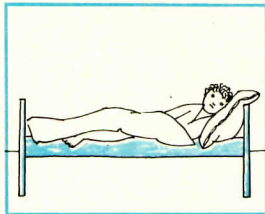
He visits . . .

1. Mr Barton. His dog has a bone in its stomach.
2. Farmer Green. His cows do not give any milk.
3. Grandma Miller. Her bird does not want to eat.
4. Farmer Green's wife. Her hens do not lay any eggs.
5. Tom. His pony is very ill.
6. Miss Jackson. Her poodle has a temperature.
7. Jane. Her white mouse has no appetite.

10 Colin had a Cold — A Story in Pictures

Last winter Colin caught a cold and had to stay in bed for a week. Look at the pictures and say what happened.

Begin like this: One day Colin felt ill . . .



11 Verbs and Nouns

a)

Verb

Noun

besuchen
antworten
sprechen
regnen

to visit	the visit
to answer	the answer
to talk	the talk
to rain	the rain

der Besuch
die Antwort
das Gespräch
der Regen

Here are some more verbs. Write down the nouns. What do they mean in German?
to smile, to drink, to look, to help, to call, to hate, to play, to notice, to rush,
to hurry, to dance, to laugh, to fall, to cry, to walk, to offer, to start, to
cheer, to race, to reply, to chat, to dream, to sleep, to whisper, to work,
to love, to promise

b)

Noun Verb

das Wasser
das Kleid
der Befehl
das Buch

the water	to water
the dress	to dress
the order	to order
the book	to book

Wasser geben, gießen
sich kleiden, sich anziehen
befehlen
buchen, vorbestellen

Here are some more nouns. Write down the verbs.

What do they mean in German?

the fish, the name, the hand, the number, the colour, the butter, the brush,
the surprise, the curl, the plant, the harvest, the change, the test, the cross,
the smile, the cheer, the queue, the arrest

12 Translation

- Nach einem Rennen, das Mary auf Charlie gewonnen hatte, kamen ihre Freunde, um sie zu besuchen.
- Mary, die noch sehr aufgeregt war, öffnete die Tür.
- „Bitte, zeige uns den Preis, den du gewonnen hast“, sagte Mike, dessen Pony den falschen Weg gegangen war.
- Mary, für die es der stolzeste Tag ihres Lebens war, holte ein Buch über Pferde.
- „Mikes Pferd war das schnellste auf der Rennbahn“, sagte sie, „aber Charlie war das klügste.“
- Das Pony, das niemand beobachtete, war an den Teetisch gekommen, den Marys Mutter in den Garten gestellt hatte (*to put*).
- Es nahm die Stücke Kuchen vom Teller, der bald leer war.
- Dann fand es sechs Flaschen Limonade, die unter dem Tisch waren.
- Charlie war immer ein guter Schüler gewesen. Nun konnte er die Tricks zeigen, die er gelernt hatte.
- Er öffnete die Flaschen, und bald waren sie leer.
- Dann ging er ruhig zurück zu dem Baum, unter dem er immer stand.
- Frau Wheatley, die in den Garten gegangen war, kam ins Haus zurück.
- „Ich sehe, daß ihr sehr hungrig wart“, sagte sie. „Die Kuchen sind alle weg.“
- Mary, die wußte, wer der Dieb war, sagte nichts.

Let's prepare lesson 19

This week Charlie **can** leave his stable.

Last week he **could not** leave his stable.

Next week he **will be able** to jump again.

This week Charlie **must** take a spoonful of medicine every day.

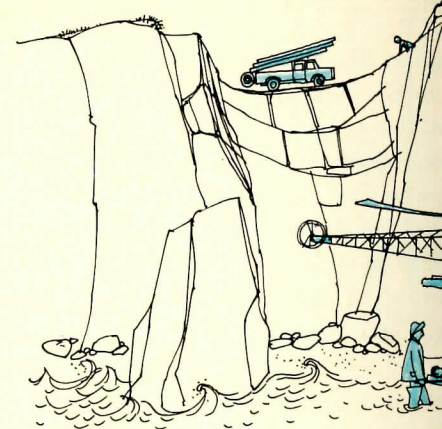
Last week he **had to** take two spoonfuls of medicine every day.

Next week he **will have to** take half a spoonful of medicine every day.

May Mary's friends visit Charlie this week?

Last week they were **not allowed** to visit him.

Next week they **will be allowed** to ride on him.



19 A. A Race against the Tide

Three boys were walking on top of the cliff. Eighty feet below, the sea was thundering.

“Let’s go down here,” suggested Alan.

5 “Jolly good idea, Alan,” said Ian. “I’ll go in a hurry, because the tide is coming in. You must do it, for the beach will be under water.”

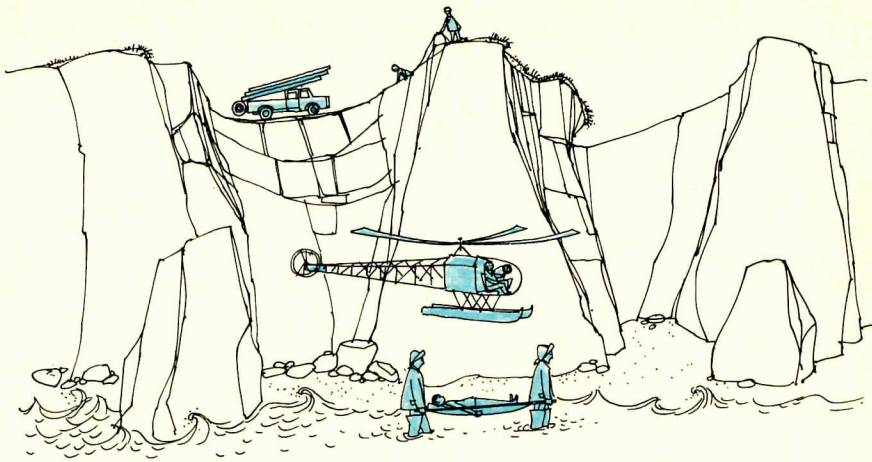
“I don’t want to climb down the cliff,” said Ian. “It’s the Hall, the youngest of the three.”

10 “You needn’t come with us if you don’t want to. Are you coming too, Ian?”

“You needn’t ask, Alan. Of course I’m coming.”

Alan climbed over the edge of the cliff. Suddenly they saw him slip and fall. There was no answer. Alan was lying on the beach, eighty feet below.

15 Ian ran as quickly as he could to the telephone. He phoned the police. When the police came to the top, they saw at once that they were in a dangerous position. The cliff was too steep. They called the firemen. The firemen wanted to rescue Alan.



19 A. A Race against the Tide

Three boys were walking on top of the cliff. The wind was blowing. Eighty feet below, the sea was thundering against the narrow beach.

"Let's go down here," suggested Alan Wills.

5 "Jolly good idea, Alan," said Ian Wheatley. "But we shall have to hurry, because the tide is coming in. At high tide we shan't be able to do it, for the beach will be under water."

"I don't want to climb down the cliff," said thirteen-year-old Leslie Hall, the youngest of the three. "It's dangerous."

10 "You needn't come with us if you don't want to. I'll climb down first. Are you coming too, Ian?"

"You needn't ask, Alan. Of course I am."

Alan climbed over the edge of the cliff while his friends were watching him. Suddenly they saw him slip and fall. "Alan!" shouted Ian. But
15 there was no answer. Alan was lying motionless on the beach eighty feet below.

Ian ran as quickly as he could to the nearest village. There he telephoned the police. When the police and ambulance men came to the cliff top, they saw at once that they would not be able to carry Alan up the
20 cliff because it was too steep. They sent out an SOS to the fire-brigade. The firemen wanted to rescue Alan with a ladder, but it was not long

enough. Meanwhile the tide had come in. They had to hurry, for the waves had nearly reached the boy.

Out went another SOS for a helicopter. But when it came there was a new difficulty. Alan was lying close to the cliff. The beach had become so narrow that the helicopter was not able to land. It came so near that it almost crashed against the cliff, because of the strong wind. The pilot had to give up. At last two firemen, who had climbed down the cliff to the beach, carried the boy into the sea. The helicopter returned. It flew only a foot above the water and the firemen were able to lift Alan into it.

The helicopter pilot flew with Alan to the nearest hospital. His head was injured and he had a broken leg. Three weeks later he was allowed to go home again.

After the rescue the helicopter pilot said, "I'm glad that we were able to save the young dare-devil. It was rather dangerous because we had to fly so low."

<B. Conversation: Greetings and Good Wishes>

1. *Mike:* Hallo, Tom. How are you?

Tom: I'm fine, thanks. May I introduce my music teacher, Mr Jackson?

Mike: How do you do?

Mr Jackson: How do you do? (*Mike and Mr Jackson shake hands.*)

Later they say good-bye.

Tom: Bye-bye, Mike. Remember me to your brother.

Mike: Cheerio, Tom. Good-bye, Mr Jackson.

2. *Mr White:* Good afternoon, Mr Brown. Where are you going?

Mr Brown: I'm on my way to meet my wife in town. She's doing the Christmas shopping.

Mr White: Well, I mustn't keep you. Good-bye — and a Merry Christmas!

Mr Brown: The same to you — and a Happy New Year!

Some other greetings and wishes:

Happy birthday. Many happy returns of the day!

Good luck! — Have a good time!

Good night — sleep well. Pleasant dreams.



Exercises

1 At the Scout Meeting

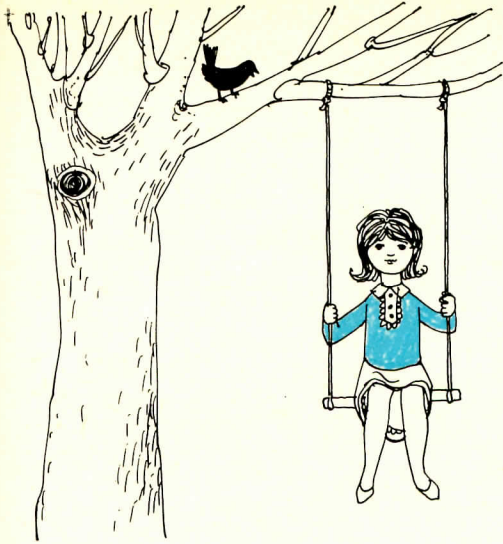
When Ian and his friends asked them down Ian's and I

1. Whose idea was it to go down the cliff?
3. What happened after Alan had climbed down?
5. How did the police and the fire-brigade find the pilot in the helicopter rescue Alan?
8. Why was it difficult to rescue Alan?

2 must - to have to § 64

Alan is in hospital. His mother gives his orders.

- | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------|
| a) The boy must | } | stay in bed. |
| | | sleep a lot. |
| b) Mrs Wills tells Mr Wills what the doctor says. | } | take his medicine. |
| | | be quiet. |
| | | put an ice bag on his leg. |
| c) Mrs Wills tells Mr Wills what the doctor says. | } | lie in a dark room. |
| | | |
- “Alan will have to stay in bed.”
“He will have to sleep a lot.” “He



〈The Blackbird〉

In the far corner
close by the swings,
every morning
a blackbird sings.

His bill's so yellow,
his coat's so black,
that he makes a fellow
whistle back.

Ann, my daughter,
thinks that he
sings for us two
especially. Humbert Wolfe

Exercises

1 At the Scout Meeting

When Ian and Leslie came to the scout meeting, their friends asked them questions about their adventure. Write down Ian's and Leslie's answers.

1. Whose idea was it to go down the cliff? 2. Did you all want to go down?
3. What happened after Alan had climbed over the edge of the cliff? 4. What did you do when you saw that Alan was lying motionless on the beach?
5. How did the police and the fire-brigade try to rescue Alan? 6. How did the pilot in the helicopter rescue Alan? 7. Was Alan seriously injured?
8. Why was it difficult to rescue Alan?

2 must - to have to § 64

Alan is in hospital. The doctor has examined him and gives his orders.

- a) The boy must
- stay in bed.
 - sleep a lot.
 - take his medicine three times a day.
 - be quiet.
 - put an ice bag on his head.
 - lie in a dark room.

- b) *Mrs Wills tells Mr Wills what the doctor had said:*
 "Alan will have to stay in bed."
 "He will have to sleep a lot." "He ..."

c) Alan writes a card to his schoolfriends. He is still in hospital, but may get up for a few hours each day.

Put the sentences under a) into the past tense.

Ex.: I had to stay in bed. I ...

d) Mrs Wheatley asks Mrs Wills about Alan.

Put the questions into the past tense and use the sentences under a).

Ex.: "Did the boy have to stay in bed?" Go on.

3 A Sentence Switchboard § 64

You	must	write a letter to Alan's doctor.
Ian		go to London.
Alan's friends		visit Alan in hospital.
We		send Mrs Wills some flowers.

Put the sentences of the switchboard into the past tense and into the future. Form also negative statements and questions in these tenses.

4 can — could to be able § 64

Alan is much better now.

Form sentences with the words in brackets.

Ex.: (to get up — to play football)

A week ago Alan couldn't (wasn't able to) get up, but today he can.

In a few weeks he will be able to play football again.

Use the same pattern for the following word groups:

- (to read — to go to school)
- (to stand — to climb a tree)
- (to walk — to run a mile)
- (to leave his bed — to swim)
- (to hold a pencil — to play tennis)

5 A Sentence Switchboard § 64

You	can	understand English.
Grandfather		write a German letter.
They		find a quiet place on the beach.
My friend		buy stamps in the village shop.

Put the sentences of the switchboard into the past tense.

Ex.: You were able to understand English.

You will be able to understand English.

Form also questions and negative questions.

Ex.: Were you able to understand English?

Weren't you able to understand English?

Will you be able to understand English?

Won't you be able to understand English?

6 may § 64

Alan, who has now recovered, has returned home. He asks the doctor:

Ex.: May I go home, doctor? Yes, you may.

No, you may not.

You will be able to go home.

Use the same pattern for the answers to the questions.

1. May I read a book, doctor? Yes, you may.

No, you may not.

2. May I get up, doctor? Yes, you may.

No, you may not.

3. May I ask another question, doctor?

7 A Sentence Switchboard § 64

May	I the boys Jack we	climb play go to visit
-----	-----------------------------	---------------------------------

Put the questions of the switchboard in the past tense.

8 must not need not § 64

a) Alan makes a bed. He need not do in hospital.

You mustn't

leave your bed when you are in hospital.

read in the evening.

drink cold water.

make a noise in the night.

wake the others who are in hospital.

Put the sentences of the switchboard into the past tense and into the future.

Ex.: You were able to understand English.

You will be able to understand English.

Form also questions and negative questions in these tenses.

Ex.: Were you able to understand English?

Weren't you able to understand English?

Will you be able to understand English?

Won't you be able to understand English?

6 may § 64

Alan, who has now been a week in hospital, wants to go home. He asks the doctor if he may.

Ex.: May I go home, doctor? Yes, you may if your leg is all right.

No, you may not if it isn't all right.

You will be allowed to go home next week.

Use the same pattern for the answers to the following questions.

1. May I read a book, doctor? Yes, you ... if you can see well.
No, you You next week.
2. May I get up, doctor? Yes, you ... if you can walk.
No, you ... You ... next week.
3. May I ask another question, doctor? Yes, you ... if it is the last.
No, you ...

7 A Sentence Switchboard § 64

May	I	climb down the cliff?
	the boys	play tennis with some friends?
	Jack	go to the pony race?
	we	visit Alan in hospital?

Put the questions of the switchboard in the past tense and the future.

8 must not need not § 64

a) Alan makes a list of things which you must not or need not do in hospital.

- You mustn't
- leave your bed when you have a broken leg.
 - read in the evening.
 - drink cold water.
 - make a noise in the night.
 - wake the others when they are sleeping.

You needn't

- get up early in the morning.
- learn your lessons for school.
- clean your shoes.
- go to the hairdresser's.
- worry about the French exercises.
- be afraid of the doctor.

b) *Alan is back at school. He tells his friends about the hospital:*

I was not allowed to leave my bed. I was ... *Go on.*
 I didn't have to get up early in the morning. I ... *Go on.*

c) *He tells his friends what will happen if they are in hospital:*

You will not be allowed to leave your bed. You will ... *Go on.*
 You won't have to get up early in the morning. You ... *Go on.*

9 to want to § 64

Alan's friends come and visit him when he is at home again. All are very friendly and offer him a lot of things.

a) Mary offers him a ride on Charlie, Jane a ride on her bike, Colin his camera for a week, Aunt Margery a book about scouts, Jack a holiday on his grandfather's farm, David the part of a soldier in "Ship, ahoy", Bill Bolt his car for the next soap-box race, Diana her new tennis racket for the weekend.

Form sentences with 'to want to'.

Ex.: Mary: "Do you want to have a ride on Charlie?"

Jane: "Do you ... *Go on.*

Colin: ...

b) *Alan was still very tired.* He did not want to have a ride on Charlie.

He didn't want to have a ride on Jane's bike.

He didn't *Go on.*

10 Answer these questions § 64

Give short positive and negative answers to the following questions.

Ex.: Can you see that ship on the sea? Yes, I can. — No, I can't.

May I go to the swimming-pool? Yes, you may. — No, you may not.

Must I go shopping? Yes, you must. — No, you needn't.

1. Can you carry that suitcase for me? 2. May I go to the cinema this afternoon? 3. Must I go to bed at nine o'clock? 4. Can David drive a car? 5. May Jane visit her cousin? 6. Must Alan go to hospital again? 7. Can the boys climb up that tree? 8. May the boys play on the beach? 9. Must the Bartons catch the train?

11 Test your spelling and pronunciation

a) Pronunciation: [əu]

b) Pronunciation: [au]

c) *Read these words:*

coat, mouse, house, window, open, no, how, down, shout, toast, wardrobe, grow, bone, grocer, count, town, boat, hope, outlaw, loud, gallows, crowd, below, clothes, bone.

d) *Write these words:*

[nəu], [nau], [jəu], ['fəuldə], [kəuld], ['grəusə], [haus], [grəu], [bəun].

12 Translation

Mike Brown, Pilot
 Frau von der Rettung

1. Es war fünf Uhr nachmittags. Wir mußten wir aufhören. 2. Ein SOS war eine Klippe heruntergefallen und die Feuerwehrleute fragten, wie weit es ist? fragte Tom [es] ihm. 4. Nach 25 Meilen erreichten wir eine große Menge Leute sehen, die auf der Klippe suchten. 6. Er lag reglos auf dem Wasser und wir nicht landen konnten. 7. „Wir dürfen nicht aufgeben“, sagte Tom. 8. „Du brauchst nicht zu danken“, wortete ich. „Wir alle wollen den Jungen in die Hubschrauber zu zwei Feuerwehrleute den Jungen in die Hubschrauber uns warten. 10. Ich flog nur einen Hubschrauber konnten den Jungen in den Hubschrauber zum nächsten Krankenhaus, so schnell wir konnten nicht in die Schule gehen dürfen“, sagte er, „aber dann wird er wieder Fußball spielen.“

11 Test your spelling and pronunciation

a) Pronunciation: [əu] Spelling:
nose road show
go soap know
so boat low
Try to find more words

b) Pronunciation: [au] Spelling:
ground cow
found brown
sound down
... ...
Try to find more words

c) *Read these words:*

coat, mouse, house, window, open, no, now, mouth, home, yellow, go, nose, how, down, shout, toast, wardrobe, envelope, notice, throw, flower, snow, grow, bone, grocer, count, town, boat, over, about, close, out, pound, Scout, hope, outlaw, loud, gallows, crowd, sound, bowman, own, blow, owner, low, below, clothes, bone.

d) *Write these words:*

[nəu], [nau], [fəu], [ˈfəuldə], [kəuld], [kaunt], [təust], [mauθ], [kləʊðz], [ˈgrəʊsə], [haus], [grəu], [bəun].

12 Translation

Mike Brown, Pilot des Hubschraubers, erzählt seiner Frau von der Rettung eines Jungen.

1. Es war fünf Uhr nachmittags. Wir spielten [gerade] Fußball. Plötzlich mußten wir aufhören. 2. Ein SOS war eingetroffen. Ein Junge war von einer Klippe heruntergefallen und die Feuerwehr konnte ihn nicht retten. 3. „Darf ich fragen, wie weit es ist?“ fragte Tom Miller, der mit mir flog. Ich sagte [es] ihm. 4. Nach 25 Meilen erreichten wir den Strand. Wir konnten eine Menge Leute sehen, die auf der Klippe standen. 5. Wir mußten nicht weit nach dem Jungen suchen. 6. Er lag reglos auf dem Strand, der so eng war, daß wir nicht landen konnten. 7. „Wir dürfen den Versuch (*the attempt*) nicht aufgeben“, sagte Tom. 8. „Du brauchst dir keine Sorgen zu machen“, antwortete ich. „Wir alle wollen den Jungen retten.“ 9. Schließlich trugen zwei Feuerwehrleute den Jungen in die See. Sie mußten nicht lange auf uns warten. 10. Ich flog nur einen Fuß über dem Wasser. Die Männer konnten den Jungen in den Hubschrauber heben. 11. Wir flogen ihn ins nächste Krankenhaus, so schnell wir konnten. 12. „Er wird sechs Wochen nicht in die Schule gehen dürfen“, sagte der Arzt, der ihn untersuchte, „aber dann wird er wieder Fußball spielen können.“

20 A. A Cycling Tour (Diana's Diary)



Friday, 3rd August. The last day before our cycling tour. I bought a new pair of shorts, a new bathing-costume — and a pair of sun-glasses. “Optimist,” said my brother Colin. Last year it rained nearly every day, but perhaps we shall be lucky this year.



Saturday, 4th August. Alan and Barbara called for us at nine o'clock. Colin wasn't ready, of course. He was still packing his clothes, and he could not find his swimming-trunks. He is always late. But at last we started. We cycled nearly fifty miles to our first youth hostel, and we were rather tired when we arrived. The hostel is not very far from the sea, and we went swimming in the evening.



Sunday, 5th August. We went to church in the morning. After lunch we sun-bathed on the beach. In the evening Barbara and I prepared our own supper at the hostel — fried tomatoes, sausages and potatoes. Colin and Alan washed up the knives and forks and plates afterwards. Colin broke a plate. Typical!



Monday, 6th August. Today we cycled 30 miles to the next hostel. It began to rain soon after we had started. Then Colin had a puncture. We were on a country road, and there were no houses or trees. A little further along the road there was a farm. We went to the farmhouse and Alan asked the farmer if we could wait in his barn until the rain stopped.

In the barn the two boys mended the puncture while Barbara and I made some sandwiches. Two geese came in and tried to eat the sandwiches, but Alan chased them out.

Tuesday, 7th August. There is a the hostel. We went out in a boat and caught six fish, and Colin caught one. There was a group of German boys and we spent the evening with them. They sang us some German songs, and we sang “This Old Man”.

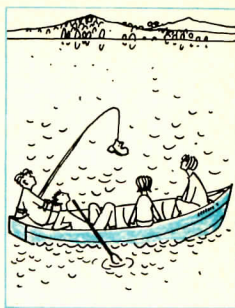
Wednesday, 8th August. We went to the hostel today. On the way we cycled through a village where there was a fair. We went roundabout and the ghost train, and Alan won a big doll for five pence. He held it everywhere in his arms like a baby, and Barbara held him all the time. At last he gave it to a girl who was taking her two children through the village.

When we came out, we found that Alan had stolen Colin's bicycle pump. We looked everywhere but could not find it. Something always happens to him.

Thursday, 9th August. Our last day we cycled up a hill and had a picnic on the top. We saw a flock of sheep with their shepherd. He had a dog called Lassie. We played with Lassie and took some photographs — of each other, of the shepherd and one of Colin with a sheep. “Do you think people will know which is the sheep?” asked Alan. Alan held him all the way down the hill, but he could not catch him.

Friday, 10th August. Home again. Mother said, “How brown you all are!” Alan and Barbara had tea with us before they went home. We told Mother all about our adventure. Even one — even Colin — said that it was a wonderful tour. We are planning another cycling tour for next year.

Tuesday, 7th August. There is a big lake near the hostel. We went out in a boat to fish. We caught six fish, and Colin caught an old boot. There was a group of German boys at the hostel, and we spent the evening with them. They taught us some German songs, and we taught them to sing "This Old Man".



Wednesday, 8th August. We went on to our next hostel today. On the way we cycled through a village where there was a fair. We went on the roundabout and the ghost train, and then Colin won a big doll for five pence. He had to carry it everywhere in his arms like a baby, and we teased him all the time. At last he gave it to a woman who was taking her two children through the fair.



When we came out, we found that someone had stolen Colin's bicycle pump. We looked for it everywhere but could not find it. Poor Colin! Something always happens to him.

Thursday, 9th August. Our last day! We climbed a hill and had a picnic on the top. We saw a flock of sheep with their shepherd. He had a very clever dog called Lassie. We played with Lassie and took some photographs — of each other, of Lassie, of the shepherd and one of Colin with a sheep. "Do you think people will know which is Colin and which is the sheep?" asked Alan. Colin chased him all the way down the hill, but could not catch him.



Friday, 10th August. Home again at last. Mother said, "How brown you all are!" Alan and Barbara had tea with us before they went home, and we told Mother all about our adventures. Everyone — even Colin — said that it had been a wonderful tour. We are planning another cycling tour for next year.



B. Conversation: Alan's Watch is Wrong

Alan: What's the time, Barbara?

Barbara: It's half past four.

Alan: Are you sure? It's only half past three by my watch.

Barbara: That can't be right. I set my watch by the radio at nine o'clock last night.

Alan: Well, my watch must be an hour slow. Or perhaps it has stopped again.

Barbara: Don't shake it like that. Perhaps you forgot to wind it up.

Alan: No, I didn't. I wind it up every night before I go to bed. Are you sure that your watch isn't fast?

Barbara: Quite sure. My watch never gains. But listen, did you remember to put your watch on to Summer Time?

Alan: Summer Time? Oh, of course! I quite forgot. How silly of me. I must put it on an hour. There — now it's right.

〈Song: This Old Man〉

This old man, he played one, he played nick nack
on my drum; nick nack paddy whack, give a dog
a bone, this old man came roll - ing home.

2. This old man, he played two,
he played nick nack on my shoe;
nick nack paddy whack,
give a dog a bone,
this old man came rolling home.

3. This old man, he played three,
he played nick nack on my knee;
nick nack paddy whack,
give a dog a bone,
this old man came rolling home.

4. four — door
5. five — hive
6. six — sticks
7. seven — down in Devon

8. eight — gate
9. nine — line
10. ten — hen

Exercises

1 All About the Cycling Tour

Answer the following questions.

- Why did Colin call his sister an idiot? 2. Why did she start late for their cycling tour? 3. Where did they go on Sunday morning on that day? 4. What happened to Colin and the others? 5. What did the four friends sing at the hostel? 6. What happened to Colin at the fair? 7. What happened to Alan? 8. What did Colin chase Alan down the hill? 9. What happened to Alan when he came home?

2 Poor Colin §§ 65, 66

Put in the missing words.

- As the sun was shining in their eyes, they went to a lake. 2. They came to a lake and Alan wanted to swim and jumped into the water. 3. Colin didn't want to take his shirt and ... off. 4. He went to the water with all his ... on. 5. As all his clothes were in which he had slept during the night, he couldn't wear his tennis 6. A strong wind began to blow. The sun disappeared and went back to the hostel, while the rain fell dry again.

3 The Farmers and their Wives §§ 65, 66

Put the words in the correct order.

- The four friends (orange, tomato, apple, plum, fish, pig, ox, egg, potato, cherry, peach, strawberry) went to a small town. They bought some fruit and vegetables. They ate them and they were very happy. They bought some more fruit and vegetables. They ate them and they were very happy. They bought some more fruit and vegetables. They ate them and they were very happy.
- The four friends listened to the farmer's story. They were very interested. They bought some more fruit and vegetables. They ate them and they were very happy. They bought some more fruit and vegetables. They ate them and they were very happy. They bought some more fruit and vegetables. They ate them and they were very happy.

Exercises

1 All About the Cycling Tour

Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Colin call his sister an optimist?
2. Why did the four children start late for their cycling tour?
3. How did they spend their first evening?
4. Where did they go on Sunday morning?
5. What did they have for supper on that day?
6. What happened to Colin's bicycle on Monday?
7. With whom did the four friends sing at the hostel on Tuesday?
8. How did they spend their time at the fair?
9. What happened to Colin on that day?
10. Why did Colin chase Alan down the hill?
11. What happened when the four friends came home?

2 Poor Colin §§ 65, 66

Put in the missing words.

1. As the sun was shining in their eyes, the four children were wearing ...
2. They came to a lake and Alan wanted to go swimming. So he put on his ... and jumped into the water.
3. Colin did not want to go swimming, so he did not take his shirt and ... off.
4. He went out in a boat to fish and fell into the water with all his ... on.
5. As all his clothes were wet, he had to put on his ... in which he had slept during the night.
6. He looked very funny in his ...
7. He couldn't wear his tennis ..., because he had forgotten to pack them.
8. A strong wind began to blow. The two girls put their ... round their heads and went back to the hostel, while the two boys waited until Colin's ... were dry again.

3 The Farmers and their Wives §§ 65, 66

Put the words in brackets into the plural.

- a) The four (child) arrived at the market-place of a small town. The farmers and their (wife) were selling: (orange, tomato, apple, plum, fish, goose, hen, loaf of bread, fruit, sheep, pig, ox, egg, potato, cherry, peach, sausage).
- b) The four friends listened to the shouts which filled the market-place:
 1. My (tomato) are bigger than (child's) heads.
 2. My (fruit) is ripe, riper, ripest.
 3. Eat my apples and your (tooth) will be whiter than snow.
 4. Buy my (goose). They are the best.
 5. Try these (loaf). My bread is the best in the village.
 6. Buy these (potato), (gentleman). Your (wife) will be pleased if you do.
 7. (Woman) know best. They buy my (fish).

4 In the Market-place
§§ 65, 66

a) *Connect the following sentences by a relative pronoun.*

Ex.: A pedlar sells his goods. They are very cheap.
A pedlar sells his goods, **which** are very cheap.

1. He shows Alan some (knife). They are not expensive.
2. He tries to sell some beautiful (scarf) to the two girls. They have not enough money to buy them.
3. He shows them two white (mouse). They are playing with a little ball.
4. Alan wants to buy the (mouse). He likes them.
5. Colin buys a toothbrush. He needs it to clean his (tooth).
6. Alan buys some (photo) of the market-place. He finds it interesting.
7. Barbara wants two (pair of scissors). She needs them to cut Diana's hair.

b) *Ask questions with 'any'. Use the following words in the plural if possible and give positive and negative answers.*

(peach, cherry, butter, egg, plum, orange, sausage, milk, fruit, fish, cake, apple, tomato, meat, jam, chocolate).

Ex.: Have you any peaches? Yes, I have some.
 No, I haven't any.
Have you any cherries? Yes, I ...
 No, ... Go on.

5 At the Youth Hostel
§§ 65, 66

Put the words in brackets into the plural if possible.

a) *The Notice Board.*

1. Be prepared. (Thief) like bicycle pumps and other things. There are black (sheep) in every flock.
2. Use your (knife) to cut your food, not to cut your (name) in the (wall) and (table).
3. Write to your parents and friends. You may get (card) and (stamp) at the desk for a few pence.
4. Be as hungry as (wolf), but don't eat like (pig).
5. Look before you leave. Don't forget your (sock, shoe, boot, pyjamas, shorts, glasses, shirt, glove, camera, money).
6. Ride carefully. So many young people lose their (life) on the (road).

b) *A Guessing Game.*

In the evening the four friends are playing a guessing game with some German boys, who are also staying at the hostel.

You can also form two teams. One begins with the odd numbers, the other with the even numbers. Those who have guessed most answers have won.

WHO or WHAT are they?

1. (Woman) jump on chairs and tables, when they are in a room. They are small, grey, and have long tails.
2. They look like dogs and live in forests. People can see them at the zoo.
3. Most are white and some are black. The shepherd looks after them.
4. They catch (thief) and help old (people) and small (child) to cross the road.

5. They are white and have two legs and a lot of noise.
6. They make no noise and live in trees.
7. They look like cows but are not cows.
8. You put them on when you play.
9. Some people wear them when they are cold.
10. You need them if your eyes are hurt.
11. Girls put them round their heads.
12. You eat them for dinner. In England you mustn't.
13. You wear shoes and socks on the feet.
14. If you want to have them white wash them.

6 A Sentence Switchboard
§§ 65, 66

Colin's pyjamas	(to be)
Alan's trousers	
Father's jacket	
Mother's scales	
Diana's silk dress	

7 Put in 'it', 'they' or 'them'
§§ 65, 66

1. Colin is wearing his pyjamas.
2. The clock strikes every seven days.
3. Alan is looking very funny.

He looks very funny in ... 4. Barbara is a present for her mother.

5. The farmer has some potatoes and tomatoes on ...
6. Have you any shoes in our town?
7. Alan is looking even better than he cannot find ...

8 The Same Sound — Different Spelling

Ex.: [nəʊz] = nose
[wʌn] = one

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. [baɪ] = ... | 7. [pi:s] = ... |
| 2. [ðɛə] = ... | 8. [feə] = ... |
| 3. [fɔ:] = ... | 9. [si:] = ... |
| 4. ['aʊə] = ... | 10. [aɪ] = ... |
| 5. [sʌn] = ... | 11. [wɛə] = ... |
| 6. [raɪt] = ... | 12. [tu:] = ... |

5. They are white and have two legs. They swim on the water and make a lot of noise.
6. They make no noise and live in the water.
7. They look like cows but are not cows. They work in the fields.
8. You put them on when you play tennis or football.
9. Some people wear them when they sleep.
10. You need them if your eyes are bad.
11. Girls put them round their heads when the wind is blowing.
12. You eat them for dinner. In England you may cut them with (knife), in Germany you mustn't.
13. You wear shoes and socks on them.
14. If you want to have them white you must clean them every day.

6 A Sentence
Switchboard §§ 65, 66

Colin's pyjamas	(to be)	not new.
Alan's trousers		on a chair.
Father's jacket		very nice.
Mother's scales		a birthday present.
Diana's silk dress		in the suitcase.

7 Put in 'it', 'they' or 'them' §§ 65, 66

1. Colin is wearing his new shorts. He likes ... very much. 2. The children are on a cycling tour. ... lasts seven days. 3. Alan is wearing his father's large trousers. He looks very funny in ... 4. Barbara has bought sun-glasses. ... are a present for her mother. 5. The farmer's wife has big scales. She puts potatoes and tomatoes on ... 6. Have you seen the roundabout? ... is at the fair in our town. 7. Alan is looking everywhere for his swimming-trunks. He cannot find ...

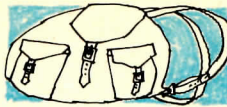
8 The Same Sound — Different Spelling

Ex.: [nəuz] = nose, knows
[wʌn] = one, won

- | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. [baɪ] = ... | 7. [pi:s] = ... | 13. [nəʊ] = ... |
| 2. [ðeə] = ... | 8. [feə] = ... | 14. [hiə] = ... |
| 3. [fɔ:] = ... | 9. [si:] = ... | 15. [nju:] = ... |
| 4. ['aʊə] = ... | 10. [aɪ] = ... | 16. [wei] = ... |
| 5. [sʌn] = ... | 11. [weə] = ... | |
| 6. [raɪt] = ... | 12. [tu:] = ... | |

9 The Bartons' Sunday Picnic — A Story in Pictures

rucksack =



Look at the pictures and say how the Bartons spent their Sunday. Begin like this: "One Sunday last summer Mr and Mrs Barton, their daughter Jane and ..."



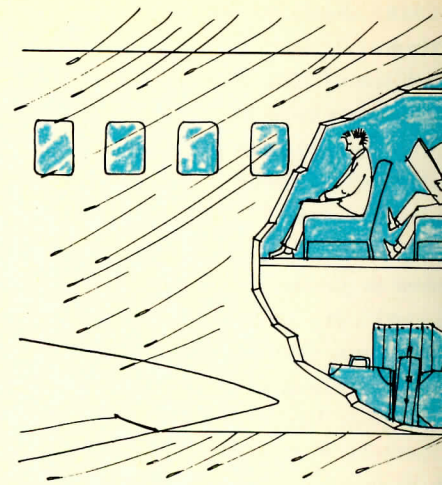
10 Translation

1. Es ist der letzte Tag der Radtour. 2. Die vier Kinder picknicken auf einem Hügel, wo sie eine Herde Schafe sehen. 3. Sie essen Brot, Tomaten und Obst. 4. Nach dem Picknick will Alan im See schwimmen gehen. Er sucht seine Badehose, aber er kann sie nicht finden. 5. Diana sucht ihre Sonnenbrille und Barbara ihr Halstuch. 6. Nur Colin hat alle seine Sachen in seinem Koffer: Hose, Schlafanzug, Brille, Badehose. 7. „Es waren Diebe in der Jugendherberge“, sagt Alan. „Wir müssen zurückgehen.“ 8. „Ich habe eine bessere Idee“, sagt Colin. „Ich werde Robin Hood spielen und euch helfen, weil ihr arme Leute seid.“ 9. Er nimmt seinen Koffer und geht in den Wald. 10. „Vielleicht will er seine Kleider verkaufen“, sagt Diana. „Seine Hose ist neu.“ 11. Einige Minuten später kommt Colin zurück. Er hat Dianas Sonnenbrille, Alans Schwimmhose und Barbaras Halstuch. 12. „Was sagte das Schwarze Brett in der Jugendherberge? Schaut euch um, bevor ihr geht.“ Das ist [es], was ich getan habe (*Präteritum*). Ich habe eure Sachen gefunden (*Präteritum*).“

Let's prepare lesson 21

They **tease** Colin all the time.
They **take** a photograph of him.
Somebody **stole** his bicycle-pump.
They **put** a hair-brush in his bed.

Colin is **teased** all the time.
A photograph is **taken** of him.
His bicycle-pump was **stolen**.
A hair-brush was **put** in his bed.



21 A. The Stowaway

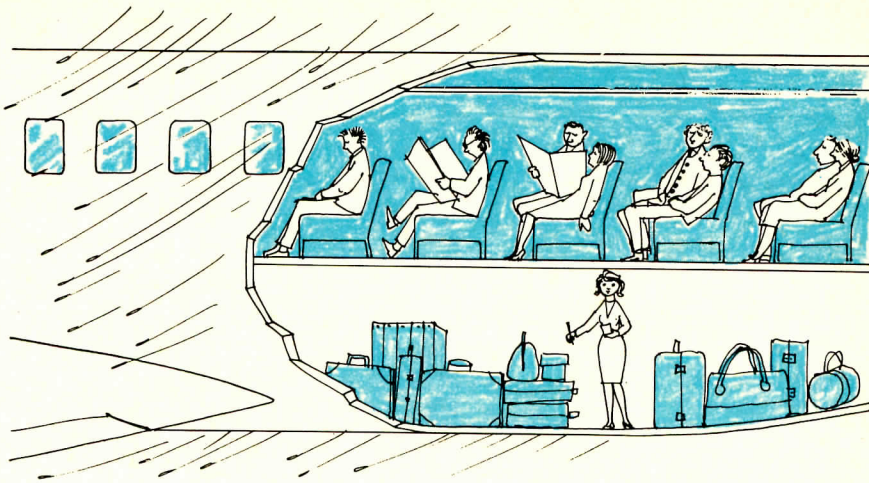
At London Airport the plane for London was raining heavily, and a gale warning was issued for the coast of England.

5 Shortly before the engines were started the rain was still falling. The passengers were asked to fasten their safety belts. The pilot was hammering against the windows, and the plane was in the sky. Some of the passengers were in their seats. In the luggage room the stewardess was looking at the cases of luggage, when she suddenly heard a noise. She could not see anything. Perhaps she was busy with her work. Again she heard a sound.

10 "Good gracious!" thought the stewardess. She opened a small wooden case. There must be somebody there.

She fetched the chief steward, and he went to the luggage room. Some small cases, which had been removed. Fortunately the large wooden case was not removed. When it was opened, a small boy was found.

20 "What are you doing there?" asked the stewardess. "I was hiding that case at once."



21 A. The Stowaway

At London Airport the plane for New York was ready to start. It was raining heavily, and a gale warning had been announced for the South of England.

5 Shortly before the engines were started, a van brought a large wooden case, which was put in the luggage room. Then the passengers on board were asked to fasten their safety belts. The plane took off. The rain was hammering against the windows, and flashes of lightning could be seen in the sky. Some of the passengers were reading, others were half asleep
10 in their seats. In the luggage room the air hostess was counting the pieces of luggage, when she suddenly heard a sneeze. She turned round, but could not see anything. Perhaps she had been mistaken. She went on with her work. Again she heard a sneeze.

15 “Good gracious!” thought the air hostess. “That came from the large wooden case. There must be somebody in it.”

She fetched the chief steward, and they both went back into the luggage room. Some small cases, which stood in the way, were quickly removed. Fortunately the large wooden case had not been locked. When it was opened, a small boy was found between the legs of an antique table.

20 “What are you doing there?” asked the chief steward. “Come out of that case at once.”

The boy climbed out of the case and stood in front of the chief steward — a guilty and trembling, though harmless figure.

“Dad’s a customs officer at London Airport,” said the boy. “We have school holidays and he took me to the airport to see the planes. In the customs hall, while Dad was working, I saw this big case with ‘New York’ on it. Suddenly I wanted to see Uncle Henry in America. I hid in the case and a few minutes later it was taken to this plane.”

“What’s your name?” asked the chief steward.

“I’m called Jimmy, but my real name is James Cook.”

10 “Well, Jimmy,” said the chief steward. “It’s lucky for you that we stop at Glasgow in Scotland. Don’t you know that stowaways are punished by law? Your father will be informed at once.”

The following message was sent to London Airport:

15 PLEASE INFORM MR COOK, CUSTOMS OFFICER AT LONDON AIRPORT, THAT HIS SON, JAMES, HAS BEEN FOUND ON BOARD PLANE BOAC 709. HE WILL BE HANDED OVER TO THE POLICE AT GLASGOW AIRPORT.

An hour later the plane landed at Glasgow. Jimmy was questioned by the airport police. Then, after a good supper, he was sent back to London on the next plane.

20 When the plane landed at London Airport, Jimmy was met by his mother. “Oh, Jimmy,” she said, “how could you do such a thing?”

“Will Daddy punish me?” asked Jimmy.

“No,” said his mother. “You won’t be punished this time. But you will never be taken to the airport again.”

25 “But when I’m a man I shall be a pilot,” said James Cook.

⟨B. Conversation: At a London Travel Agency⟩

Travel agent: Can I help you, sir?

Business man: Yes, I want to travel to Germany at the end of the month. I have to attend a business conference in Düsseldorf. My wife will accompany me.

Travel agent: Yes, sir. On what day do you wish to travel?

Business man: On the 25th. How long does the journey take?

Travel agent: About twelve hours if you go by train and boat. It is much quicker, of course, if you go by air. There are flights every day from London Airport.

Business man: My wife doesn’t like
Will you please
I should like return

Travel agent: First class or second

Business man: Second, please. How

Travel agent: £11.50. Shall I res
£2.60 extra for each

Business man: Yes, please.

Travel agent: Right, sir. Your tick

Business man: Is there anything e

Travel agent: Only your passports

Business man: Thank you very mu

⟨The Train to Bristol⟩

Traveller (out of breath): Can I cat

Stationmaster: That depe
fifteen min

⟨Song: My Bonnie Is over the Ocean⟩

My Bon-nie is o-ver the o
sea, my Bon-nie is o-ver
me! Bring back, bring bac
Bring back, bring back, o br

O blow ye winds over the ocean,
O blow ye winds over the sea,
O blow ye winds over the ocean,
And bring back my Bonnie to me.

Business man: My wife doesn't like air travel. We'll go by train and boat.
Will you please make the necessary reservations?
I should like return tickets.

Travel agent: First class or second, sir?

Business man: Second, please. How much will the journey cost?

Travel agent: £11.50. Shall I reserve sleepers for you? They cost
£2.60 extra for each person.

Business man: Yes, please.

Travel agent: Right, sir. Your tickets will be ready tomorrow.

Business man: Is there anything else which we must take with us?

Travel agent: Only your passports, sir.

Business man: Thank you very much. Good afternoon.

⟨The Train to Bristol⟩

Traveller (out of breath): Can I catch the 4.12 to Bristol?

Stationmaster: That depends on how fast you can run. It left
fifteen minutes ago.

⟨Song: My Bonnie Is over the Ocean⟩

My Bon-nie is o-ver the o - cean, my Bon-nie is o-ver the
sea, my Bon-nie is o-ver the o - cean, o bring back my Bonnie to
me! Bring back, bring back, bring back my Bon-nie to me, to me!
Bring back, bring back, o bring back my Bon-nie to me!

O blow ye winds over the ocean,
O blow ye winds over the sea,
O blow ye winds over the ocean,
And bring back my Bonnie to me.

The winds have blown over the ocean,
The winds have blown over the sea,
The winds have blown over the ocean,
And brought back my Bonnie to me.

Exercises

1 Answer the steward's and Jimmy's questions

a) *The chief steward questions Jimmy:*

1. What's your name?
2. Who is your father?
3. Why are you not at school?
4. How did you get into the case?
5. How long have you been in this case?
6. Do you know what happens to stowaways?

b) *Jimmy asks the chief steward:*

1. Please, sir, what will happen to me?
2. May I know the message which you sent to London Airport?
3. Will the airport police in Glasgow put me in prison?
4. Will my parents come to Glasgow to fetch me?
5. Why can't I fly to New York to see my Uncle Henry?

2 Jimmy and the Policewoman § 68

Jimmy tells a policewoman how the big case came into the plane.

Change the following sentences into the passive voice.

Ex.: The men carried the big case from the customs hall.
The big case was carried from the customs hall.

- a) The men
- | | |
|---|----------------------------------------------|
| { | carried the big case from the customs hall. |
| | did not open the case. |
| | took the case to the New York plane. |
| | lifted it into the plane. |
| | pushed it into a corner of the luggage room. |
| | put some smaller cases in front of it. |

b) *Jimmy answers the policewoman's questions. He gives short answers. Use the sentences under a) for the policewoman's questions.*

Ex.: *Policewoman:* Was the big case taken from the customs hall?

Jimmy: Yes, it was.

Policewoman: Wasn't the case opened?

Jimmy: No, it wasn't.

Policewoman: ...

Go on.

3 What Happened at Glasgow Airport § 68

Change the following sentences into the passive voice.

Ex.: A voice asks the passengers from Glasgow to go to the plane for New York.

The passengers from Glasgow are asked to go to the plane for New York.

1. A voice announces a plane from Germany.
2. Somebody finds two suitcases near a plane.
3. Somebody opens them.
4. They find thousands of pounds in

them. 5. They bring a man in. 6. They lock him in a room. 8. They make a telephone call. 9. Now they call Jimmy. 10. They give him his school report. 11. They give him the next plane to London.

Put the above sentences into the past tense.

Ex.: A voice announced a plane from Germany.

A plane from Germany was announced.

Go on.

4 A Report about Jimmy § 68

The stewardess reports:

1. I heard a snoring sound.
2. I asked the chief steward.
3. We removed some luggage.
4. We opened the big case and found Jimmy's father.
5. We called a policeman.
6. We left the boy at the airport.

A policeman at Glasgow Airport tells the stewardess:

1. The chief steward handed the boy to me.
2. We questioned him.
3. Then we put him on the next plane to London.

The next day the following report could be heard:

1. On board plane BOAC 709 a sneezing sound was heard.
2. The chief steward was ...

Go on with the above sentences and use the words in the box.

5 Jimmy in the Plane to London § 68

Jimmy is not very happy. What will happen?

Put the following sentences into the future tense.

Ex.: They will punish me. — I shall be arrested.

- a) They will
- | | |
|---|----------------------|
| { | punish me. |
| | ask a policeman to |
| | arrest me. |
| | put me in prison. |
| | send me to a school. |

b) *Form questions with the above sentences.*

Ex.: Will Jimmy be punished?

Go on.

them. 5. They bring a man in. 6. They question him about the cases. 7. They lock him in a room. 8. They make a telephone call to Scotland Yard in London. 9. Now they call Jimmy. 10. They question him about his age, his parents, and his school report. 11. They give him a nice dinner. 12. They put him on the next plane to London.

Put the above sentences into the past tense.

Ex.: A voice announced a plane from Germany.

A plane from Germany was announced.

Go on.

4 A Report about
Jimmy § 68

The stewardess of plane BOAC 709 tells a newspaper reporter:

1. I heard a sneeze in the luggage room. 2. I fetched the chief steward. 3. We removed some smaller cases in front of the big case. 4. We opened the big case and found a boy inside. 5. We sent a message to Jimmy's father. 6. We left the boy at Glasgow Airport.

A policeman at Glasgow Airport tells the reporter:

1. The chief steward handed the boy over to me.
2. We questioned him.
3. Then we put him on the next plane to London.

The next day the following report could be read in a newspaper:

1. On board plane BOAC 709 a sneeze was heard in the luggage room.
2. The chief steward was . . .

Go on with the above sentences and use the passive voice.

5 Jimmy in the Plane
to London § 68

*Jimmy is not very happy in the plane to London. He thinks:
What will happen to me?*

Put the following sentences into the future of the passive voice.

Ex.: They will punish me. — I shall be punished.

- a) They will
- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------------------|
| { | punish me. |
| | ask a policeman to fetch me from the airport. |
| | arrest me. |
| | put me in prison. |
- send me to a school for bad boys.

- b) *Form questions with the above sentences in the passive voice.*

Ex.: Will Jimmy be punished?

Go on.

Give negative answers to the questions under b). Use the passive voice.

Ex.: No, Jimmy won't be punished.

No, a policeman won't be asked to fetch him from the airport.

No, ... Go on.

6 What would have happened? § 68

Jimmy thinks: What would have happened to me if I had not sneezed?

Put the following sentences into the conditional perfect of the passive voice.

Ex.: They would have fetched the case from the plane in New York.

The case would have been fetched from the plane in New York.

They would have

- brought the case to the customs hall.
- opened the case.
- found me in it.
- questioned me.
- called my uncle to fetch me.
- shown New York to me.
- taken me to see a western film.
- given money to me for my stay in America.
- called newspaper reporters to take photographs of me.
- offered me the chief part in a film.

7 All about Jimmy's Adventure § 68

1. Jimmy's father took him to London Airport.
2. The stewardess found him in the big case.
3. The chief steward handed him over to the police at Glasgow Airport.
4. A policewoman questioned him in Glasgow.
5. The policeman put him on the next plane to London.
6. Jimmy's mother met him at London Airport.



Ex.: By which of the persons was Jimmy taken to London Airport?

He was taken to London Airport by his father.

Go on.

8 Word-formation

Ex.: A man who

What do you call a person who

... helps another person? ... leads others ... begins to learn something? ... listens to a book ... ?

Answer the questions in full sentences.

What is a tennis-player, a swimmer, a winner, a drinker, a dreamer, a teacher, a rider, an examiner, a fisher, a teacher

9 Translation

Zwölf Jahre später BOAC 1721, hatte

Ersten Steward gerufen wurde. Ein Junge im Koffer gefunden worden.

James Cook: Du bist im Gepäck

Blinder Passagier: Ich heiße George Smith. Ich möchte nach New York fliegen. Werde ich gefunden werden?

James Cook: Sei nicht komisch. Du wirst gefunden werden.

George Smith: Ich habe keine Eltern.

Folgende Nachricht wurde an den Londoner Flughafen Gatwick geschickt: Ein Junge, George Smith, ist an Bord eines BOAC-Fluges gefunden worden. Das Kinderheim in Gatwick mußte den Jungen in zwei Tagen nach Gatwick zurückgeben.

George Smith bekam ein gutes Abendessen. Er wurde von dem Steward ins Koffer genommen. Das Flugzeug in New York an. Am Flughafen wurde der Junge von einem Polizisten abgeholt.

Polizist: Wo ist dein Paß (passport)?

Steward: Der Junge hat keinen Paß. Er wurde im Koffer gefunden. Morgen bringen wir ihn nach New York.

Polizist: Ohne Paß darf er den Flughafen nicht betreten.

George Smith wurde von dem Polizisten ins Kinderheim in Gatwick gebracht. Essen wurde von der Steward zubereitet.

„Es war ein Glück, daß ich vor zwölf Jahren nach New York gekommen bin.“
 Cook: „Ich wäre die ganze Zeit in der Koffer gewesen.“
 George Smith: „Ich hätte mich nicht gesehen.“

8 Word-formation

Ex.: A man who **bakes** bread is called a **baker**.

What do you call a person who

... helps another person? ... leads other people? ... drives a car? ... begins to learn something? ... listens to a speaker? ... reads a book? ... writes a book ...?

Answer the questions in full sentences.

What is a tennis-player, a swimmer, a learner, a singer, a painter, a dancer, a winner, a drinker, a dreamer, a traveller, a worker, a robber, a finder, a rider, an examiner, a fisher, a teacher, an announcer?

9 Translation

Zwölf Jahre später. James Cook, der Pilot des Flugzeugs BOAC 1721, hatte gerade die See erreicht, als er vom Ersten Steward gerufen wurde. Ein Junge von zwölf Jahren war im Gepäckraum gefunden worden.

James Cook: Du bist im Gepäckraum gefunden worden. Wer bist du?

Blinder Passagier: Ich heiße George Smith. Ich wollte nach New York fliegen. Werde ich ins Meer geworfen werden?

James Cook: Sei nicht komisch! Deine Eltern müssen sofort benachrichtigt werden.

George Smith: Ich habe keine Eltern. Ich lebe im Kinderheim in Gatwick.

Folgende Nachricht wurde an den Londoner Flughafen gesandt:

Ein Junge, George Smith, ist an Bord des Flugzeugs BOAC 1721 gefunden worden. Das Kinderheim in Gatwick muß sofort benachrichtigt werden. Er wird in zwei Tagen nach Gatwick zurückgebracht werden. James Cook

George Smith bekam ein gutes Abendessen. Am nächsten Morgen um 7 Uhr kam das Flugzeug in New York an. An der Paßkontrolle (*passport control*) wurde der Junge von einem Polizisten angehalten.

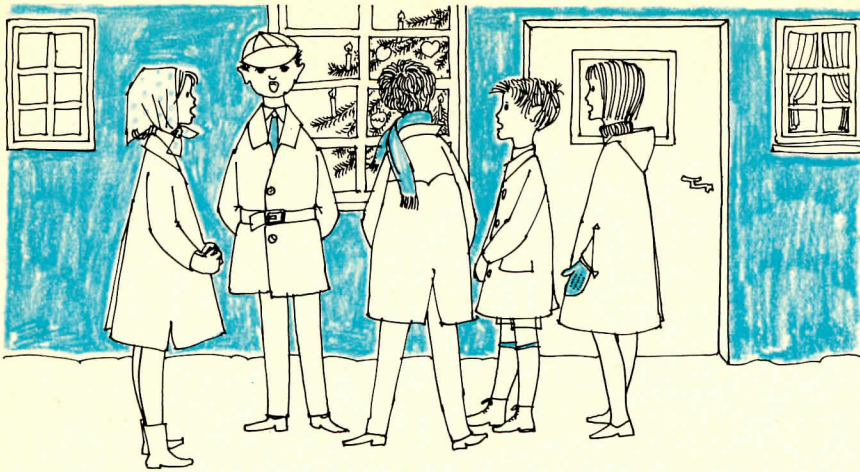
Polizist: Wo ist dein Paß (*passport*)?

Stewardess: Der Junge hat keinen Paß. Er wurde im Gepäckraum des Flugzeugs gefunden. Morgen bringe ich ihn wieder nach London zurück.

Polizist: Ohne Paß darf er den Flughafen nicht verlassen.

George Smith wurde von dem Polizisten in einem Zimmer eingeschlossen. Sein Essen wurde von der Stewardess zubereitet. Zwei Tage später war er wieder im Kinderheim in Gatwick.

„Es war ein Glück, daß ich vor zwölf Jahren niesen mußte“, dachte James Cook. „Ich wäre die ganze Zeit in der Kiste eingeschlossen gewesen und hätte New York nicht gesehen.“



22 <A. Mike's Christmas Presents>

It was two days before Christmas. Mike opened his money-box. There was only ten pence in it. That was all. What can a boy buy for his mother, his father and his sister with ten pence? Nothing!

5 "Why do people give each other presents for Christmas, Mummy?" he asked his mother.

"It's an old custom," answered his mother. "The Three Wise Men began it. They brought presents to the Child in the manger. People give presents to each other in memory of Christ's birth in Bethlehem."

10 Mike understood. He went to his friend, John Baker, and offered him his stamp collection for fifty pence.

"Sorry," said John. "You see, with Christmas and all the presents for the family, I haven't a penny in my pocket."

Poor Mike! What could he do? The next day was Christmas Eve.

15 He went to Mrs Bolton. "Can I help you, Mrs Bolton?" he asked. "Can I go shopping for you?" "That's very kind of you, Mike," said Mrs Bolton. "But Prince went shopping for me yesterday."

Poor Mike!

20 "May I wash the car for you, Mr Honk?" he asked the taxi driver a little later, when he met him in front of his garage.

"It's already washed, my boy," said Mr Honk. "Thank you."

Poor Mike! The next day was Christmas for his family. "May I chop some wood for David's mother."

5 "Well, Mike," said Mrs Dent. "The turkey is a bit of a lazybones. David! . . . David! Go into the kitchen."

Mike went sadly home. He looked at the turkey for the Christmas dinner. He opened the cupboard. The living-room was dark. In the corner there was a Christmas tree.

10 "Don't go into my room, Mike," said Mrs Dent. "There is a present for you there, and you must open it."

Everything reminded him of Christmas.

Next morning he met Jane Barton.

15 "Your bicycle is very dirty, Jane," said Mike. "I'll wash it for you." "Your Christmas presents and give me ten pence for the washing."

"I'm sorry, Mike," said Jane. "I've no presents. Jack, David, Vivien and I went to the cinema last evening. It's great fun. Come with us tomorrow."

20 At six o'clock that evening the five children went to Mrs Bolton's house and sang a carol.

"Silent night, holy night!

All is calm, all is bright

Round the Virgin Mother

Holy Infant, so tender and bright

25 Sleep in heavenly peace, Sleep in heavenly peace.

Mrs Bolton opened her door and found the children lying in front of the fire. Mrs Bolton was surprised.

Mrs Bolton handed them fifty pence.

30 five came to the end of their round table. Mike's share was forty pence. He hurried home.

Fortunately it was still open. He bought a book for his mother and a note-book for Mary.

35 On Christmas morning the whole family opened their presents. There was no happier boy than Mike who received his presents.

Poor Mike! The next day was Christmas Eve and he had no presents for his family. "May I chop some wood for you, Mrs Dent?" he asked David's mother.

5 "Well, Mike," said Mrs Dent. "That is really David's job. He is a lazybones. David! . . . David! Go into the garden and chop some wood."

Mike went sadly home. He looked at his mother. She was preparing the turkey for the Christmas dinner. The plum pudding was ready in the cupboard. The living-room was decorated with holly and mistletoe, and in the corner there was a Christmas tree, but Mike was not happy.

10 "Don't go into my room, Mike," said his little sister Mary. "I have a present for you there, and you mustn't see it before Christmas Eve."

Everything reminded him of Christmas.

Next morning he met Jane Barton on her bicycle.

15 "Your bicycle is very dirty, Jane," he said. "Let me clean it for Christmas and give me ten pence for my work."

"I'm sorry, Mike," said Jane. "I used all my money for Christmas presents. Jack, David, Vivien and I are going carol singing in the evening. It's great fun. Come with us and cheer up!"

20 At six o'clock that evening the five went carol singing. First they went to Mrs Bolton's house and sang:

"Silent night, holy night!
All is calm, all is bright
Round the Virgin Mother and Child.
Holy Infant, so tender and mild,
25 Sleep in heavenly peace,
Sleep in heavenly peace."

Mrs Bolton opened her door and asked them to come in. Prince was lying in front of the fire. Mrs Bolton offered them a cup of tea and some cake. Then she handed them fifty pence. What a surprise! When the 30 five came to the end of their round they had almost two pounds. Mike's share was forty pence. He hurried to the little shop near his home. Fortunately it was still open. He bought a cigar for his father, soap for his mother and a note-book for Mary.

35 On Christmas morning the whole family wished each other "a merry Christmas". There was no happier boy than Mike when he gave and received his presents.

⟨B. Did you know that . . .⟩

- ... the English say 'Merry Christmas' and also 'Happy Christmas'?
- ... Christmas Eve is a normal working day in England?
- ... shops are open on Christmas Eve as usual?
- ... many English children go along the streets on Christmas Eve and sing carols?
- ... silver coins and lucky charms are mixed into the plum pudding and that they bring good luck to the finder?
- ... children and their parents put on paper hats on the evening of Christmas Day and are very merry?

⟨Song: First Nowel⟩

1. The first Now-el the an-gel did say Was to cer-tain poor shep-herds in fields as they lay; In fields where they lay, keep-ing their sheep, In a cold win-ter's night that was so deep:

Chorus
Now-el, Now-el, Now-el, Now-el,
Born is the King of Is-ra-el!

- 2. They looked up and saw a star,
Shining in the east, beyond them far;
And to the earth it gave great light,
And so it continued both day and night:
Nowel, etc.
- 3. This star drew nigh to the north-west;
O'er Bethlehem it took its rest,
And there it did both stop and stay
Right over the place where Jesus lay:
Nowel, etc.

Wörterverzeichnis

1. Die Wörter der verbindlichen Lesestücke gelernt werden, denn sie werden in den folgenden Dagegen sind alle normal gedruckten Wörter unverbindlich. Tritt ein solches Wort in dieser Stelle noch einmal ins Wörterverzeichnis.
2. Bei manchen Wörtern sind zwei Aussprachen für and und [hæz, həz] für has. Die zwei Sprechweisen.
3. Die unregelmäßigen Verben sind ab L 15 mit

Step 1

The First Steps	'fə:st 'steps	die ersten Schritte
step	step	Schritt, Stufe
1. good morning	gud 'mɔ:nɪŋ	gut Morgen
good morning	gud 'mɔ:nɪŋ	guten Morgen
look	luk	schau! schaut! sieh (her)! seht (her)!
a	ə	ein, eine
boy	bɔɪ	Junge
a boy	ə 'bɔɪ	ein Junge
Bob	bɒb	(Kurzform für Robert)
sister	'sɪstə	Schwester
Bob's sister	bɒbz 'sɪstə	Bobs Schwester
Maud	mɔ:d	(Mädchenname)
man	mæn	Mann
Mr Fog	'mɪstə 'fɒg	Herr Fog
2. hat	hæt	Hut
it	ɪt	es
is	ɪz	ist
hand	hænd	Hand
cap	kæp	Mütze
map	mæp	Landkarte
cat	kæt	Katze
board	bɔ:d	(Wand-)Tafel
door	dɔ:	Tür
pen	pen	(Füll-)Federhalter
head	hed	Kopf
leg	leg	Bein
dog	dɒg	Hund
book	buk	Buch

Wörterverzeichnis

- Die Wörter der verbindlichen Lesestücke und Übungen sind **fett** gedruckt. Sie müssen gelernt werden, denn sie werden in den folgenden Lektionen als bekannt vorausgesetzt. Dagegen sind alle normal gedruckten Wörter — vor allem die der Gedichte und Lieder — unverbindlich. Tritt ein solches Wort in einer späteren Lektion wieder auf, so ist es an dieser Stelle noch einmal ins Wörterverzeichnis aufgenommen worden.
- Bei manchen Wörtern sind zwei Aussprachemöglichkeiten angegeben, z. B. [ænd, ənd] für and und [hæz, həz] für has. Die zweite verwendet man beim schnellen Lesen und Sprechen.
- Die unregelmäßigen Verben sind ab L 15 mit einem Stern gekennzeichnet.

Step 1

The First Steps	'fə:st 'steps	die ersten Schritte
step	step	Schritt, Stufe
1. good morning	gud 'mɔ:nɪŋ	gut Morgen
good morning	gud 'mɔ:nɪŋ	guten Morgen
look	luk	schau! schaut! sieh (her)! seht (her)!
a	ə	ein, eine
boy	bɔɪ	Junge
a boy	ə 'bɔɪ	ein Junge
Bob	bɒb	(<i>Kurzform für Robert</i>)
sister	'sɪstə	Schwester
Bob's sister	bɒbz 'sɪstə	Bobs Schwester
Maud	mɔ:d	(<i>Mädchenname</i>)
man	mæn	Mann
Mr Fog	'mɪstə 'fɒg	Herr Fog
2. hat	hæt	Hut
it	ɪt	es
is	ɪz	ist
hand	hænd	Hand
cap	kæp	Mütze
map	mæp	Landkarte
cat	kæt	Katze
board	bɔ:d	(Wand-)Tafel
door	dɔ:	Tür
pen	pen	(Füll-)Federhalter
head	hed	Kopf
leg	leg	Bein
dog	dɒg	Hund
book	buk	Buch

3. black	blæk	schwarz
4. yes	jes	ja

〈Song: Good Morning〉

song	sɒŋ	Lied
good morning		euch allen einen
to you	tə 'ju:	guten Morgen
Mister Miller	'mɪstə 'mɪlə	Herr Müller
how do you do?	'haudju 'du:¹	guten Tag!

Listen and Say

listen	'lɪsn	höre zu! hört zu! horch! horcht!
and	ænd, ənd	und
say	sei	sage! sagt! sprich! sprecht!

〈Bob's Dog〉

knock	nɒk	Klopfen
Miller	mɪlə	Müller

Step 2

1. this	ðɪs	dieser, diese, dieses
this is	'ðɪs_ɪz	dies (hier) ist
Mr Miller	'mɪstə 'mɪlə	Herr Müller
father	'fɑ:ðə	Vater
Mrs Miller	'mɪsɪz 'mɪlə	Frau Müller
mother	'mʌðə	Mutter

¹ beim Singen: 'hau du: ju:'du:

car	kɑ:	Auto, Wagen
coat	kəʊt	Mantel
bus	bʌs	Omnibus, Bus
scarf	skɑ:f	Halstuch, Schal
mouse	maʊs	Maus
2. no	nəʊ	nein
it isn't =	it_ 'ɪznt	es ist nicht
it is not	it_ 'ɪz 'nɒt	
3. that	ðæt	jener, jene, jenes
that is	'ðæt_ɪz	das (dort) ist
garden	'gɑ:dn	Garten
house	haʊs	Haus
Dent	dent	(Familienname)
long	lɒŋ	lang
short	ʃɔ:t	kurz
thick	θɪk	dick
thin	θɪn	dünn
school	sku:l	Schule
school bus	'sku:l bʌs	Schulbus
blue	blu:	blau
or	ɔ:	oder
5. some	sʌm	einige
order	'ɔ:də	Anordnung, Befehl
some orders	sʌm_ 'ɔ:dəz	einige Anordnungen-
stand up	'stænd_ 'ʌp	steh auf! steht auf!
now	nəʊ	nun, jetzt
sit down	'sɪt 'daʊn	setz dich! setzt euch!
thank you	'θæŋkju:	danke
go	gəʊ	geh! geht!
the	ðə	der, die, das
go to the door	'gəʊ tə ðə 'dɔ:	geh zur Tür!
open	'əʊpən	öffne! öffnet!
shut	ʃʌt	schließe! schließt!
Susan	'su:zn	Susanne
fetch	fetʃ	hole! holt!
please	pli:z	bitte
show	ʃəʊ	zeige! zeigt!
show me	'ʃəʊ mi	zeige mir! zeigt mir!
back	bæk	zurück
seat	si:t	Sitz, Platz
go back to	gəʊ 'bæk tə	geh zurück an
your seat	jə 'si:t	deinen Platz!

<Round:

The Little Bell at Westminster

round	raʊnd	Kanon
the little bell	'lɪtl 'bel	die kleine Glocke
at West-	'westmɪnstə	in Westminster
minster		(Stadtteil von London)
the bell goes	'bel gəʊz	die Glocke
ding dong	'dɪŋ 'dɒŋ	macht bim bam

Listen and Say

3. example	ɪg'zɑ:mpl	Beispiel
5. alone	ə'ləʊn	allein
in	ɪn	in
in the house	ɪn ðə 'haʊs	im Haus
the cat	ðə 'kæt	die Katze
can see	kæn 'si:	kann sehen
can't =	kɑ:nt,	kann nicht
cannot	'kænɒt	
for (Konj.)	fɔ:	denn
but	bʌt	aber
so	səʊ	daher

<A Bad Tooth>

bad	bæd	schlecht
tooth	tu:θ	Zahn
Bob has a	'hæz_ə	Bob hat einen
scarf on	'skɑ:f_ɒn	Schal um
dentist	'dentɪst	Zahnarzt
mouth	maʊθ	Mund
open your	'əʊpən jə	mach deinen
mouth	'maʊθ	Mund auf!
oh yes	'əʊ 'jes	o ja!
too (nach-	tu:	auch
gestellt)		[laut]
oh!	əʊ	Au! (Schmerzens-
out	aʊt	heraus, hinaus
this tooth	'ðɪs tu:θ	dieser Zahn ist
is out	ɪz_ 'aʊt	heraus
the next	ðə 'nekst	der, die, das nächste
Miss	mis	Fräulein
my	maɪ	mein, meine
go home	'gəʊ 'həʊm	geh nach Hause!
good-bye	'gʊd'baɪ	auf Wiedersehen!

Step 3

1. in	ɪn	in
on	ɒn	auf
under	'ʌndə	unter [name]
White	waɪt	Weiß (Familien-
key	ki:	Schlüssel
box	bɒks	Schachtel, Käst-
		chen, Kiste
cake	keɪk	Kuchen
plate	pleɪt	Teller
clock	klɒk	größere Uhr (z. B. Küchen-
		oder Wanduhr)
desk	desk	Schulbank, Schreibtisch
piece	pi:s	Stück
paper	'peɪpə	Papier
a piece of	'pi:s_ɒv	ein Stück Papier
paper	'peɪpə	
2. what	wɒt	was
bag	bæg	Tasche, Beutel
pocket	'pɒkɪt	Tasche (an Klei-
		dungsstücken)
4. you	ju:	du
have you	'hæv 'ju:	hast du
Vivien	'vɪvɪən	(Mädchenname)
I	aɪ	ich
I have	aɪ 'hæv, həv	ich habe
David	'deɪvɪd	David
white	waɪt	weiß
I haven't =	aɪ 'hævnt	ich habe nicht (keinen)
I have not		frage! fragt!
ask	ɑ:sk	stellt Fragen!
answer	'ɑ:nsə	beantworte! beantwortet!
note-book	'nəʊtbʊk	Notizbuch, Wörterheft
5. my	maɪ	mein, meine
your	jɔ:, jə	dein, deine
6. window	'wɪndəʊ	Fenster
locked	lɒkt	verschlossen, abgeschlossen
Peter	'pi:tə	Peter
come	kʌm	komm! kommt!
give me	'gɪv mi	gib mir! gebt mir!
corner	'kɔ:nə	Ecke
take	teɪk	nimm! nehmt!

Step 3

1. in	in	in
on	ɔn	auf
under	'ʌndə	unter [name]
White	wait	Weiß (Familien-
key	ki:	Schlüssel
box	bɒks	Schachtel, Käst-
		chen, Kiste
cake	keik	Kuchen
plate	pleit	Teller
clock	klɒk	größere Uhr
		(z. B. Küchen-
		oder Wanduhr)
desk	desk	Schulbank,
		Schreibtisch
piece	pi:s	Stück
paper	'peipə	Papier
a piece of	'pi:s_əv	ein Stück Papier
paper	'peipə	
2. what	wɒt	was
bag	bæg	Tasche, Beutel
pocket	'pɒkit	Tasche (an Klei-
		dungsstücken)
4. you	ju:	du
have you	'hæv 'ju:	hast du
Vivien	'vivian	(Mädchenname)
I	ai	ich
I have	ai 'hæv, həv	ich habe
David	'deivid	David
white	wait	weiß
I haven't =	ai 'hævnt	ich habe nicht
I have not		(keinen)
ask	ɑ:sk	frage! fragt!
		stellt Fragen!
answer	'ɑ:nsə	beantworte!
		beantwortet!
note-book	'nəʊtbuk	Notizbuch,
		Wörterheft
5. my	mai	mein, meine
your	jo:, jə	dein, deine
6. window	'windəʊ	Fenster
locked	lɒkt	verschlossen,
		abgeschlossen
Peter	'pi:tə	Peter
come	kʌm	komm! kommt!
give me	'giv mi	gib mir! gebt mir!
corner	'kɔ:nə	Ecke
take	teik	nimm! nehmt!

put	put	lege! legt!
		stelle! stellt!
wipe	waip	wisch! wischt!

<Song: Happy Birthday>

song	sɔŋ	Lied
happy	'hæpi	glücklich
birthday	'bɜ:θdeɪ	Geburtstag
happy		(dir) herzlichen
birthday		Glückwunsch
(to you)		zum Geburtstag
dear David	diə	lieber David

<Father's Car Key>

car key	'kɑ:'ki:	Autoschlüssel
Monday	'mʌndi	Montag
Mummy	'mami	Mama, Mutti
warm	wɔ:m	warm
Daddy	'dædi	Papa, Vati
oh	əʊ	oh!
it's = it is	its, it_iz	
not	nɒt	nicht
cupboard	'kʌbəd	Schrank
there	ðeə	da, dort
handbag	'hændbæg	Handtasche
but	bʌt	aber
good-bye	gʊd'bai	auf Wiedersehen!

Step 4

1. family	'fæmili	Familie
he	hi:	er
he has	hi: 'hæz, həz	er hat
shirt	ʃɜ:t	Hemd
he has a	hi: 'hæz_ə	er hat ein
shirt on	'ʃɜ:t_ɔn	Hemd an
pipe	paip	Pfeife
mouth	mauθ	Mund
in his mouth	in hiz 'mauθ	in seinem Mund
she	ʃi:	sie
skirt	skɜ:t	Rock
handbag	'hændbæg	Handtasche
in her hand	in hə: 'hænd	in ihrer Hand
woman	'wʊmən	Frau
girl	gɜ:l	Mädchen
ball	bɔ:l	Ball

arm	ɑ:m	Arm
Shirley	'ʃɔ:lɪ	(Mädchenname)
a little girl	ə 'lɪtl 'gɜ:l	ein kleines Mädchen
an	ən, ən	ein, eine
an apple	ən_ 'æpl	ein Apfel
big	bɪg	groß
its door	ɪts 'dɔ:	seine Tür
open	'əʊpən	geöffnet, auf, offen
tail	teɪl	Schwanz
shoe	ʃu:	Schuh
2. new one	nju: wʌn	neu ein (Zahl)
kitchen	'kɪtʃɪn	Küche
yellow	'jeləʊ	gelb
wall	wɔ:l	Wand
floor	flo:	Fußboden
with	wɪð	mit
curtain	'kɜ:tn	Vorhang, Gardine
table	'teɪbl	Tisch
cup	kʌp	Tasse
saucer	'sɔ:sə	Untertasse
small	smɔ:l	klein
4. what is he doing?	'wɒt_ɪz hi: 'du:ɪŋ	was tut er?
Bob is wiping the board	'waɪpɪŋ bɔ:d	Bob wischt die Tafel (aus)
Maud is going to the window	'gəʊɪŋ 'wɪndəʊ	Maud geht zum Fenster
David is eating	'i:tɪŋ	David isst
Susan is painting	'peɪntɪŋ	Susanne malt
picture	'pɪktʃə	Bild
Mr Miller is pushing	'puʃɪŋ	Herr M. schiebt
Shirley is playing	'pleɪɪŋ	Shirley spielt
go on	'gəʊ_ 'ɒn	mach weiter! macht weiter!
5. who?	hu:	wer?
6. word	wɜ:d	Wort, Vokabel
dirty	'dɜ:ti	schmutzig
clean	kli:n	sauber
old	əʊld	alt
exercise-book	'eksəsaɪzbʊk	Heft

Listen and Say

1. but bʌt aber

<The Blue Kitchen>

Mr and Mrs Dent	ɑ:	Herr und Frau Dent kommen
coming home	'kʌmɪŋ	nach Hause
home	həʊm	heim, nach Hause
so	səʊ	so
quiet	'kwaɪət	ruhig
shock	ʃɒk	Schreck
what a shock for Mrs Dent	'wɒt_ə 'ʃɒk	welch ein Schreck für Frau Dent
David is standing	'stændɪŋ	David steht
ladder	'lædə	Leiter
the other	ðɪ_ 'ʌðə	der, die, das andere
she is helping	'helpɪŋ	sie hilft
paint	peɪnt	(Anstreich-) Farbe
down	daʊn	herunter
wash	wɒʃ	wasch dich! wascht euch!
what a mess	'wɒt_ə 'mes	was für ein Durcheinander! eine schöne Beschercung!

Step 5

1. these	ði:z	diese (Plural)
these are	'ði:z_ɑ:	dies (hier) sind
sock, socks	sɒk, sɒks	Socke, Socken
ring	rɪŋ	Ring
they are	'ðei_ɑ:	sie sind
jacket	'dʒækɪt	Jacke
ruler	'ru:lə	Lineal
two	tu:	zwei
chair	tʃɜ:	Stuhl
four	fɔ:	vier
2. room	ru:m	Zimmer
bed	bed	Bett
here	hɪə	hier
there	ðɜ:	dort

those	ðəʊz	jene (Plural)
those are	'ðəʊz_ɑ:	das (dort) sind
3. where	wɜ:	wo
school-bag	'sku:l_bæg	Schultasche
4. parents	'peərənts	Eltern
English	'ɪŋglɪʃ	englisch, Englisch, sie sind Engländer
they are		
English		
too (nachgestellt)	tu:	auch
they have	ðei 'hæv	sie haben
put in	'put_ 'ɪn	setze ein! setzt ein!
orange	'ɒrɪndʒ	Orange
German	'dʒɜ:mən	deutsch, Deutsche, Deutscher
he is reading	'ri:diŋ	er liest
she is making	'meɪkɪŋ	sie macht
5. they are cleaning	'kli:nɪŋ	sie putzen ihre Schuhe
their shoes	ðɜ: 'ʃu:z	
homework	'həʊmwɜ:k	Hausaufgaben
he is doing	'du:ɪŋ	er macht seine Hausaufgaben
his homework		
I am	aɪ 'æm	ich bin
John	dʒɒn	Johannes
Mike	maɪk	(Kurzform für Michael)
friend	frend	Freund, Freundin
we are	wɪ:ɑ:, wɪ:_ə	wir sind
American	ə'merɪkən	amerikanisch, Amerikaner
our	'aʊə	unser, unsere
we are learning	wɪ:_ə 'lə:nɪŋ	wir lernen
they are helping	ðei_ə 'helpɪŋ	sie helfen
6. page	peɪdʒ	Seite
open your books at page 12		schlagt eure Bücher auf Seite 12 auf!
twelve	twelv	zwölf
read	ri:d	liest! lest!
the first	fɜ:st	der, die, das erste
sentence	'sentəns	Satz
right	raɪt	richtig

those	ðəʊz	jene (<i>Plural</i>)
those are	'ðəʊz_ɑ:	das (dort) sind
3. where	wɜə	wo
school-bag	'sku:l.bæg	Schultasche
4. parents	'peərənts	Eltern
English	'ɪŋɡlɪʃ	englisch, Englisch, sie sind Engländer
they are		auch
English		
too (<i>nach-</i> <i>gestellt</i>)	tu:	
they have	ðei 'hæv	sie haben
put in	'put_ɪn	setze ein! setzt ein!
orange	'ɔrɪndʒ	Orange
German	'dʒɜ:mən	deutsch, Deutsch; Deutsche, Deutscher
he is reading	'ri:diŋ	er liest
she is making	'meɪkɪŋ	sie macht
5. they are		sie putzen ihre
cleaning	'kli:nɪŋ	Schuhe
their shoes	ðeə 'ʃu:z	
homework	'həʊmwɜ:k	Hausaufgaben
he is doing	'du:ɪŋ	er macht seine
his homework		Hausaufgaben
I am	aɪ 'æm	ich bin
John	dʒɔn	Johannes
Mike	maɪk	(<i>Kurzform für</i> <i>Michael</i>)
friend	frend	Freund, Freundin
we are	wɪ:_ɑ:, wɪ:_ə	wir sind
American	ə'merɪkən	amerikanisch, Amerikaner
our	'aʊə	unser, unsere
we are	wɪ_ə	wir lernen
learning	'lə:nɪŋ	
they are	ðei_ə	sie helfen
helping	'helpɪŋ	
6. page	peɪdʒ	Seite
open your		schlägt eure
books at		Bücher auf
page 12		Seite 12 auf!
twelve	twelv	zwölf
read	ri:d	liest! lest!
the first	fɜ:st	der, die, das erste
sentence	'sentəns	Satz
right	raɪt	richtig

wrong	rɒŋ	falsch
write	raɪt	schreibe! schreibt!
again	ə'gen	wieder, noch einmal
7. lunch	lʌntʃ	Mittagessen
twelve	'twelv_ə	zwölf Uhr
o'clock	'klɒk	
she is		sie bereitet vor, sie bereitet zu
preparing	pri'peəriŋ	
ready	'redi	fertig
alone	ə'ləʊn	allein
at home	æt 'həʊm	zu Hause
cold	kəʊld	kalt
hungry	'hʌŋɡri	hungrig
8. in front of	ɪn 'frʌnt_əv	vor
behind	bɪ 'haɪnd	hinter
large	lɑ:dʒ	groß, geräumig
garage	'ɡærɑ:ʒ	Garage

<Tit for Tat>

tit for tat	'tɪt fə 'tæt	wie du mir, so ich dir
Saturday	'sætədi	Samstag
his left shoe	hɪz 'left 'ʃu:	sein linker Schuh
his right shoe	hɪz 'raɪt 'ʃu:	sein rechter Schuh
terrible	'terəbl	schrecklich
help me	'help mi:	hilf mir! helft mir!
I'm sorry =	aɪm 'sɔri	es tut mir leid
I am sorry		
I'm doing =	'du:ɪŋ	ich mache
I am doing		
I'm (= I am)		ich bin so
so hungry		hungrig
prepare	pri'peə	bereite vor! bereitet vor!

Step 6

1. there is	ðeər_ɪz	da ist, es ist
there are	ðeər_ɑ:	da sind, es sind
bridge	brɪdʒ	Brücke
near	niə	nahe bei
London	'lʌndən	London
many	'meni	viele

tree	tri:	Baum
street	stri:t	Straße
in the street		auf der Straße
three	θri:	drei
bus stop	'bʌs stɒp	Bushaltestelle
2. how many	'hau 'meni	wie viele
classroom	'klɑ:srum	Klassenzimmer
eye	ai	Auge
ear	iə	Ohr
nose	nəʊz	Nase
finger	'fɪŋgə	Finger
3. number	'nʌmbə	Zahl
4. rhyme	raim	Reim, Vers
that's =	ðæt_s,	das ist
that is	'ðæt_iz	
stick	stɪk	Stock
start	stɑ:t	fange an! fangt an!
5. colour	'kʌlə	Farbe
dress	dres	Kleid
red	red	rot
brown	braun	braun
green	gri:n	grün
question	'kwɛstʃən	Frage
answer	'ɑ:nsə	Antwort
6. alphabet	'ælfəbit	Alphabet

7. <The Alphabet Song>

song	sɒŋ	Lied
sugar	'ʃʊgə	Zucker
bread	bred	Brot
if you don't	'ɪf ju: dəʊnt	wenn du es nicht
like it	'laɪk_ɪt	magst
you'll have	ju:l 'hæv	du mußt ins
to go to bed	tə'gəʊ tə 'bed	Bett gehen
8. spell	spel	buchstabiere! buchstabiert!
name	neɪm	Name
what is	'wɒt_ɪz	wie heißt du?
your name?	jə 'neɪm	
my name is	maɪ 'neɪm_ɪz	ich heiße
double	'dʌbl	doppelt, Doppel-
how old	'hau 'əʊld	wie alt
address	ə'dres	Adresse
year	jə:	Jahr
no	nəʊ	kein, keine
brother	'brʌðə	Bruder
class	klɑ:s	Klasse

write down	'raɪt 'daʊn	schreibe auf! schreibt auf!
can you	'kæn ju:	kannst du
well (Adverb)	wel	gut

<9. A Code Message>

code message	'kəʊdmesɪdʒ	verschlüsselte Nachricht
zero	'ziərəʊ	Null
to his friend	tə hɪz 'frend	an seinen Freund
for	fɔ:	für
dictate	dɪk'teɪt	diktieren! diktiert!

Listen and Say

4. plural	'plʊərəl	Plural, Mehrzahl
Ex. =		
example	ɪg'zɑ:mpl	Beispiel

<What Number, please?>

dressmaker	'dresmeɪkə	Damenschneiderin
Jane	dʒeɪn	(Mädchenname)
daughter	'dɔ:tə	Tochter
for	fɔ:	für
Spalding	'spɔ:ldɪŋ	(Familiename)
in front of it	ɪn 'frʌnt_	davor
	əv_ɪt	
hurry up	'hʌrɪ 'ʌp	beeil dich! beeilt euch!
Mrs S. is		Frau S. wartet
waiting	'weɪtɪŋ	
at five	æt 'faɪv_ə	um fünf Uhr
o'clock	'klɒk	
oh dear!	əʊ 'diə	ach du liebe Zeit!
excuse me	ɪks'kju:z	Verzeihung, ent- schuldigen Sie!
she says	sez	sie sagt
try	traɪ	versuche! ver- suchen Sie!
try		versuch es bei
number 81	'nʌmbə	Nr. 81!
at number 81	æt 'nʌmbə	bei Nr. 81
	'eɪtɪ'wʌn	
poor	pʊə	arm
along the	ə'lɒŋ ðə	die Straße ent- lang
street	'stri:t	
I am		ich suche
looking for	'lʊkɪŋ fə	

Orders and Questions in the Classroom

paragraph	'pærəgrɑ:f	Abschnitt, Absatz
once more	'wʌns 'mɔ:	noch einmal
begin	bɪ'ɡɪn	beginne! beginnt!
at the top of	æt ðə 'tɒp_əv	oben auf
repeat	rɪ'pi:t	wiederhole! wiederholt!
the last	ðə 'lɑ:st	der, die, das letzte
line	laɪn	Linie, Zeile
speak	spi:k	sprich! spricht!
louder	'laʊdə	lauter
correct	kə'rekt	verbessere! verbessert!
mistake	mɪs'teɪk	Fehler
in English	ɪn_'ɪŋɡlɪʃ	auf Englisch
all together	ɔ:l tə'geðə	alle miteinander, zusammen
stop	stɒp	halt! höre auf! hört auf!
translate	træns'leɪt	übersetze! übersetzt!
chalk	tʃɔ:k	Kreide
the second	'sekənd	der, die, das zweite
underline	ʌndə'laɪn	unterstreiche! unterstreicht!
copy	'kɒpi	schreibe ab! schreibt ab! Abschrift
listen to me	'lɪsn tə mi:	höre (hört) mir zu!
I am going	'gəʊɪŋ	ich werde gleich
to dictate	tə dɪk'teɪt	diktieren
collect	kə'lekt	sammle ein! sammelt ein!
pick up	'pɪk_ʌp	hebe (hebt) auf!
waste-paper-	weɪst 'peɪpə	Papierkorb
basket	bɑ:skɪt	
are there any	'ɑ: ðəə enɪ	gibt es irgend-
questions?	'kwɛstʃənz	welche Fragen?
may I ask?	'meɪ aɪ ɑ:sk	darf ich fragen?
correct	kə'rekt	richtig
who can	'hu: kæn	wer kann
draw?	'drɔ:	zeichnen?
meaning	'mi:nɪŋ	Sinn, Bedeutung
what is the	'wɒt_ɪz ðə	was bedeutet ...?
meaning	'mi:nɪŋ_əv	wie heißt ...?
of ...?		

Orders and Questions in the Classroom

paragraph	'pærəgrɑ:f	Abschnitt, Absatz
once more	'wʌns 'mɔ:	noch einmal
begin	bi'gin	beginne! beginnt!
at the top of	æt ðə 'tɒp_əv	oben auf
repeat	ri'pi:t	wiederhole! wiederholt!
the last	ðə 'lɑ:st	der, die, das letzte
line	lain	Linie, Zeile
speak	spi:k	sprich! spricht!
louder	'laʊdə	lauter
correct	kə'rekt	verbessere! verbessert!
mistake	mis'teik	Fehler
in English	in_ 'ɪŋglɪʃ	auf Englisch
all together	ɔ:l tə'geðə	alle miteinander, zusammen
stop	stɒp	halt! höre auf! hört auf!
translate	træns'leit	übersetze! übersetzt!
chalk	tʃɔ:k	Kreide
the second	'sekənd	der, die, das zweite
underline	ʌndə'lain	unterstreiche! unterstreicht!
copy	'kɒpi	schreibe ab! schreibt ab! Abschrift
listen to me	'lɪsn tə mi:	höre (hört) mir zu!
I am going to dictate	'gəʊɪŋ tə dik'teɪt	ich werde gleich diktieren
collect	kə'lekt	sammle ein! sammelt ein!
pick up	'pɪk_ 'ʌp	hebe (hebt) auf!
waste-paper- basket	weɪst 'peɪpə bɑ:skɪt	Papierkorb
are there any questions?	'ɑ: ðəə eni 'kwɛstʃənz	gibt es irgend- welche Fragen?
may I ask?	'meɪ ai ɑ:sk	darf ich fragen?
correct	kə'rekt	richtig
who can draw?	'hu: kæn 'drɔ:	wer kann zeichnen?
meaning	'mi:nɪŋ	Sinn, Bedeutung
what is the meaning of ...?	'wɒt_ɪz ðə 'mi:nɪŋ_əv	was bedeutet ...?, wie heißt ...?

1 A. A Week in Micky's Life

week	wi:k	Woche
Micky	'mɪki	(Eigennamen)
life, pl. lives	laɪf, laɪvz	Leben
mouse, pl. mice	maʊs, maɪs	Maus
hole	həʊl	Loch
Sunday	'sʌndɪ	Sonntag
very	'veri	sehr
quiet	'kwaɪət	ruhig
there is	ðəə_ 'ɪz	es gibt
nothing	'nʌθɪŋ	nichts
interesting	'ɪntrɪstɪŋ	interessant
nothing interesting		nichts Interessantes
fun	fʌn	Spaß
food	fu:d	Essen, Futter
Sunday dinner	'dɪnə	Sonntagsessen
not	nɒt	nicht
Monday	'mʌndɪ	Montag
teacher	'ti:tʃə	Lehrer
he says	sez	er sagt
come here	'kʌm 'hiə	komm hierher!
stand in the corner	'stænd_ɪn ðə 'kɔ:nə	stell dich in die Ecke!
poor	puə	arm
I am sorry	'sɔ:ri	es tut mir leid
forgive me	fə'gɪv	vergib mir!
Tuesday	'tju:zdi	Dienstag
supper	'sʌpə	Abendessen
evening	'i:vnɪŋ	Abend
in the evening		am Abend
ham	hæm	Schinken
sandwich	'sænwɪdʒ	belegtes Brot
ham sandwich		Schinkenbrot
Wednesday	'wenzdi	Mittwoch
child, pl. children	tʃaɪld, 'tʃɪldrən	Kind
exercise	'eksəsaɪz	Übung, Übungsarbeit
I am sitting	'sɪtɪŋ	ich sitze
suddenly	'sʌdnli	plötzlich
a shout	ʃaʊt	ein Schrei
from	fɹɒm	von
oh!	əʊ	oh!
they are shouting	'faʊtɪŋ	sie schreien

help	help	Hilfe
why	wai	warum
only	'əunli	nur
Thursday	'θə:zdi	Donnerstag
breakfast	'brekfəst	Frühstück
bread	bred	Brot
butter	'bʌtə	Butter
jam	dʒæm	Marmelade
tea	ti:	Tee
milk	milk	Milch
sugar	'ʃʊgə	Zucker
Friday	'fraidi	Freitag
bad	bəd	schlecht
day	dei	Tag
awful	'ɔ:ful	schrecklich
animal	'æniməl	Tier
Saturday	'sætədi	Samstag
today	tə'dei	heute
Brown	braun	(<i>Familiennamen</i>)
cleaner	'kli:nə	Putzfrau
she is		sie macht sauber
cleaning	'kli:niŋ	
pupil	'pjʊ:pl	Schüler
brush	brʌʃ	Bürste, Besen
oh dear	'əu'diə	ach du liebe Zeit!
she is taking	'teikiŋ_ə'wei	sie nimmt fort
away		
for breakfast	'brekfəst	zum Frühstück
on Saturday		am Samstag
easy	'i:zi	leicht

What's at the End of it?

what's =	wɔ:ts,	was ist
what is	'wɔ:t_iz	
end	end	Ende, Schluß
at the end of	æt ði_'end_əv	am Ende
what's at the		<i>etwa</i> : was kommt
end of it?		am Schluß?
Miss	mis	Fräulein
Baker	'beikə	(<i>Familiennamen</i>)

Exercises

2. reading	'ri:diŋ_	Leseübung
exercise	eksəsaiz	
noun	naun	Substantiv,
		Hauptwort
4. whose	hu:z	wessen

5. sentence	'sentəns	Satzschalttafel
switch-board	'switʃbɔ:d	
form	fɔ:m	bilde! bildet!
6. possessive	pə'zɛsɪv	besitzanzeigen-
pronoun	'prəunaun	des Fürwort
7. game	geim	Spiel
thing	θiŋ	Ding, Sache
8. opposite	'ɔpəzɪt	Gegenteil
9. translation	træns'leɪfən	Übersetzung

2 A. Moving Day at the Bartons'

to move	mu:v	umziehen
moving day	'mu:vɪŋ dei	Umzugstag
Barton	'bɑ:tn	(<i>Familiennamen</i>)
at the	æt ðə	bei Bartons
Bartons'	'bɑ:tnz	
a quarter	ə'kwɔ:tə	(ein) Viertel
to seven	tə'sevn	vor sieben
van	væn	Möbelwagen
man, pl. men	mæn, men	Mann
furniture	'fɜ:nɪtʃə	(die) Möbel
(immer		
Singular)		
noise	nɔɪz	Lärm
Jack	dʒæk	Hans
still	stil	noch
in bed	in 'bed	im Bett
he is rubbing	'rʌbiŋ	er reibt
happy	'hæpi	glücklich
modern	'mɔ:dən	modern
ten past	'ten 'pɑ:st	zehn (Minuten)
seven	'sev'n	nach sieben
bathroom	'bɑ:θrʊm	Badezimmer
at the bath-		an der Bade-
room door		zimmertür
water	'wɔ:tə	Wasser
the water is		das Wasser
running	'rʌniŋ	läuft
Jane	dʒein	(<i>Mädchenname</i>)
she is		sie wäscht sich
washing	'wɔ:ʃɪŋ	
hurry up	'hʌri_'ʌp	beeil dich!
minute	'minɪt	Minute
they are		sie sind beim
having	'hæviŋ	Frühstück,
breakfast		sie frühstücken

Mummy	'mʌmi	Mama, Mutti
Daddy	'dædi	Papa, Vati
in your		im Schlafanzug
pyjamas	pə'dʒɑ:məz	
(Plural)		
go upstairs	'ʌp'steəz	geh die Treppe
		hinauf,
		nach oben!
dress	dres	zieh dich an!
all right	ɔ:l'raɪt	also gut, in
		Ordnung
porridge	'pɔ:riʒ	Haferflockenbrei
he has		er ißt Hafer-
porridge		flockenbrei
egg	eg	Ei
toast	təust	Toast
		geröstetes Brot,
marmalade	'mɑ:məleɪd	Apfelsinen-,
		Orangen-
		marmelade
as hungry as	əz 'hʌŋgrɪ əz	so hungrig
a wolf	ə wʊlf	wie ein Wolf
pl. wolves	wʊlvz	
they are		sie tragen
carrying	'kæriiŋ	
wardrobe	'wɔ:drəʊb	Kleiderschrank
that's		das ist alles
(= that is)		
all	ɔ:l	
let's (= let	'lets'gəʊ	laßt uns (wir
us) go		wollen) gehen!
lock the	'lɒk ðə 'dɔ:z	schließt die
doors		Türen ab!
he is leaving	'li:vɪŋ	er verläßt
surprise	sə'praɪz	Überraschung
what a	'wɔ:t_ə	was für eine
surprise	sə'praɪz	Überraschung
bedroom	'bedrʊm	Schlafzimmer
empty	'empti	leer
clothes (nur	kləʊðz	Kleider,
Plural)		Kleidung
the van is	ðə 'væn_ɪz	der Möbelwagen
gone	'gɒn	ist weg

B. What's the Time?

what's		wieviel Uhr
(= what is)		ist es?
the time?	taim	

Mummy	'mʌmi	Mama, Mutti
Daddy	'dædi	Papa, Vati
in your pyjamas (Plural)	pə'dʒɑ:məz	im Schlafanzug
go upstairs	'ʌp'steəz	geh die Treppe hinauf, nach oben!
dress	dres	zieh dich an!
all right	ɔ:l'raɪt	also gut, in Ordnung
porridge	'pɔrɪdʒ	Haferflockenbrei
he has porridge		er ißt Hafer- flockenbrei
egg	eg	Ei
toast	təʊst	Toast geröstetes Brot,
marmalade	'mɑ:məleɪd	Apfelsinen-, Orangen- marmelade
as hungry as a wolf pl. wolves	əz 'hʌŋgrɪ əz ə wʊlf wʊlvz	so hungrig wie ein Wolf
they are carrying		sie tragen
wardrobe	'wɔ:drəʊb	Kleiderschrank
that's (= that is) all	ɔ:l	das ist alles
let's (= let us) go	'lets 'gəʊ	laßt uns (wir wollen) gehen!
lock the doors	'lɒk ðə 'dɔ:z	schließt die Türen ab!
he is leaving	'li:vɪŋ	er verläßt
surprise	sə'praɪz	Überraschung
what a surprise	'wɒt ə sə'praɪz	was für eine Überraschung
bedroom	'bedrʊm	Schlafzimmer
empty	'emptɪ	leer
clothes (nur Plural)	kləʊðz	Kleider, Kleidung
the van is gone	ðə 'væn_ɪz 'gɒn	der Möbelwagen ist weg

B. What's the Time?

what's (= what is) the time?	taim	wieviel Uhr ist es?
--------------------------------------------------	------	------------------------

half past	'hɑ:f pɑ:st	halb vier
three	'θri:	
a quarter of an hour	ə 'kwɔ:tər_ əv_ən 'aʊə	eine Viertel- stunde
half an hour	'hɑ:f_ən 'aʊə	eine halbe Stunde
three quarters of an hour		eine Dreiviertel- stunde
watch	wɒtʃ	(Armband-, Ta- schen-) Uhr
by your watch	baɪ jə 'wɒtʃ	auf deiner (Ihrer) Uhr

<A Lovely Day>

lovely	'lʌvli	schön
sky	skai	Himmel
grey	greɪ	grau
sun	sʌn	Sonne
the sun shines	faɪnz	die Sonne scheint
bright	braɪt	leuchtend, hell
we can say		wir können sagen

Exercises

1. at a quarter to ...		um Viertel vor ...
2. present	'preznt	Präsens, Gegen- wart
participle	'pɑ:tsɪpl	Partizip, Mittelwort
present participle		Partizip Präsens
column	'kɒləm	Spalte
3. to be	bi:	sein
thing	θɪŋ	Sache, Ding
later	'leɪtə	später
8. game	geɪm	Spiel
something	'sʌmθɪŋ	etwas
for example	fər_ɪg'zɑ:mpl	zum Beispiel
the other	ði_ 'ʌðə	der, die, das andere
9. preposition	prepə'zɪʃən	Verhältniswort
where?	wɛə	wohin?
at 5	æt 'faɪv_ə	um 5 Uhr
o'clock	'klɒk	
10. missing	'mɪsɪŋ	fehlend
11. trans- lation	træns'leɪʃən	Übersetzung

lesson	'lesn	Lektion
always	'ɔ:lwəz	immer
every	'evri	jeden Morgen
morning	'mɔ:niŋ	
from . . . to	fɹəm tu:	von . . . bis

3 A. David and his Pen-friend

pen-friend	'penfrend	Brief-(Schreib-) freund(in)
bell	bel	Klingel, Glocke
door-bell	'dɔ:bel	Türklingel
to ring	riŋ	läuten, klingeln
to put down	'put 'daʊn	niederlegen, hinlegen
to run	rʌn	laufen, rennen
letter	'letə	Brief
letter-box	'letəbɒks	Briefkasten
from	fɹəm	von
to tell	tel	erzählen, sagen
to do	du:	tun
every day	'evri 'dei	jeden Tag
favourite	'feivərit	Liebungs-
subject	'sʌbdʒikt	(Unterrichts-) Fach
at school	sku:l	in der Schule
to wonder	'wʌndə	sich fragen
whether	'wedə	ob
strict	strikt	streng
time-table	'taimteibl	Stundenplan
what is your time-table?		was für einen Stundenplan habt ihr?
an answer	'ɑ:nsə	eine Antwort auf
to a letter		einen Brief
dear Dieter	diə	lieber Dieter
for	fɔ:	für
to want	wɒnt	wünschen, wollen
to know	nəʊ	wissen
you want to know		du möchtest wissen
to wake up	'weik_ʌp	aufwecken, auf- wachen
to get up	'get_ʌp	aufstehen
to brush	brʌʃ	bürsten, <i>hier:</i> putzen
tooth,	tu:θ,	Zahn
pl. teeth	ti:θ	

after that	'ɑ:ftə	danach
later	'leɪtə	später
to miss the bus	mis	den Bus ver- passen
sometimes	'sʌmtaɪmz	manchmal
runner	'rʌnə	Läufer
always	'ɔ:lwəz	immer
to reach	ri:tʃ	erreichen
in time	taim	rechtzeitig
morning	'mɔ:niŋ	Morgenandacht
prayers	'preɪz	
lesson	'lesn	(Unterrichts-) Stunde
to get	get	bekommen
free	fri:	frei, kostenlos
school dinner	'sku:l 'dɪnə	Mittagessen in der Schule
to call	kɔ:l	nennen, rufen
soup	su:p	Suppe
SOS =		„Rettet unsere Seelen“ (internationales Verständigungs- zeichen bei Le- bensgefahr)
save our souls	'seɪv_auə 'səʊlz	(die)selbe
(the) same	seɪm	Appetit
appetite	'æpɪtaɪt	mit gutem
with a good appetite	wɪð_ə 'ɡʊd 'æpɪtaɪt	Appetit
afternoon	'ɑ:ftə'nʊ:n	Nachmittag
until	ən'tɪl	bis
after	'ɑ:ftə	nach (<i>zeitlich</i>)
after tea	ti:	nach dem Tee
what a bore!	'wɒt_ə 'bɔ:	so was Lang- weiliges, Gräßliches!
to hate	heit	hassen
mathematics	mæθɪ'mætɪks	Mathematik
a lot of	ə 'lɒt_ɒv	eine Menge, viel
game	geɪm	Spiel
to play a game	pleɪ	ein Spiel machen, spielen
football	'fʊtbɔ:l	Fußball
in winter	'wɪntə	im Winter
cricket	'kɹɪkɪt	Krieket
in summer	'sʌmə	im Sommer
to lie,	lai	liegen
(Part. Präs.) lying	'laɪɪŋ	

longer	'lɒŋgə	länger
a little longer		ein wenig länger
lazybones	'leɪzɪbəʊnz	Faulpelz
I take no notice	ai teɪk 'nəʊ 'nəʊtɪs	ich nehme keine Notiz davon, ich beachte es nicht
I must	mʌst	ich muß

B. Reporter Jack Quick

reporter	ri'pɔ:tə	Reporter, Berichterstatte
Quick	kwɪk	(Familienname: „Schnell“)
newspaper	'nju:speɪpə	Zeitung
tennis	'tenɪs	Tennis
player	'pleɪə	Spieler
moment	'məʊmənt	Moment, Augenblick
at this moment		in diesem Augen- blick
to smoke	sməʊk	rauchen
cigar	si'gɑ:	Zigarre
time	taim	Zeit
week-end	'wi:k'end	Wochenende
at least	li:st	wenigstens
tea-drinker	'ti:drɪŋkə	Teetrinker
to drink	drɪŋk	trinken
a cup of tea	'kʌp_ɒv 'ti:	eine Tasse Tee
home	həʊm	heim, nach Hause
to go home		nach Hause gehen
thank you	'θæŋkjʊ	ich danke Ihnen
very much	veri 'mʌtʃ	(dir) sehr, recht herzlich
good-bye	ɡʊd'baɪ	auf Wiedersehen!
the next	nekst	der, die, das nächste

⟨A Riddle⟩

riddle	'rɪdl	Rätsel
heart	hɑ:t	Herz

Exercises

1. when	wen	wann
about	ə'baut	über, von
2. form	fɔ:m	Klasse
assembly	ə'sembli	Versammlung
maths =	mæθs	Mathematik
mathematics	mæθɪ'mætɪks	

longer	'lɒŋgə	länger
a little longer		ein wenig länger
lazybones	'leɪzɪbəʊnz	Faulpelz
I take no notice	ai teɪk 'nəʊ 'nəʊtɪs	ich nehme keine Notiz davon, ich beachte es nicht
I must	mʌst	ich muß

B. Reporter Jack Quick

reporter	ri'pɔ:tə	Reporter, Berichterstatter
Quick	kwɪk	(<i>Familiename:</i> ,,Schnell“)
newspaper	'nju:speɪpə	Zeitung
tennis	'tenɪs	Tennis
player	'pleɪə	Spieler
moment	'məʊmənt	Moment, Augenblick
at this moment		in diesem Augen- blick
to smoke	sməʊk	rauchen
cigar	si'gɑ:	Zigarre
time	taim	Zeit
week-end	'wi:k'end	Wochenende
at least	li:st	wenigstens
tea-drinker	'ti:drɪŋkə	Teetrinker
to drink	drɪŋk	trinken
a cup of tea	'kʌp_əv 'ti:	eine Tasse Tee
home	həʊm	heim, nach Hause
to go home		nach Hause gehen
thank you	'θæŋkjʊ	ich danke Ihnen
very much	veri 'mʌtʃ	(dir) sehr, recht herzlich
good-bye	gʊd'baɪ	auf Wiedersehen!
the next	nekst	der, die, das nächste

<A Riddle>

riddle	'rɪdl	Rätsel
heart	hɑ:t	Herz

Exercises

1. when	wen	wann
about	ə'baʊt	über, von
2. form	fɔ:m	Klasse
assembly	ə'sembli	Versammlung
maths =	mæθs	Mathematik
mathematics	mæθi'mætɪks	

history	'hɪstəri	Geschichte
break	breɪk	Pause
music	'mju:zɪk	Musik
lunch	'lʌntʃ	Mittagspause
break	breɪk	
French	frentʃ	Französisch
science	'saɪəns	Naturwissen- schaft, Natur- kunde
rel. educ. =		Religions- unterricht
religious	ri'lɪdʒəs	
education	edʒu'keɪʃən	
geography	dʒi'ɒgrəfi	Geographie, Erdkunde
physical	'fɪzɪkəl	Turnen, Sport
training	'treɪnɪŋ	
art	ɑ:t	Kunst, Kunst- unterricht, Zeichnen
wood	wʊd	Holz
woodwork	'wʊdwɜ:k	Werken, Werk- unterricht
from... to	fɹəm tu	von . . . bis
the third	θə:d	der, die, das dritte
the fourth	fɔ:θ	der, die, das vierte
the fifth	fɪfθ	der, die, das fünfte
the sixth	sɪksθ	der, die, das sechste
the seventh	'sevənθ	der, die, das siebte
3. then	ðen	dann
5. ill	ɪl	krank
everybody	'evrɪbɒdi	jeder
6. present	'preznt	Verlaufsform im
continuous	kən'tɪnjuəs	Präsens
present		einfaches
ordinary	'ɔ:dnri	Präsens
7. trans- lation	træns'leɪʃən	Übersetzung

4 A. Happy Days for Janie

school report	'sku:l ri'pɔ:t	Schulzeugnis
excellent	'eksələnt	ausgezeichnet, vorzüglich

proud of	'praud_əv	stolz auf
daughter	'dɔ:tə	Tochter
the next day		am nächsten Tag
to see	si:	sehen
living-room	'liviŋrʊm	Wohn- und Eß- zimmer
surprised	sə'praizd	überrascht
to watch	wɒtʃ	beobachten
she looks at	'luks_ət	sie sieht (sich)
the letter	ðə 'letə	den Brief an
stamp	stæmp	Briefmarke
there is no		es ist keine Brief- marke darauf
stamp on it		schließlich
at last	lɑ:st	Schließlich
envelope	'enviləʊp	Briefumschlag
inside	'in'said	darin
to find	faɪnd	finden
card	kɑ:d	Karte
sitting-room	'sitiŋrʊm	Wohnzimmer
go to the		geh ins Wohn- zimmer!
sitting-room		eine andere
another card	ə'nʌðə	Karte, noch eine Karte
upstairs	'ʌp'steəz	im oberen Stock- werk, oben
to rush	rʌʃ	stürmen, stürzen
excited	ik'saitid	aufgeregt
to hurry	'hʌri	eilen
downstairs	'daun'steəz	die Treppe hin- unter, nach unten
to laugh	lɑ:f	lachen
much	mʌtʃ	viel
cherry	'tʃeri	Kirsche
peach	pi:tʃ	Pfirsich
match	mætʃ	Streichholz
two boxes of	'bɒksiz_əv	zwei Schachteln
matches	'mætʃiz	Streichhölzer
near them	'niə ðəm	neben ihnen, daneben
bush	bʊʃ	Busch
something	'sʌmθiŋ	etwas
wonderful	'wʌndəfʊl	wunderbar, wundervoll
something		etwas Wunder- bares
wonderful		schön
beautiful	'bjʊ:təfʊl	Fahrrad
bicycle	'baɪsɪkl	

to dance	dɑ:ns	tanzen
round it	raʊnd	um es herum
to hug	hʌg	umarmen
all	ɔ:l	alle
bicycle tour	tuə	Radtour
next Sunday	'sʌndi	am nächsten Sonntag

B. A Family Tree:

The Dents and the Bartons

family tree	'fæmili 'tri:	Stammbaum
Mary	'mɛəri	Maria
grandfather	'grænfɑ:ðə	Großvater
grandmother	'grænmʌðə	Großmutter
Robert	'rɒbət	Robert
Rose	rəʊz	Rose
Dorothy	'dɒrəθi	Dorothea
aunt	ɑ:nt	Tante
William	'wɪljəm	Wilhelm
uncle	'ʌŋkl	Onkel
Bill	bil	(Kurzform für William)
cousin	'kʌzn	Vetter, Base
nephew	'nevju	Neffe
niece	ni:s	Nichte

<Who is it?>

picture of	'pɪktʃə	Jungenbild
a boy		
none	nʌn	keine
son	sʌn	Sohn

<Proverbs>

proverb	'prɒvəb	Spruchwort
need	ni:d	Not
indeed	in'di:d	in der Tat
all that		alles was
to glitter	'glɪtə	glitzern, gleißen
gold	gəʊld	Gold
to end	end	enden, aufhören
hunger	'hʌŋgə	Hunger
the best	best	der, die, das beste
sauce	sɔ:s	Soße
man	mæn	Mann, Mensch
to serve	sə:v	dienen
master	'mɑ:stə	Meister, Herr

out of	'aut_əv	aus (... heraus)
sight	sait	Sicht, Anblick, Auge
mind	maɪnd	Sinn, Geist, Verstand

Exercises

2. put into		setze (setzt) in
the plural	'pluərəl	den Plural!
3. suitable	'sju:təbl	passend, ent- sprechend
to complete	kəm'pli:t	vervollständigen, ergänzen
5. team	ti:m	Team, Arbeits- gruppe
point	poɪnt	Punkt
8. word order	'wɜ:d_ɔ:də	Wortstellung
table	'teɪbl	Tabelle, Tafel
word order		Wortstellungs- tabelle
table		Ort
place	pleɪs	Ort
following	'fɒləʊɪŋ	folgend
to go to bed	bed	ins Bett gehen
9. to add	æd	hinzufügen
adverbial	əd'vɜ:bjəl	Umstands- bestimmung
phrase	'freɪz	bestimmung
adverb	'ædvɜ:b	Adverb, Umstandswort
10. to		sich ereignen, geschehen
happen	'hæpən	geschehen
11. French	frentʃ	französisch
12. personal	'pɜ:snl	persönlich
case	keɪs	Fall
object case	'ɒbdʒɪkt	Objektsfall
13. French	frentʃ	Französisch
to like	laɪk	gern haben, mögen
14. careful	'keəfʊl	vorsichtig
often	'ɔ:fn	oft
15. to build	bɪld	bauen
stairs	steəz	Treppe
other	'ʌðə	andere
letter	'letə	Buchstabe
17. to		hereinkommen
come in	'kʌm_in	
to guess	ges	raten
thing	θɪŋ	Ding, Sache

out of sight	'aut_əv sait	aus (... heraus) Sicht, Anblick, Auge
mind	maind	Sinn, Geist, Verstand

Exercises

2. put into the plural	'pluərəl	setze (setzt) in den Plural!
-------------------------------	----------	---------------------------------

3. suitable	'sju:təbl	passend, ent- sprechend
to complete	kəm'pli:t	vervollständigen, ergänzen

5. team	ti:m	Team, Arbeits- gruppe
point	point	Punkt

8. word order table	'wɜ:d_ɔ:də 'teibl	Wortstellung Tabelle, Tafel
----------------------------	----------------------	--------------------------------

word order table		Wortstellungs- tabelle
-------------------------	--	---------------------------

place	pleis	Ort
following	'fɒləʊɪŋ	folgend
to go to bed	bed	ins Bett gehen

9. to add adverbial phrase adverb	əd əd'vɜ:bjəl 'freiz 'ædvɜ:b	hinzufügen Umstands- bestimmung Adverb, Umstandswort
------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------

10. to happen	'hæpən	sich ereignen, geschehen
----------------------	--------	-----------------------------

11. French	frentʃ	französisch
-------------------	--------	-------------

12. personal case	'pɜ:snl keis	persönlich Fall
--------------------------	-----------------	--------------------

object case	'ɒbdʒɪkt	Objektsfall
--------------------	----------	-------------

13. French to like	frentʃ laik	Französisch gern haben, mögen
---------------------------	----------------	-------------------------------------

14. careful often	'keəfʊl 'ɔ:fn	vorsichtig oft
--------------------------	------------------	-------------------

15. to build stairs other	bild steəz 'ʌðə	bauen Treppe andere
----------------------------------	-----------------------	---------------------------

letter	'letə	Buchstabe
17. to come in	'kʌm_ 'in	hereinkommen

to guess thing	ges θɪŋ	raten Ding, Sache
-----------------------	------------	----------------------

5 A. The Hairdresser

hairdresser	'heədresə	Friseur
wedding	'wedɪŋ	Hochzeit
wedding day		Hochzeitstag
bridesmaid	'braɪdzmeɪd	Brautjungfer
to wear	wəə	tragen
silk	sɪlk	Seide
silk dress	'sɪlk 'dres	Seidenkleid
mirror	'mɪrə	Spiegel
moment	'məʊmənt	Moment, Augenblick
to come in well	'kʌm_ 'in wel	hereinkommen na?
what's	'wɒts	was ist los?
(= what is) the matter?	ðə 'mætə	
hair	hɛə	Haar
too	tu:	zu
to cut	kʌt	schneiden
don't (= do not) be	'dəʊnt bi	sei nicht!
silly	'sɪli	dumm
I can't	kɑ:nt	ich kann nicht
(= cannot)	'kænət	
I'm not a hairdresser	aɪm 'nɒt_ə 'heədresə	ich bin kein Friseur
funny	'fʌni	späßig, komisch, sonderbar
idea	aɪ'diə	Gedanke, Idee
to blame	bleɪm	tadeln
if	ɪf	wenn, falls
to like	laɪk	gern haben, mögen
if you don't like it		wenn es dir nicht gefällt
afterwards	'ɑ:ftəwɜ:dz	hinterher, hernach
scissors	'sɪzəz	Schere
(Plural)		
snip	snɪp	Schnipp!
pretty	'prɪti	hübsch
curl	kɜ:l	Locke
to fall	fɔ:l	fallen
to the floor	flo:	auf den Boden
it is getting shorter and shorter	'getɪŋ 'ʃɔ:tə	es wird immer kürzer
there!	ðɛə	da!

hand-mirror	'hændmɪrə	Handspiegel
to hold	həʊld	halten
what a mess!	'wɒt_ə 'mes	was für eine Patsche! was für ein Unglück!
spoil	spɔɪlt	verdorben
cry-baby	'kraɪbeɪbi	Heulsuse
Grandma = Grandmama	'grænmə: 'grænmɑ:	Großmutter
hallo	hə'ləʊ	hallo! Guten Tag!
to cry	kraɪ	weinen, schreien
nonsense	'nɒnsəns	Unsinn
ribbon	'rɪbən	Band
to put round	'put 'raʊnd	<i>hier</i> : umbinden
you needn't = need not	'ni:dnt	du brauchst (mußt) nicht
to worry	'wʌrɪ	sich sorgen, sich beunruhigen
to look lovely	'lʌvli	reizend, hübsch aussehen
nice	naɪs	hübsch
I must do my hair	həə	ich muß mich frisieren
I do my hair like that		ich frisiere mich so

B. Jane Lays the Table

to lay the table	'lei ðə 'teɪbl	den Tisch decken
office	'ɒfɪs	Büro
thing	θɪŋ	Ding, Sache
all the things	θɪŋz	alle Sachen
tray	treɪ	Tablett
table-cloth	'teɪblklɒθ	Tischdecke
milk-jug	'mɪlkdʒʌg	Milchkännchen
sugar-basin	'ʃʊgəbeɪsn	Zuckerdose
spoon	spu:n	Löffel
butter-dish	'bʌtədɪʃ	Butterdose
tea-pot	'ti:pɒt	Teekanne
tea-spoon	'ti:spu:n	Teelöffel
tea-cup	'ti:kʌp	Teetasse
knife,	naɪf,	Messer
<i>pl. knives</i>	naɪvz	
fork	fɔ:k	Gabel

<Who Makes the Money?>

money	'mʌni	Geld
to make money	meɪk	Geld verdienen

God	gɒd	Gott
he made	meɪd	er machte
bee	bi:	Biene
honey	'hʌni	Honig
miller's man	'mɪləz 'mæn	Müllersknecht
work	wɜ:k	Arbeit

Exercises

4. to use	ju:z	benutzen, verwenden
7. often	'ɔ:fn	oft
when	wen	wenn, wann
9. wood	wʊd	Holz
woodwork	'wʊdwɜ:k	Werken, Werk- unterricht
the other	'ʌðə	der, die, das andere, die anderen
10. to visit	'vɪzɪt	besuchen
to be		erstaunt sein
surprised at	sə'praɪzd	über

6 A. Who Wants an Apple?

to spend	spend	verbringen
holiday(s)	'hɒlədi(z)	Ferien
farm	fɑ:m	Bauernhof
country	'kʌntri	Land
in the country		auf dem Land
one day	wʌn 'deɪ	eines Tages
to walk	wɜ:k	spazierengehen, gehen
field	fi:ld	Feld
apple-tree	'æpltri:	Apfelbaum
full of apples	'fʊl_ɒv 'æplz	voll Äpfel, voller Äpfel
to climb	klaɪm	klettern
to climb the tree		auf den Baum klettern
to pick	pɪk	pflücken
to cry	kraɪ	rufen
angry	'æŋgri	zornig
voice	vɔɪs	Stimme
down	daʊn	hinunter, herunter
bulldog	'bʊldɒg	Bulldogge

forbidden	fə'bɪdn	verboten
nervous	'nɜ:vəs	nervös
to live	lɪv	leben, wohnen
to offer	'ɔ:fə	anbieten
at once	æt 'wʌns	sofort
friendly	'frendli	freundlich
to look friendly	luk	freundlich aus- sehen
to stay	steɪ	bleiben
Rover	'rəʊvə	(Hundenname) warten
to wait	weɪt	warten
order	'ɔ:də	Befehl
to watch	wɒtʃ	bewachen, aufpassen auf

grass	grɑ:s	Gras
strong	strɒŋ	stark, kräftig
away	ə'wei	weg, fort
to throw at	θrəʊ	werfen nach
to bark	bɑ:k	bellen
to try	traɪ	versuchen
to jump	dʒʌmp	springen
to jump up the tree	'dʒʌmp_ʌp	an dem Baum hochspringen
appetite for apples	'æpɪtaɪt	Appetit auf Äpfel
farmer	'fɑ:mə	Bauer
young	jʌŋ	jung
thief,	θi:f,	Dieb
<i>pl. thieves</i>	θi:vz	
grandson	'grænsən	Enkel
son	sʌn	Sohn
astonished	əs'tɒnɪʃt	erstaunt
to smile	smɪl	lächeln
smiling	'smɪlɪŋ	lächelnd
to hand	hænd	reichen

B. Animal Quiz

quiz	kwɪz	Rätselfrage
cow	kau	Kuh
hen	hen	Henne
bird	bɜ:d	Vogel
elephant	'elɪfənt	Elefant
fish	fɪʃ	Fisch
pig	pɪg	Schwein
to guess	ges	raten
to swim	swɪm	schwimmen
which	wɪtʃ	welcher, welche, welches

forbidden	fə'bidn	verboten
nervous	'nə:vəs	nervös
to live	liv	leben, wohnen
to offer	'ɔ:fə	anbieten
at once	æt 'wʌns	sofort
friendly	'frendli	freundlich
to look	luk	freundlich aus-
friendly		sehen
to stay	stei	bleiben
Rover	'rəʊvə	(Hundenname)
to wait	weit	warten
order	'ɔ:də	Befehl
to watch	wɔ:tʃ	bewachen,
		aufpassen auf
grass	grɑ:s	Gras
strong	strɒŋ	stark, kräftig
away	ə'wei	weg, fort
to throw at	θrəʊ	werfen nach
to bark	bɑ:k	belln
to try	traɪ	versuchen
to jump	dʒʌmp	springen
to jump up	'dʒʌmp_ 'ʌp	an dem Baum
the tree		hochspringen
appetite for	'æpɪtaɪt	Appetit auf
apples		Äpfel
farmer	'fɑ:mə	Bauer
young	jʌŋ	jung
thief,	θi:f,	Dieb
pl. thieves	θi:vz	
grandson	'grændsʌn	Enkel
son	sʌn	Sohn
astonished	əs'tɒnɪʃt	erstaunt
to smile	smail	lächeln
smiling	'smailɪŋ	lächelnd
to hand	hænd	reichen

B. Animal Quiz

quiz	kwɪz	Rätselfrage
cow	kau	Kuh
hen	hen	Henne
bird	bɜ:d	Vogel
elephant	'elɪfənt	Elefant
fish	fɪʃ	Fisch
pig	pɪg	Schwein
to guess	ges	raten
to swim	swim	schwimmen
which	wɪtʃ	welcher, welche,
		welches

fat	fæt	fett
Moo!	mu:	Muh!
to bite	bait	beißen
people	'pi:pl	Leute, Menschen
zoo	zu:	Zoo
circus	'sə:kəs	Zirkus
to lay	lei	legen
to catch	kætʃ	fangen
feather	'feðə	Feder
to fly	flai	fliegen
nest	nest	Nest

<Song: One Man Went to Mow>

song	sɒŋ	Lied
he went	went	er ging
to mow	məʊ	mähen
meadow	'medəʊ	Wiese
up to	ʌp	bis (hinauf) zu

Exercises

4. because	bi'kɔz	weil, da
6. puzzle	'pʌzl	Rätsel
coloured	'kɒləd	farbig
opposite	'ɒpəzɪt	Gegenteil
7. about	ə'baʊt	über, von

7 A. Too Much of a Good Thing

too much of a		zuviel des Guten
good thing	'gʊd 'θɪŋ	
February	'februəri	der 17. Februar
17th (read:		
February the		
seventeenth)	'sevn'ti:nθ	
birthday	'bɜ:θdeɪ	Geburtstag
the Bartons	'bɑ:tnz	die Familie Barton
Oxford	'ɒksfəd	(berühmte engl.
		Universitätsstadt)
mile	mail	Meile
		(etwa 1,6 km)
away	ə'wei	entfernt
road	rəʊd	(Land-)Straße
icy	'aɪsi	vereist
so	səʊ	deshalb
train	treɪn	Zug

to go by train	bai	mit dem Zug fahren
to leave	li:v	verlassen; weggehen, abfahren
to arrive	ə'raiv	ankommen
to arrive at Grandfather's house		bei Großvater ankommen
guest	gest	Gast
happy	'hæpi	herzlichen
birthday	'bɜ:θdeɪ	Glückwunsch zum Geburtstag
Grandpa = Grandfather	'grænpɑ:	Großvater
present	'preznt	Geschenk
a box of cigars	'bɒks_əv si'gɑ:z	eine Schachtel Zigarren
a pair of slippers	'pɛər_əv 'slɪpəz	ein Paar Hausschuhe
how nice	'hau 'naɪs	wie schön, nett
just	dʒʌst	gerade
just what I need	ni:d	genau das, was ich brauche
four more people	mɔ: 'pi:pl	vier weitere Leute
Margery	'mɑ:dʒəri	Margarete
George	dʒɔ:dʒ	Georg
Joyce	dʒɔɪs	(weiblicher Vorname)
Denis	'denɪs	(männlicher Vorname)
handkerchief	'hæŋkətʃɪf	Taschentuch
well, well	wel	na, so was!
thank you very much	'θæŋkju veri 'mʌtʃ	ich danke dir recht herzlich
relation	ri'leɪʃən	Verwandte(r)
glove	glʌv	Handschuh
to thank	θæŋk	danken
late	leɪt	spät
clever	'klevə	klug
how clever of you		wie klug von dir
each day	i:tʃ	jeder Tag
each day of the week	wɪk	jeder Tag der Woche
to remember	ri'membə	sich erinnern, daran denken
next time	'nekst 'taɪm	nächstes Mal
to bring		bringen

B. The Seasons and the Weather

season	'si:zn	Jahreszeit
weather	'weðə	Wetter
wet	wet	naß
grey	greɪ	grau
cloud	klaʊd	Wolke
sky	skai	Himmel
in the sky		am Himmel
to rain	rein	regnen
to snow	snəʊ	schneien
ice	ais	Eis
lake	leɪk	See
river	'rɪvə	Fluß
spring	spɪŋ	Frühjahr, Frühling
to become	bɪ'kʌm	werden
warm	wɔ:m	warm
warmer	'wɔ:mə	wärmer
plant	plɑ:nt	Pflanze
flower	'flaʊə	Blume
to grow	grəʊ	wachsen
hot	hɒt	heiß
heat	hi:t	Hitze
wave	weɪv	Welle
fine	fain	schön
dry	draɪ	trocken
sun	sʌn	Sonne
to shine	ʃaɪn	scheinen
hay	hei	Heu
autumn	'ɔ:təm	Herbst
calm	kɑ:m	ruhig
sunny	'sʌni	sonnig
rather	'rɑ:ðə	ziemlich
cool	ku:l	kühl
fruit	fru:t	Frucht, Obst, Früchte
corn	kɔ:n	Korn, Getreide
ripe	raɪp	reif
harvest	'hɑ:vɪst	Ernte
to bring in	'brɪŋ_ɪn	einbringen
before	bɪ'fɔ:	bevor
storm	stɔ:m	Sturm

〈Two Weather Rhymes〉

rhyme	raɪm	Reim, Vers
weather	'weðə	Wetterspruch, Bauernregel
rhyme	'raɪm	Bauernregel
wind	wɪnd	Wind

south wind	'sauθ 'wɪnd	Südwind
north wind	'nɔ:θ 'wɪnd	Nordwind
west wind	'west 'wɪnd	Westwind
rain	rein	Regen
east wind	'i:st 'wɪnd	Ostwind
to blow	bləʊ	blasen, wehen
shower	'ʃaʊə	Schauer, Guß
to bring forth	'brɪŋ 'fɔ:θ	hervorbringen

Exercises

2. cardinal numbers	'kɑ:dɪnl 'nʌmbəz	Grundzahlen
ordinal numbers	'ɔ:dɪnl	Ordnungszahlen
4. to count even number	kaʊnt 'i:vən	zählen gerade Zahl
odd number	ɒd	ungerade Zahl
backwards	'bækwɔ:dz	rückwärts
similar	'sɪmɪlə	ähnlich, gleich
5. time-table	'taɪmteɪbl	Fahrplan
Edinburgh	'edɪnbərə	(Hauptstadt von Schottland)
departure	dɪ'pɑ:tʃə	Abfahrt
arrival	ə'raɪvəl	Ankunft
Nottingham	'nɒtɪŋəm	(englische Städte auf der Strecke zwischen London und Edinburgh)
Chesterfield	'tʃɛstəfɪ:ld	
Sheffield	'ʃɛfɪ:ld	
Leeds	li:dz	
Carlisle	kɑ:'laɪl	
to arrive at	ə'raɪv_ɪ'æt	ankommen in
6. the days of the week		die Wochentage
7. month	mʌnθ	Monat
Christmas	'krɪsməs	Weihnachten
Easter	'i:stə	Ostern
8. date	deɪt	Datum
New Year's Day	'nju: 'jɜ:z 'deɪ	Neujahrstag
11. tram	træm	Straßenbahn
on foot	fʊt	zu Fuß
America	ə'merɪkə	Amerika
ship	ʃɪp	Schiff
plane	pleɪn	Flugzeug
England	'ɪŋɡlənd	England
12. play	pleɪ	Spiel, Theaterstück
scene	si:n	Szene

south wind	'sauθ 'wind	Südwind
north wind	'nɔ:θ 'wind	Nordwind
west wind	'west 'wind	Westwind
rain	rein	Regen
east wind	'i:st 'wind	Ostwind
to blow	bləu	blasen, wehen
shower	'ʃaʊə	Schauer, Guß
to bring forth	'brɪŋ 'fɔ:θ	hervorbringen

Exercises

2. cardinal numbers	'kɑ:dɪnl 'nʌmbəz	Grundzahlen
ordinal numbers	'ɔ:dɪnl	Ordnungszahlen
4. to count even number	kaunt 'i:vən	zählen gerade Zahl
odd number	əd	ungerade Zahl
backwards	'bækwədz	rückwärts
similar	'sɪmɪlə	ähnlich, gleich
5. time-table	'taɪmteɪbl	Fahrplan
Edinburgh	'edɪnbərə	(Hauptstadt von Schottland)
departure	dɪ'pɑ:tʃə	Abfahrt
arrival	ə'raɪvəl	Ankunft
Nottingham	'nɒtɪŋəmə	(englische Städte
Chesterfield	'tʃɛstəfɪ:ld	auf der Strecke
Sheffield	'ʃɛfɪ:ld	zwischen London
Leeds	li:dz	und Edinburgh)
Carlisle	kɑ:'laɪl	
to arrive at	ə'raɪv_æt	ankommen in
6. the days of the week		die Wochentage
7. month	mʌnθ	Monat
Christmas	'krɪsməs	Weihnachten
Easter	'i:stə	Ostern
8. date	deɪt	Datum
New Year's Day	'nju: 'jɔ:z 'deɪ	Neujahrstag
11. tram	træm	Straßenbahn
on foot	fʊt	zu Fuß
America	ə'merɪkə	Amerika
ship	ʃɪp	Schiff
plane	pleɪn	Flugzeug
England	'ɪŋɡlənd	England
12. play	pleɪ	Spiel,
		Theaterstück
scene	si:n	Szene

how are you	haʊ_ɑ: ju:	wie geht es Dir (Ihnen)?
I'm fine	aɪm 'faɪn	mir geht es gut
many happy returns of the day	ri'teɪnz	herzlichen Glückwunsch zum Geburtstag
to take off	'teɪk_ɔ:f	ausziehen, ablegen
to act	ækt	aufführen, spielen
13. to test	test	prüfen, testen
pronunciation	prənʌn-si'eɪʃən	Aussprache
to pronounce list	prə'naʊns list	aussprechen Liste

8 A. Prince

Prince	prɪns	Prinz (<i>hier: Hundename</i>)
to look like	laɪk	aussehen wie
Bolton	'bɔ:ltən	(<i>Familiennamen</i>)
blind	blaɪnd	blind
to look after	'lʊk_ɑ:ftə	sorgen für, sich kümmern um
to go shopping	'ʃɒpɪŋ	einkaufen, einkaufen gehen
basket	'bɑ:skɪt	Korb
shopping-list	'ʃɒpɪŋlɪst	Einkaufsliste
first	fɜ:st	zuerst
baker	'beɪkə	Bäcker
to the baker's		zur Bäckerei, zum Bäcker
loaf,	ləʊf,	Laib
pl. loaves	ləʊvz	
a loaf of bread	'ləʊf_əv 'bred	ein Laib Brot
to enter	'entə	betreten, eintreten in, hineingehen
grocer	'grəʊsə	Lebensmittelhändler
shop	ʃɒp	Laden, Geschäft
to enter the grocer's shop		in das Lebensmittelgeschäft hineingehen
pound	paʊnd	Pfund (<i>engl. Pfund = 453 g</i>)

packet	'pækɪt	Paket
salt	sɔ:l	Salz
tin	tin	Büchse
coffee	'kɒfi	Kaffee
biscuit	'bɪskɪt	Keks
bottle	'bɒtl	Flasche
lemonade	lemə'neɪd	Limonade
the butcher's	'bʊtʃəz	die Metzgerei, der Fleischerladen
butcher	'bʊtʃə	Fleischer, Metzger
bone	bəʊn	Knochen
shop-	'ʃɒp	Verkäufer, Ver-
assistant	ə'sɪstənt	käuferin
meat	mi:t	Fleisch
to wrap	ræp	einwickeln
poodle	'pu:dl	Pudel
to follow	'fɒləʊ	folgen
smell	smel	Geruch
soon	su:n	bald
at the corner	'kɔ:nə	an der Ecke
to stop	stɒp	anhalten, stehenbleiben
ready to	'redi tə	sprungbereit
jump	'dʒʌmp	
Grip	grɪp	(Hundename)
to hear	hiə	hören
master	'mɑ:stə	Meister, Herr
his master's		die Stimme
voice	vɔɪs	seines Herrn
to turn	'tɔ:n	sich umdrehen
round	'raʊnd	
chance	tʃɑ:ns	Chance, günstige Gelegenheit
wind	wɪnd	Wind
close	'kləʊs	dicht hinter ihm
behind him	bi'hɑɪnd	
terrible	'terəbl	schrecklich
at last	æt 'lɑ:st	endlich
the end	end	das Ende
to wait for	'weɪt 'fɔ:	warten auf
faithful	'feɪθfʊl	treu
well done	'wel 'dʌn	gut gemacht, bravo

B. The Village Shop

village	'vɪlɪdʒ	Dorf
miss	mis	Fräulein

Pringle	'prɪŋgl	(Familienname)
to sell	sel	verkaufen
everything	'evrɪθɪŋ	alles
to buy	baɪ	kaufen
price	praɪs	Preis
to pay	peɪ	bezahlen
change	tʃeɪndʒ	Wechselgeld
to chat	tʃæt	plaudern, sich unterhalten
she likes to		sie plaudert gern, unterhält sich
chat		gern
about	ə'baʊt	über, von
everybody	'evrɪbɒdi	jeder, jede
that (Konj.)	ðæt	daß
measles	'mi:zls	Masern
rich	rɪtʃ	reich
dead	ded	tot
money	'mʌni	Geld
bank	bæŋk	Bank
in the bank		auf der Bank
latest	'leɪtɪst	letzter, letzte
news	nju:z	Nachrichten, Neuigkeiten

<My Doggie>

doggie	'dɒgi	Hündchen
coat	kəʊt	hier: Fell
with spots	'spɒts_əv	mit schwarzen
of black	'blæk	Flecken
I take		ich nehme ihn
him out		mit nach draußen
'most	məʊst	fast jeden Tag
(almost)		
every day		
such fun		wir haben großen
we have		Spaß

Exercises

2. missing	'mɪsɪŋ	fehlend
meal	mi:l	Mahlzeit
3. before	bi'fɔ:	vor
5. genitive	'dʒenɪtɪv	Genitiv, Wesfall
7. to forget	fə'get	vergessen
you are		du bist draußen
'out'	aut	(,aus'), du scheidest aus

9 A. The Stomach of an Ox

stomach	'stʌmək	Magen
ox, pl. oxen	ɒks, 'ɒksən	Ochse
plum-tree	'plʌmtri:	Pflaumenbaum
plum	plʌm	Pflaume
to shake	feɪk	schütteln
a few	fju:	einige
ground	graʊnd	Grund, Boden, Erde
to fall to the	fɔ:l	auf den Boden
ground		fallen
story	'stɔ:ri	Geschichte, Märchen
unripe	'ʌn'raɪp	unreif
cream cake	'kri:m 'keɪk	Sahnetörtchen
to pass	pɑ:s	reichen, geben
to pay		achtgeben auf
attention to	ə'tenʃən	
face	feɪs	Gesicht
quite	kwaɪt	ganz
stomach-	'stʌmək_eɪk	Bauchschmerzen,
ache		Bauchweh
to have a		Bauchweh haben
stomach-		
ache		
to feel	fi:l	fühlen, sich fühlen
I feel sick	sɪk	mir ist schlecht
doctor	'dɒktə	Doktor, Arzt
hot-water	hɒt'wɔ:tə	Wärmflasche
bottle	'bɒtl	
when	wen	als
temperature	'temprɪtʃə	Fieber
to have a		Fieber haben
temperature		
to take to	teɪk	führen in
to let	let	lassen
pulse	pʌls	Puls
normal	'nɔ:məl	normal
tongue	tʌŋ	Zunge
in order	'ɔ:də	in Ordnung
prescription'	pri'skrɪpʃən	Rezept
a spoonful	'spu:nfʊl	ein Löffel voll
medicine	'medsɪn	Medizin
tonight	tə'nɑɪt	heute abend
tomorrow	tə'mɔ:rəʊ	morgen
tomorrow	tə'mɔ:rəʊ	morgen früh
morning	'mɔ:niŋ	

A. The Stomach of an Ox

stomach	'stʌmək	Magen
ox, pl. oxen	ɒks, 'ɒksən	Ochse
plum-tree	'plʌmtri:	Pflaumenbaum
plum	plʌm	Pflaume
to shake	ʃeɪk	schütteln
a few	fju:	einige
ground	graʊnd	Grund, Boden, Erde
to fall to the ground	fə:l	auf den Boden fallen
story	'stɔ:ri	Geschichte, Märchen
unripe	'ʌn'raɪp	unreif
cream cake	'kri:m 'keɪk	Sahnetörtchen
to pass	pɑ:s	reichen, geben
to pay attention to	ə'tenʃən	achtgeben auf
face	feɪs	Gesicht
quite	kwaɪt	ganz
stomach- ache	'stʌmək_eɪk	Bauchschmerzen, Bauchweh
to have a stomach- ache		Bauchweh haben
to feel	fi:l	fühlen, sich fühlen
I feel sick	sɪk	mir ist schlecht
doctor	'dɒktə	Doktor, Arzt
hot-water bottle	hɒt'wɔ:tə 'bɒtl	Wärmflasche
when	wen	als
temperature	'temprɪtʃə	Fieber
to have a temperature		Fieber haben
to take to	teɪk	führen in
to let	let	lassen
pulse	pʌls	Puls
normal	'nɔ:məl	normal
tongue	tʌŋ	Zunge
in order	'ɔ:də	in Ordnung
prescription	pri'skrɪpʃən	Rezept
a spoonful	'spu:nfʊl	ein Löffel voll
medicine	'medsɪn	Medizin
tonight	tə'nait	heute abend
tomorrow	tə'mɔ:rəʊ	morgen
tomorrow morning	tə'mɔ:rəʊ 'mɔ:nɪŋ	morgen früh

serious	'siəriəs	ernst, ernsthaft
sad	sæd	traurig, nieder- geschlagen, betrübt
while	wail	Weile, Zeit
after a while	'ɑ:ftər_ə 'wail	nach einer Weile, nach kurzer Zeit
into	'ɪntu	in
bedside table	'bedsaɪd 'teɪbl	Nachttisch

〈B. Conversation: How Are You?〉

conversation	kɒnvə'seɪʃən	Unterhaltung, Gespräch
how are you?	hau 'ɑ: ju:	wie geht es Dir? wie geht es Ihnen?
I am very well	'veri 'wel	mir geht es sehr gut
I am feeling fine	'fi:lɪŋ 'faɪn	ich fühle mich ausgezeichnet
pale	peɪl	blaß
headache	'hedeɪk	Kopfschmerzen
cough	kɒf	Husten
a bad cough	'bæd 'kɒf	ein starker Husten
to think	θɪŋk	denken
flu	flu:	Grippe
you must see the doctor	'dɒktə	du mußt (Sie müssen) den Arzt aufsuchen
three times	taimz	dreimal
three times a day		dreimal am Tag
better	'betə	besser
pill	pɪl	Pille, Tablette

〈Round: Row, row, row your Boat〉

round	raʊnd	Kanon
to row	rəʊ	rudern
boat	bəʊt	Boot, Schiff
gently (Adv.)	'dʒentli	ruhig
stream	stri:m	Bach, Strom
merrily (Adv.)	'merɪli	lustig, fröhlich
but	bʌt	nur
dream	dri:m	Traum

Exercises

7. complete	kəm'pli:t	vollständig
8. in bold	'bould	in Fettdruck
type	'taip	
grand-	'græn-	Großeltern
parents	'peərənts	
10. com-	'kɒmpaund	Zusammen-
pound		setzung,
		Kompositum
11. dialogue	'daɪələg	Dialog,
		Zwiesgespräch
12. to rhyme	raim	sich reimen
the left	left	der, die, das linke
the right	rait	der, die, das
		rechte
difficult	'dɪfɪkəlt	schwierig

10 A. The Soap-box Race

soap	səʊp	Seife
soap-box	'səʊpbɒks	Seifenkiste
race	reɪs	Rennen, Wett-
		rennen
soap-box		Seifenkisten-
race		rennen
exciting	ɪk'saɪtɪŋ	aufregend
town	taʊn	Stadt
prize	praɪz	(Sieges-)Preis
driver	'draɪvə	Fahrer
ready	'redi	hier: startbereit
castle	'kɑ:sl	Schloß, Burg
hill	hɪl	Hügel, Berg
Castle Hill	'kɑ:sl 'hɪl	Schloßberg
Jim	dʒɪm	(Kurzform für James = Jakob)
Davis	'deɪvɪs	(Familienname)
among them	ə'mʌŋ	zwischen, unter ihnen
for the		zum erstenmal
first time		
Bolt	bəʊlt	(Familienname)
winner	'wɪnə	Gewinner, Sieger
the winner		der Sieger vom
last year		letzten Jahr
than	ðæn	als
cheap	tʃi:p	billig
heavy	'hevi	schwer
expensive	ɪks'pensɪv	teuer

to expect	ɪks'pekt	erwarten
to win	wɪn	gewinnen
to be in the		am Rennen
race	reɪs	teilnehmen
ready —	'redi,	auf die Plätze —
steady — go	'stedi	fertig — los!
starter	'stɑ:tə	Starter (Signal-
		geber zum Start)
to start	stɑ:t	starten,
		losfahren
steep	sti:p	steil
part	pɑ:t	Teil
at the		am unteren
bottom	'bɒtəm	Ende; unten
(race)		Rennbahn
course	kɔ:s	
narrow	'nærəʊ	eng, schmal
right	raɪt	rechts
to turn right	tɔ:n	nach rechts ab-
		biegen
pond	pɒnd	Teich
winning-post	'wɪnɪŋpəʊst	Ziel
to lead	li:d	führen
of course	əv'kɔ:s	natürlich, selbst-
		verständlich
far	fɑ:	weit
light	laɪt	leicht
to go	gəʊ	hier: fahren,
		laufen
fast	fɑ:st	schnell
spectator	spek'teɪtə	Zuschauer
yard	jɑ:d	Yard (ca. 90 cm)
come on!	'kʌm_ʊn	los!
to look	'lʊk	sich umsehen,
round	'raʊnd	sich umschauen
to be		Angst haben vor
afraid of	ə'freɪd_əv	
to catch	kætʃ	fangen, einholen
to forget	fə'get	vergessen
look out	'lʊk_ʊt	paß auf! Vor-
		sicht!
splash!	splæʃ	platsch!
to drive	draɪv	fahren
straight	streɪt	geradewegs,
		geradeaus
no one	'nəʊ wʌn	niemand
(= nobody)		
Bill himself	hɪm'self	Bill selber
quick	kwɪk	schnell

lightning	'laɪtnɪŋ	Blitz
as quick as		blitzschnell
lightning		
to cheer	tʃiə	jubeln
to receive	rɪ'si:v	erhalten
camera	'kæmərə	Fotoapparat
disappointed	dɪsə'pɔɪntɪd	enttäuscht

<B. Sport>

sport	spɔ:t	Sport
both	bəʊθ	beide
keen on	ki:n	interessiert an,
		begeistert für
to hope	həʊp	hoffen
team	ti:m	Mannschaft,
		Gruppe
hockey	'hɒki	Hockey
already	ɔ:l'reɪdi	schon
quite a good		ein ganz guter
diver	'daɪvə	Taucher,
		Kunstspringer
swimming-	'swɪmɪŋpu:l	Schwimmbad
pool		
once	wʌns	einmal
once a year	'wʌns_ə 'jɜ:	einmal im Jahr
sports day	'spɔ:ts 'deɪ	Sportfest
they are		sie werden ein-
divided	dɪ'vaɪdɪd	geteilt
jumper	'dʒʌmpə	Springer
to train	treɪn	trainieren
to assemble	ə'sembl	sich versammeln
playing-field	'pleɪɪŋfi:ld	Sportplatz
sprint	sprɪnt	Kurzstrecken-
		lauf
distance	'dɪstəns	Entfernung

Revision: Do you remember these?

Jack is spending his holidays in the country.
Jane does her homework in the evening.
There are no clouds in the sky.
Don't play football in the street.
There is no stamp on the letter.
There are some pictures on the walls.
Shirley has a nice skirt on.

lightning	'laɪtnɪŋ	Blitz
as quick as lightning		blitzschnell
to cheer	tʃiə	jubeln
to receive	ri'si:v	erhalten
camera	'kæməɹə	Fotoapparat
disappointed	disə'pɔɪntɪd	enttäuscht
<B. Sport>		
sport	spɔ:t	Sport
both	bəʊθ	beide
keen on	ki:n	interessiert an, begeistert für
to hope	həʊp	hoffen
team	ti:m	Mannschaft, Gruppe
hockey	'hɒki	Hockey
already	ɔ:l'redi	schon
quite a good diver	'daɪvə	ein ganz guter Taucher, Kunstspringer
swimming-pool	'swɪmɪŋpu:l	Schwimmbad
once	wɒns	einmal
once a year	'wɒns_ə 'jɜ:	einmal im Jahr
sports day	'spɔ:ts 'deɪ	Sportfest
they are divided	di'vaɪdɪd	sie werden ein- geteilt
jumper	'dʒʌmpə	Springer
to train	treɪn	trainieren
to assemble	ə'sembl	sich versammeln
playing-field	'pleɪɪŋfi:ld	Sportplatz
sprint	sprɪnt	Kurzstrecken- lauf
distance	'dɪstəns	Entfernung

long-distance race	lɒŋ'dɪstəns 'reɪs	Langstrecken- lauf
relay race	'ri:lei 'reɪs	Staffellauf
event	i'vent	Ereignis, <i>hier:</i> sportliche Ver- anstaltung
at the end		zum Schluß, am Ende
headmaster	'hed'mɑ:stə	Direktor
cup	kʌp	<i>hier:</i> Pokal
medal	'medl	Medaille, Ehrenplakette
Exercises		
2. to compare	kəm'pəə	steigern, ver- gleichen
adjective	'ædʒɪktɪv	Adjektiv, Eigen- schaftswort
3. comparison	kəm'pærɪsn	Steigerung, Vergleich
6. dictation	dɪk'teɪʃən	Diktat
the whole class	həʊl	die ganze Klasse
7. foot, feet	fʊt, fi:t	Fuß, Füße
hobby	'hɒbi	Hobby, Stecken- pferd
9. to believe	bi'li:v	trauen
to measure	'meʒə	messen
triangle	'traɪæŋɡl	Dreieck
side	sɑɪd	Seite
equal	'i:kwəl	gleich [wärts
11. up	ʌp	auf, hinauf, auf-
past the . . .	pɑ:st	an . . . vorbei
revision	ri'vɪʒən	Revision, Wiederholung

Revision: Do you remember these prepositions?

Jack is spending his holidays **in** the country.

Jane does her homework **in** the evening.

There are no clouds **in** the sky.

Don't play football **in** the street.

There is no stamp **on** the letter.

There are some pictures **on** the walls.

Shirley has a nice skirt **on**.

Jack verbringt seine Ferien auf dem Lande.

Jane macht ihre Hausaufgaben abends.

Es sind keine Wolken am Himmel.

Spielt nicht auf der Straße Fußball.

Auf dem Brief ist keine Briefmarke.

An den Wänden sind einige Bilder.

Shirley hat einen hübschen Rock an.

We have no school **on** Saturdays.
The bus stops **in front of** the school.
The bicycles are **behind** the school.

I do my homework **before** supper and
play **after** supper.

School begins **at** 9 o'clock.
The guests arrive **at** Grandfather's
house.

He is looking **at** his watch.
Mother is not **at** home.

Open your books **at** page 12.
We have lunch **at** school.

There is a pond **at the bottom** of the hill.
The drivers start **at the top** of the hill.

The dog is running **round** the tree.
The teacher looks **round** the room.

She puts her scarf **round** her head.

Samstags haben wir keine Schule.
Der Omnibus hält vor der Schule.
Die Fahrräder stehen (= sind) hinter der
Schule.

Ich mache meine Hausaufgaben vor dem
Abendessen und spiele nach dem
Abendessen.

Die Schule beginnt um 9 Uhr.
Die Gäste kommen bei Großvater an.

Er sieht auf seine Uhr.
Mutter ist nicht zu Hause.

Schlagt eure Bücher auf Seite 12 auf.
Wir essen in der Schule Mittag.

Unten am Hügel ist ein Teich.
Die Fahrer starten oben auf dem Hügel.

Der Hund rennt um den Baum herum.
Der Lehrer sieht sich im Zimmer um.
Sie bindet sich den Schal um den Kopf.

he said	sed	er sagte
accident	'æksidənt	Unfall
to reply	ri'plai	antworten, erwidern
slow	sləu	langsam
in less than	les	in weniger als
driving - mirror	'draiviŋ mirə	Rückspiegel
to recognize	'rekəgnaiz	erkennen
Robby	'rɒbi	(Name des Diebes)
Longfingers	'lɒŋfɪŋgəz	sie waren hinter ihm her
they were after him		voll davon
full of it		rasen
to race	reis	Geschwindigkeit mit Höchst-
speed	spi:d	geschwindigkeit
at top speed	'tɒp 'spi:d	an den roten Verkehrssampeln vorbeifahren
to pass the red traffic lights	pa:s	anziehen, auf sich ziehen
to attract	ə'trækt	Aufmerksamkeit
attention	ə'tenʃən	weiterrasen
to race on	'reis_ɔn	aus ... (heraus)
out of	'aʊt_ɔv	he! hallo!
hey!	hei	Fahrgeld
fare	fəə	in diesem
at that moment	'məʊmənt	Augenblick
to return	ri'tə:n	zurückkehren
to be under arrest	ə'rest	verhaftet sein
to escape	is'keip	entlaufen, aus- brechen

<B. Conversation: English Traffic>

conversation	kɒnvə'seɪʃən	Unterhaltung, Gespräch
ride	raid	Spazierfahrt
to take somebody for a ride		jd.n. zu einer Spazierfahrt mitnehmen
left	left	links
on the left		auf der linken Seite
rule of the road	'ru:l_ɔv ðə 'rəʊd	Verkehrsregel

11 A. Dangerous Driving

dangerous	'deɪndʒrəs	gefährlich
dangerous driving	'draiviŋ	gefährliche Fahrt
last summer	'lɑ:st 'sʌmə	im letzten Sommer
Honk	hɒŋk	(Familienname)
taxi	'tæksi	Taxe
he had	həd	er hatte
adventure	əd'ventʃə	Abenteurer
through	θru:	durch
busy	'bɪzi	geschäftig, flei- Big, hier: lebhaft
traffic	'træfɪk	Verkehr
even	'i:vən	sogar
lorry	'lɒri	Lastwagen
to block	blɒk	blockieren, versperren
stand	stænd	Stand
it was	wəz, wɔz	es war
Scotland	'skɒtlənd	(Zentrale der Londoner Krimi- nalpolizei)
Yard	'jɑ:d	
police	pə'li:s	Polizei
headquarters	'hed'kwɔ:təz	Hauptquartier

Victoria Station	vik'tɔ:riə 'steɪʃən	(Bahnhof in London)
station	'steɪʃən	Bahnhof
to catch the train	'kætʃ ðə 'treɪn	den Zug erreichen
boat	bəʊt	Schiff
boat train	'bəʊt 'treɪn	(Zug zwischen London und einem der eng- lischen Häfen)
he did his best		er tat sein möglichstes
they were	wə:	sie waren
there were		es gab
light	laɪt	Licht
traffic light	'træfɪk laɪt	Verkehrssampel
crossing	'krɒsɪŋ	Kreuzung
at a crossing		an einer Kreuzung
policeman	pə'li:smən	Polizist
middle	'mɪdl	Mitte
to lift	lɪft	hochheben
pedestrian	pi'destriən	Fußgänger
to pass	pɑ:s	vorbeigehen, vor- übergehen, vorbeifahren

he said	sed	er sagte
accident	'æksɪdənt	Unfall
to reply	ri'plai	antworten, erwidern
slow	sləu	langsam
in less than	les	in weniger als
driving-mirror	'draɪvɪŋ mɪrə	Rückspiegel
to recognize	'rekəɡnaɪz	erkennen
Robby	'rɒbi	(Name des Diebes)
Longfingers	'lɒŋfɪŋɡəz	
they were after him		sie waren hinter ihm her
full of it		voll davon
to race	reis	rasen
speed	spi:d	Geschwindigkeit
at top speed	'tɒp 'spi:d	mit Höchstgeschwindigkeit
to pass the red traffic lights	pa:s	an den roten Verkehrsampeln vorbeifahren
to attract	ə'trækt	anziehen, auf sich ziehen
attention	ə'tenʃən	Aufmerksamkeit
to race on	'reis_ɒn	weiterrasen
out of	'aʊt_əv	aus ... (heraus)
hey!	hei	he! hallo!
fare	fɛə	Fahrgeld
at that moment	'məʊmənt	in diesem Augenblick
to return	ri'tɜ:n	zurückkehren
to be under arrest	ə'rest	verhaftet sein
to escape	is'keɪp	entlaufen, ausbrechen

<B. Conversation: English Traffic>

conversation	kɒnvə'seɪʃən	Unterhaltung, Gespräch
ride	raɪd	Spazierfahrt
to take somebody for a ride		jdn. zu einer Spazierfahrt mitnehmen
left	left	links
on the left		auf der linken Seite
rule of the road	'ru:l_əv ðə 'rəʊd	Verkehrsregel

sign	sain	Zeichen
to mean	mi:n	bedeuten
m.p.h. = mile per hour	'maɪl pə 'aʊə	Meile (etwa 1,6 km) in der Stunde
limit	'lɪmɪt	Grenze, Begrenzung
speed limit	'spi:d'lɪmɪt	Geschwindigkeitsbegrenzung
is	ɪz	hier: gilt
main	meɪn	Haupt-
to a main road	'meɪn 'rəʊd	an eine Hauptstraße
to halt	hɔ:lt	anhalten
major road	'meɪdʒə 'rəʊd	Vorfahrtstraße,
ahead	ə'hed	Hauptverkehrsstraße gerade vor Ihnen, auf Vorfahrt achten
right of way	'raɪt_əv 'wei	Vorfahrtsrecht
clear	kliə	hier: frei
careful	'keəfʊl	vorsichtig
to end	end	enden

Exercises

1. report	ri'pɔ:t	Bericht
2. tense	tens	Zeitform
past tense form	'pɑ:st 'tens fɔ:m	Imperfekt Form
verb	və:b	Verb
3. text	tekst	Text
6. to fill in	'fɪl_ɪn	ausfüllen
blank	blæŋk	Lücke
a week ago	ə'gəʊ	vor einer Woche
tall	tɔ:l	groß, lang
7. yesterday	'jestədi	gestern
at the beginning	bɪ'ɡɪnɪŋ	an den Anfang
8. negative	'negətɪv	verneint
11. to talk about	'tɔ:k_ə'baut	sprechen über, von
person	'pɜ:sn	Person
foreground	'fɔ:graʊnd	Vordergrund
background	'bækgraʊnd	Hintergrund
on the left	left	auf der linken Seite
on the right	raɪt	auf der rechten Seite

12. to test	test	prüfen
spelling	'speliŋ	Rechtschreibung
pronunciation	prənʌn- si'eɪʃən	Aussprache

12 A. The Pedlar's Dream

pedlar	'pedlə	Hausierer
dream	dri:m	Traum
Swaffham	'swɒfəm	(Name eines Dorfes)
once	wʌns	einmal
he sold	səuld	er verkaufte
goods	gudz	Waren
he came	keɪm	er kam
wife,	waɪf,	Ehefrau
pl. wives	waɪvz	
to dream	dri:m	träumen
I dreamt	dremt	ich träumte
night	naɪt	Nacht
I heard	hə:d	ich hörte
London	'lʌndən	(Name einer
Bridge	'brɪdʒ	Brücke über die Themse in London)
mad	mæd	verrückt
hunger	hʌŋgə	Hunger
mad with		verrückt vor
hunger		Hunger
some	səm	etwas, einige
cupboard	'kʌbəd	Schrank
any	'eni	etwas (irgendwelcher, -welche, -welches)
palace	'pælis	Palast
church	tʃɜ:tʃ	Kirche
but	bʌt	aber, sondern
he went	went	er ging
he stood	stʊd	er stand
not . . . any		kein, keine
he found	faʊnd	er fand
place	pleɪs	Platz
to sleep	sli:p	schlafen
he slept	slept	er schlief
doorstep	'dɔ:step	Türschwelle
to awake	ə'weɪk	aufwachen
he awoke	ə'wəʊk	er wachte auf
nobody	'nəʊbədi	niemand

to speak to	spi:k	sprechen mit
he spoke	spəʊk	er sprach
thus	ðʌs	so, auf diese Weise
he spent	spent	er verbrachte
to think	θɪŋk	denken
he thought	θɔ:t	er dachte
bitter	'bitə	bitter
shopkeeper	'ʃɒpkɪ:pə	Ladenbesitzer
just a	'dʒʌst_ə	einen Augenblick, bitte
minute	'mɪnɪt	mein Herr
sir	sə:	(höfliche Anrede)

not . . .		niemand
anybody	'eni:bədi	
because of	bi'kɔ:z_əv	wegen
also	'ɔ:lsoʊ	auch
never	'nevə	nie, niemals
to dig	dɪg	graben
he dug	dʌg	er grub
wise	waɪz	weise, klug
for that		dafür, dazu
fool	fu:l	Narr
like you		wie du
he could	kʊd	er konnte
tired	'taɪəd	müde
food	fu:d	Esswaren, Lebensmittel
he took	tʊk	er nahm
spade	speɪd	Spaten
he began	bi'gæn	er begann
gold	gəʊld	Gold
true	tru:	wahr
to come true		wahr werden, sich erfüllen
so	səʊ	so

B. Conversation: Can You Tell Me the Way?

conversation	kɒnvə'seɪʃən	Unterhaltung, Gespräch
way	wei	Weg
to tell the way to . . .		den Weg nach . . . sagen
he told	təʊld	er sagte, erzählte
stranger	'streɪndʒə	Fremder

excuse me	ɪks'kju:z	Entschuldigung, Verzeihung, entschuldigen Sie
constable	'kɒnstəbl	Herr Wachtmeister
turning	'tɜ:nɪŋ	Straßenecke, Straße
to keep	'ki:p	geradeaus gehen
straight on	streɪt_ɔn	
about	ə'baʊt	ungefähr, fast
number	'nʌmbə	Nummer
the number 35 bus		der Bus Nr. 35
over	'əʊvə	über
Underground	'ʌndəgraʊnd	Untergrundbahn
thank you		ich danke Ihnen
so much		sehr

⟨London Bridge⟩

to fall down	'fɔ:l 'daʊn	einfallen, einstürzen
lady	'leɪdi	Dame
fair	feə	hübsch, schön
fair lady		schöne Dame

⟨London Town⟩

across	ə'krɒs	quer durch
down	daʊn	Hügel, Hügelland
ridge	ɹɪdʒ	Rücken, Grat

Revision: Do you remember these?

What is your name?
 What is your time-table?
 What's the matter with you?
 I am sorry.
 I feel sick.
 I am afraid of the dog.
 Look out!
 What a bore!
 What's the time by your watch?
 I must go shopping.
 Keep straight on.
 Thank you so much.
 Are there any questions?

excuse me	iks'kju:z	Entschuldigung, Verzeihung, entschuldigen Sie
constable	'kanstəbl	Herr Wachtmeister
turning	'tə:niŋ	Straßenecke, Straße
to keep straight on	'ki:p streit_ʊn	geradeaus gehen
about	ə'baʊt	ungefähr, fast
number	'nʌmbə	Nummer
the number 35 bus		der Bus Nr. 35
over	'əʊvə	über
Underground	'ʌndəgraʊnd	Untergrundbahn
thank you so much		ich danke Ihnen sehr

<London Bridge>

to fall down	'fɔ:l 'daʊn	einfallen, einstürzen
lady	'leɪdi	Dame
fair	fɛə	hübsch, schön
fair lady		schöne Dame

<London Town>

across	ə'krɒs	quer durch
down	daʊn	Hügel, Hügelland
ridge	ri:dʒ	Rücken, Grat

what shall I see	ʃæl	was werde ich sehen
building	'bɪldɪŋ	Gebäude
many a building		viele Gebäude, so manches Gebäude
broad	brɔ:d	breit
imposing	im'pəʊzɪŋ	imponierend, gewaltig
you'll see	ju:l 'si:	du wirst sehen
certainly	'sɜ:tɪnli	sicherlich
onward	'ɒnwəd	vorwärts, weiter

Exercises

1. at night	nait	bei Nacht, nachts
4. lesson	'lesn	Lektion
5. to come	'kʌm	besuchen
to see	tə 'si:	kommen
to act	ækt	aufführen, spielen
dialogue	'daɪəlɒg	Dialog, Zwiegespräch
6. statement	'steɪtmənt	Aussage
7. to go	'gəʊ	besuchen gehen
and see	ən 'si:	
to happen	'hæpən	sich ereignen, geschehen
idiomatic expression	idiə'mætɪk iks'prefən	idiomatischer Ausdruck

Revision: Do you remember these idiomatic expressions?

What is your name?
 What is your time-table?
 What's the matter with you?
 I am sorry.
 I feel sick.
 I am afraid of the dog.
 Look out!
 What a bore!
 What's the time by your watch?
 I must go shopping.
 Keep straight on.
 Thank you so much.
 Are there any questions?

Wie heißt du?
 Was für einen Stundenplan hast du?
 Was ist los mit dir?
 Es tut mir leid.
 Mir ist schlecht.
 Ich habe Angst vor dem Hund.
 Paß auf! Vorsicht!
 So was Langweiliges!
 Wie spät ist es nach deiner Uhr?
 Ich muß einkaufen gehen.
 Geh geradeaus.
 Ich danke dir (Ihnen) sehr.
 Gibt es irgendwelche Fragen?

13 A. First Aid in a Train

aid	eid	Hilfe
platform	'plætfɔ:m	Plattform, Bahnsteig
number five	'nʌmbə	Bahnsteig Nr. 5
platform		
Paddington	'pædɪŋtən	(Bahnhof in
Station	'steɪʃən	London)
over	'əʊvə	über, vorüber
boarding	'bɔ:diŋsku:l	Internat
school		
term	tə:m	Trimester, Tertial
Tom	tɒm	(Kurzform für Thomas)
com-	kəm-	Abteil
partment	'pɑ:tmənt	
to leave	'li:v	von zu Hause
home	'həʊm	weggehen, fort- fahren
he left	left	er ging weg
to look up at	'lʊk_ʼʌp_ət	zu jdm. hoch-
somebody	'sʌmbədi	sehen
darling	'dɑ:liŋ	Liebling
to blush	blʌʃ	erröten, rot werden
to close	kləʊz	schließen, zu- machen
he sat down	'sæt 'daʊn	er setzte sich (hin)
after all		schließlich
opposite	'ɒpəzɪt	gegenüber
schoolgirl	'sku:lɡɜ:l	Schülerin
fair	fɛə	blond
dark	dɑ:k	dunkel
fair-haired	'fɛəhɛəd	blond(haarig)
to whisper	'wɪʃpə	flüstern
both	bəʊθ	beide
to laugh at	'lɑ:f_ət	über jdn. lachen, jdn. auslachen
somebody		
he got up		er stand auf
out	aut	heraus, hinaus
he put his		hier: er streckte
head out		seinen Kopf hinaus
to tear	tɛə	reißen, zerren
the wind tore	tɔ:	der Wind riß
off	ɔ:f	fort, weg

rough	rʌf	rauh, grob,
dirt	dɜ:t	Schmutz
it flew	flu:	es flog
while (Konj.)	wail	während
tear	tiə	Träne
to roll	rəʊl	rollen
cheek	tʃi:k	Wange
he put it		hier: er drückte es
against	ə'genst	gegen
dark-haired	'dɑ:khɛəd	dunkelhaarig
chocolate	'tʃɒkəlɪt	Schokolade, Praline
have a		nimm doch eine
chocolate		Praline!
Girl Guide	'gɜ:l 'gaid	Pfadfinderin
to travel	'trævl	reisen
line	laɪn	Eisenbahnlinie, Strecke
six times	'sɪks 'taɪmz	sechsmal
six times		sechsmal im Jahr
a year		
ticket	'tɪkɪt	Fahrkarte
ticket	'tɪkɪt	Schaffner
collector	kə'lektə	
he saw	sə:	er sah
youngster,	'jʌŋstə	junger Mensch,
youngsters		junge Leute
suitcase	'sju:tkeɪs	Koffer

<B. Conversation: At the Ticket-office>

ticket-office	'tɪkɪtɔ:fɪs	Fahrkarten- schalter
passenger	'pæsɪndʒə	Fahrgast, Reisende(r)
clerk	klɑ:k	(Büro-)Angestell- ter
booking-		Fahrkarten-
clerk	'bʊkɪŋklɑ:k	verkäufer
single	'sɪŋgl	einfach
return	ri'tɜ:n	Rückfahrkarte
(ticket)		
to change	tʃeɪndʒ	umsteigen
dining-car	'daɪnɪŋkɑ:	Speisewagen
Is there a		Hat der Zug einen
dining-car		Speisewagen?
on that		
train?		
porter	'pɔ:tə	Gepäckträger

to take	teɪk	bringen
luggage	'lʌdʒz	Gepäck
the London	'lʌndən	der Zug nach
train	'treɪn	London
right = all		geht in Ordnung!
right	raɪt	

<A Silly Answer>

where to?	'weə'tu:	wohin?
here	hɪə	hierher, nach hier

<Tongue-twister>

tongue-	'tʌŋ twɪstə	Zungenbrecher
twister		
Betty	'betɪ	(Kurzform für Elizabeth)
Botter	'bɒtə	(Familienname)
batter	'bætə	Kuchenteig
it will make	wɪl meɪk	es wird machen
it made	meɪd	es machte

Exercises

2. alone	ə'ləʊn	allein
3. to like	'laɪk	am liebsten
best	'best	haben

Vocabulary Revision

- at a crossing
- at five o'clock
- at school
- at home
- at page 12
- at the bottom
- at that moment
- at the Bartons'
- at the beginning
- at the corner
- at top speed
- at last
- at least
- at once
- to laugh at somebody
- to look up at somebody
- she looks at her watch

to take	teik	bringen
luggage	'lʌgɪdʒ	Gepäck
the London train	'lʌndən 'treɪn	der Zug nach London
right = all right	'raɪt	geht in Ordnung!

<A Silly Answer>

where to?	'wɛə'tu:	wohin?
here	hiə	hierher, nach hier

<Tongue-twister>

tongue-twister	'tʌŋ twɪstə	Zungenbrecher
Betty	'beti	(Kurzform für Elizabeth)
Botter	'bɒtə	(Familiennamen)
batter	'bætə	Kuchenteig
it will make	wɪl meɪk	es wird machen
it made	meɪd	es machte

Exercises

2. alone	ə'ləʊn	allein
3. to like	'laɪk	am liebsten
best	'best	haben

history	'hɪstəri	Geschichte
Bedford	'bedfəd	(Stadt in Mittel-England)
4. in this way		auf diese Art und Weise
5. geography	dʒɪ'ɒɡrəfi	Erdkunde
6. to fit	fit	passen, sich eignen
seldom	'seldəm	selten
already	ɔ:l'reɪdi	schon
he wrote	rəʊt	er schrieb
7. he is missing	'mɪsɪŋ	er fehlt
bracket	'brækɪt	Klammer (im Text)
dining-hall	'daɪnɪŋhɔ:l	Speisesaal
the day before yesterday	'deɪ bɪ'fɔ: 'jestədi	vorgestern
love	lʌv	liebe Grüße
9. word-formation	'wɜ:d- fɔ:'meɪʃən	Wortbildung
opposite	'ɒpəzɪt	Gegenteil, Gegensatz
<hr/>		
rain	reɪn	Regen
vocabulary	və'kæbjʊləri	Wortschatz

Vocabulary Revision

at a crossing	an einer Kreuzung
at five o'clock	um fünf Uhr
at school	in der Schule
at home	zu Hause
at page 12	auf Seite 12
at the bottom	am unteren Ende, unten
at that moment	in diesem Augenblick
at the Bartons'	bei Bartons
at the beginning	am Anfang
at the corner	an der Ecke
at top speed	mit Höchstgeschwindigkeit
at last	schließlich, endlich
at least	wenigstens
at once	sofort
to laugh at somebody	über jemanden lachen
to look up at somebody	zu jemandem hochsehen
she looks at her watch	sie sieht auf ihre Uhr

14 A. "X" for Danger

danger	'deɪndʒə	Gefahr
Peter	'pi:tə	Peter
test	test	Prüfung
he took the test	tuk	er machte die Prüfung
(Boy) Scout badge	skaut bædʒ	Pfadfinder Abzeichen
Jackson	'dʒæksn	(<i>Familiennamen</i>)
scoutmaster	'skautmɑ:stə	Gruppenführer der Pfadfinder
difficult	'dɪfɪkəlt	schwierig
sign	sain	Zeichen
crossed	krɒst	gekreuzt
stick	stɪk	Stock, Stab
pencil	'pensl	Bleistift
he laid	leid	er legte
cross	krɒs	Kreuz
unexpected	'ʌnɪks'pektɪd	unerwartet
she was on her way home		sie war auf dem Heimweg
post-office	'pəʊstəfɪs	Postamt
to work	wɜ:k	arbeiten
curious	'kjʊəriəs	neugierig
to point to	'pɔɪnt 'tu:	zeigen auf
to need	ni:d	benötigen, brauchen
in a friendly way	'frendli	freundlich, auf freundliche Art
simple	'sɪmpl	einfach
heartly	'hɑ:ti	herzlich, herzlich
closing-time	'kləʊzɪŋ-taɪm	Geschäfts-, Schalterschluss
one	wʌn	einer, eine, ein
silent	'saɪlənt	still, schweigend, stumm
to talk to	'tɔ:k 'tu:	sprechen mit
pale	peɪl	blaß
worried	'wɒrɪd	beunruhigt, besorgt
she gave	geɪv	sie gab
he saw	sə:	er sah
careful	'keəfʊl	sorgfältig
to understand	ʌndə'stænd	verstehen
he understood	ʌndə'stʊd	er verstand
immediately	i'mi:djətli	sofort
anxious	'æŋkʃəs	ängstlich, besorgt

she shook	fʊk	sie schüttelte
to turn	tə:n	sich umdrehen, umkehren
he left	left	er verließ
obvious	'ɒbvɪəs	offensichtlich
police car	pə'li:s kɑ:	Polizeistreife, Streifenwagen
to tell about	'tel ə'baut	erzählen von, sprechen über
they ran	ræn	sie rannten
to contain	kən'teɪn	enthalten
£ = pound	paʊnd	Pfund (<i>Sterling</i>) (£ = ca. 8,20 DM)
bank-note	'bæŋknəʊt	Banknote, Geldschein
police inspector	pə'li:s ɪnspektə	Polizei-kommissar
to rob	rɒb	ausplündern, berauben
to order	'ɔ:də	befehlen
to serve	sə:v	dienen, bedienen
without	wɪ'ðaʊt	ohne
lucky	'lʌki	glücklich
it was lucky	'lʌki	es war ein Glück
I knew	nju:	ich kannte, ich wußte
to keep	ki:p	halten
he kept	kept	er hielt [spruch
motto	'mɒtəʊ	Motto, Wahl-
be prepared	'bi: pri'psəd	allzeit bereit!
adapted	ə'dæptɪd	bearbeitet

B. Conversation: At the Post-office

penny	'peni	Penny (<i>engl. Münze ca. 8 Pf</i>)
threepenny stamp	'θre:pəni 'stæmp	Briefmarke für 25 Pf
here you are	'hiə ju: 'ɑ:	hier bitte!
anything else?	'eniθɪŋ 'els	noch etwas? [macht
that is		das kostet, das
pence	'pens	(<i>Mz. von Penny, wenn Geldbetrag gemeint ist</i>)
telephone	'telɪfəʊn	Telephon
telephone call	'telɪfəʊn 'kɔ:l	Telephon-gespräch

to make a telephone call		ein Telefongespräch führen
Manchester	'mæntʃɪstə	(<i>Industriestadt im Nordwesten Englands</i>)
from here		von hier aus
certain	'sə:tn	sicher, gewiß
certainly	'sə:tnli	sicherlich, selbstverständlich
madam	'mædəm	gnädige Frau
5 — 7 —	'faɪv 'sev'n	
9 — 0 — 4	'naɪn 'əʊ 'fɔ:	
Box No. 2	'bɒks nʌmbə 'tu:	Zelle 2
to send	send	senden, schicken
parcel	'pɑ:sl	Paket
Scotland	'skɒtlənd	Schottland
to cost	kɒst	kosten
scales (pl.)	skeɪlz	Waage
to weigh	wei	wiegen
nearly	'niəli	fast

<The Scout Promise>

promise	'prɒmɪs	Versprechen, Gelübde
honour	'ɒnə	Ehre
on my honour		bei meiner Ehre
to promise	'prɒmɪs	versprechen, geloben
I will	wɪl	ich will

Vocabulary Revision

to take a test
 to take no notice
 take Mr Barton to the living-room
 go to the door
 go to bed
 go to the kitchen
 go back to your seat
 an answer to a letter
 to point to
 to pay attention to
 to speak to somebody
 can you tell me the way to the station?

to make a telephone call		ein Telefongespräch führen
Manchester	'mæntʃɪstə	(Industriestadt im Nordwesten Englands)
from here		von hier aus
certain	'sə:tn	sicher, gewiß
certainly	'sə:tnli	sicherlich, selbstverständlich
madam	'mædəm	gnädige Frau
5 — 7 —	'faiv 'sevn	
9 — 0 — 4	'nain 'əu 'fɔ:	
Box No. 2	'bɒks nʌmbə	Zelle 2
to send	'tu:	senden, schicken
parcel	'pɑ:sl	Paket
Scotland	'skɒtlənd	Schottland
to cost	kɒst	kosten
scales (pl.)	skeilz	Waage
to weigh	wei	wiegen
nearly	'niəli	fast

〈The Scout Promise〉

promise	'prɒmɪs	Versprechen, Gelübde
honour	'ɒnə	Ehre
on my honour		bei meiner Ehre
to promise	'prɒmɪs	versprechen, geloben
I will	wil	ich will

duty	'dju:ti	Pflicht
God	gɒd	Gott
to God		Gott gegenüber
Queen	kwi:n	Königin
at all times		zu allen Zeiten
to obey	ə'bei	gehorschen
law	lɔ:	Gesetz

〈Oh! Look at the Moon〉

moon	mu:n	Mond
she = the moon		(in der Dichtung weiblich)
up there		dort oben
lamp	læmp	Lampe
air	ɛə	Luft
shaped	ʃeɪpt	geformt, gestaltet
bow	bəu	Bogen
she's grown bigger	grəʊn	er ist größer geworden
round	raʊnd	rund

Exercises

5. she read	red	sie las
7. to retell	'ri:'tel	wiedererzählen
8. to test	test	prüfen, testen
pronunciation	prənʌn'si'eɪʃən	Aussprache
voiced	vɔɪst	stimmhaft
voiceless	'vɔɪslɪs	stimmlos

Vocabulary Revision

to take a test
 to take no notice
 take Mr Barton to the living-room
 go to the door
 go to bed
 go to the kitchen
 go back to your seat
 an answer to a letter
 to point to
 to pay attention to
 to speak to somebody
 can you tell me the way to the station?

eine Prüfung machen
 keine Notiz nehmen, nicht beachten
 führe Herrn Barton ins Wohnzimmer
 geh zur Tür
 geh ins Bett
 geh in die Küche
 geh an deinen Platz zurück
 eine Antwort auf einen Brief
 zeigen auf
 achtgeben auf
 mit jemandem sprechen
 können Sie mir den Weg zum Bahnhof zeigen?

A. The Snapshot Competition

snapshot	'snæpʃət	Schnappschuß
competition	kəmpi'tiʃən	Wettbewerb
sea	si:	die See
view	vju:	Blick
Sea View	'si: 'vju:	Seeblick
Westcliff	'westklif	(<i>Straßenname</i>)
Road	'rəud	
Bourne-	'bɔ:nməθ	(<i>Badeort an der</i>
mouth		<i>engl. Südküste</i>)
*to say, said,	sei, sed	sagen
said		
to enjoy	in'dʒɔi	genießen
*to tell, told,	tel, təuld	erzählen
told		
last Saturday	la:st	am letzten
		Samstag
beach	bi:tʃ	Strand
on the beach		am Strand
doll	dəl	Puppe
*to have, had,	hæv, hæd	haben
had		
*to take,	teik,	nehmen
took, taken	tuk, teikən	[<i>name</i>]
Colin	'kɔlin	(<i>männl. Vor-</i>
*to come,	kəm,	kommen
came, come	keim, kəm	
to come up	'kəm_ʌp	herankommen
photo =	'fəutəu,	Photo,
photograph	'fəutəgrɑ:f	Photographie,
		Aufnahme
to take a		eine Aufnahme
photo		machen, photo-
		graphieren
*to send to,	send, sent	senden an,
sent, sent		schicken
school	'sku:l	Schülerzeitung
magazine	mægə'zi:n	
as if	if	als ob
age	eidʒ	Alter
at the age of		im Alter von
babyish	'beibiʃ	kindisch
to insist	in'sist	darauf bestehen
*to write,	rait,	schreiben
wrote,	rəut,	
written	ritn	
about it	ə'baut_it	deswegen
unhappy	ʌn'hæpi	unglücklich

to love	lʌv	lieben
your loving	'lʌviŋ	Deine Dich lie-
daughter	'dɔ:tə	bende Tochter
Diana	dai'æniə	(<i>weibl. Vorname</i>)
lovely	'lʌvli	schön, freund-
		lich, reizend
the first	fju:	die ersten paar
few days		Tage
*to be, was	bi:, wəz	sein
(were), been	(wə:), bi:m	
snap	snæp	Schnappschuß
shade	ʃeid	Schatten
to hope	həup	hoffen
*to win,	win,	gewinnen
won, won	wʌn	
racket	'rækit	Schläger
shorts	ʃɔ:ts	Shorts,
		kurze Hose
unreasonable	ʌn'reiznəbl	unvernünftig
after (<i>Konj.</i>)	ɑ:ftə	nachdem
*to show,	ʃəu,	zeigen
showed,	ʃəud,	
shown	ʃəun	
*to tear up,	'tiə_ʌp,	zerreißen
tore, torn	tɔ:, tɔ:n	
*to give,	giv,	geben
gave, given	geiv, givn	
peace	pi:s	Frieden
she hasn't		sie hat mich nicht
given me a		einen Augen-
moment's		blick in Ruhe
peace		gelassen
the whole	'həul	die ganze Zeit,
time	'taim	bis jetzt
*to get up,	'get_ʌp,	aufstehen
got, got	gɒt	
to look for	'luk fɔ:	suchen
love	lʌv	Liebe
Whitehouse	'waithaus	(<i>Straßenname</i>)
Rd.		Straße
(= Road)	'rəud	
Wolver-	'wulvə-	(<i>Industriestadt in</i>
hampton	hæmptən	<i>Mittelengland</i>)
glad	glæd	froh
*to hear,	hiə,	hören
heard, heard	hɜ:d	
to bathe	beið	baden
I've had a		ich habe mir ...
look at ...		angesehen

*to think,	θiŋk	denken
thought,	θɔ:t	
thought		
however	hauevə	jedoch, doch
to send in	'send_ʌn	einsenden
diving-board	'daivɪŋbɔ:d	Sprungbrett
swimming-	'swimɪŋ-	Schwimmbad
pool	pu:l	
give my love		grüße Tante M
to Aunt M.		herzlich von mir
to promise	'prəmis	versprechen
this morning	ðis 'mɔ:niŋ	heute morgen
actually	'æktʃuəli	tatsächlich
*to see, saw,	si:, sɔ:,	sehen
seen	si:n	

B. Private Letters

private	'praɪvɪt	privat
how to begin		wie man beginnt
greeting	'gri:tiŋ	Gruß, Begrüßung
how to send		wie man GrüÙe
greetings		bestellt
at the end	end	am Schluß
remember me	ri'membə	grüÙen Sie David
to David		von mir
kind	kaɪnd	freundlich, gütig
kind regards		freundliche
to		GrüÙe an
all the family	'fæmili	die ganze Familie
best wishes	'wɪʃiz	mit den besten
		Wünschen
all good		alle guten
wishes		Wünsche
all the best		alles Gute
to end	end	beenden, endigen
Much love	lʌv	Viele liebe GrüÙe
Love		Liebe GrüÙe

Vocabulary Revision

to come up to somebody
to tear up
to get up
to go up the hill
to jump up the tree
to look up at somebody

*to think,	θɪŋk	denken
thought,	θɔ:t	
thought		
however	haʊ'evə	jedoch, doch
to send in	'send_ɪn	einsenden
diving-board	'daɪvɪŋbɔ:d	Sprungbrett
swimming-	'swɪmɪŋ-	Schwimmbad
pool	pu:l	
give my love		grüße Tante M.
to Aunt M.		herzlich von mir
to promise	'prɒmɪs	versprechen
this morning	ðɪs 'mɔ:niŋ	heute morgen
actually	'æktʃuəli	tatsächlich
*to see, saw,	si:, sɔ:,	sehen
seen	si:n	

B. Private Letters

private	'praɪvɪt	privat
how to begin		wie man beginnt
greeting	'gri:tɪŋ	Gruß, Begrüßung
how to send		wie man Grüße
greetings		bestellt
at the end	end	am Schluß
remember me	ri'membə	grüßen Sie David
to David		von mir
kind	kaind	freundlich, gütig
kind regards		freundliche
to		Grüße an
all the family	'fæmɪli	die ganze Familie
best wishes	'wɪʃɪz	mit den besten
		Wünschen
all good		alle guten
wishes		Wünsche
all the best		alles Gute
to end	end	beenden, endigen
Much love	lʌv	Viele liebe Grüße
Love		Liebe Grüße

Yours	jɔ:z	Dein
Yours ever	'evə	Herzlichst Dein
Yours		Ihr ergebener
sincerely	sin'siəli	
Yours very		Ihr sehr
sincerely		ergebener
Brook Street	'brʊk 'stri:t	(<i>Straßenname</i>)
Hounslow	'haʊnzləʊ	(<i>Stadt b. London</i>)
Middlesex	'mɪdlseks	(<i>engl. Grafschaft</i>)
letter of	'letər_ɒv	Dankesbrief
thanks	'θæŋks	
Walpole	'wɔ:lpeʊl	(<i>Straßenname</i>)
Road	'rəʊd	
Brighton	'braɪtn	(<i>Badeort an der</i>
		<i>engl. Südküste</i>)
party	'pɑ:ti	Party,
		Gesellschaft
ice-cream	'aɪs 'kri:m	Speiseeis

Exercises

2. I am		sie tut mir leid
sorry for her	'sɒri	
to finish	'fɪnɪʃ	beendigen
3. present	'preznt	Perfekt
perfect	'pɜ:fɪkt	
5. position	pə'zɪʃən	Stellung (bei)
(with)		
during	'dʒuəriŋ	während
10. past	'pɑ:st	Plusquam-
perfect	'pɜ:fɪkt	perfekt
to connect	kə'nekt	verbinden
clause	klɔ:z	(<i>gramm.</i>) Satz
as soon as		sobald
12. station-	'steɪʃən-	Stations-
master	mɑ:stə	vorsteher
to pack	pæk	packen
flag	flæg	Fahne, Fähnchen

Vocabulary Revision

to come up to somebody
to tear up
to get up
to go up the hill
to jump up the tree
to look up at somebody

auf jemanden zukommen
zerreißen
aufstehen
den Berg hinaufgehen
an dem Baum hochspringen
zu jemandem hochsehen

she knows everything **about** everybody
it is **about** twelve o'clock
he talks **about** the test

sie weiß alles über jeden
es ist ungefähr zwölf Uhr
er spricht über die Prüfung

16 A. A Meeting of the Second Form

meeting	'mi:tɪŋ	Versammlung
form	fɔ:m	Klasse
Greyfriars	'greɪfraɪəz	(Name der Schule)
grammar	'græmə	Höhere Schule,
school	'sku:l	Gymnasium
speaker	'spi:kə	Sprecher
speech	'spi:tʃ	Rede
to make a speech		eine Rede halten
*to make,	meɪk,	machen
made, made	meɪd	
*to begin,	bɪ'ɡɪn,	beginnen
began, begun	bɪ'ɡæn, bɪ'ɡʌn	
let's hope for the best		wir wollen das Beste hoffen
*to let, let, let	let	lassen
rival	'raɪvəl	Rivale
playing field	'pleɪɪŋ fi:ld	Sportplatz
to go outside	'aʊt'saɪd	nach draußen gehen
*to go, went, gone	ɡəʊ, went, ɡɒn	gehen
*to speak,	spi:k,	sprechen
spoke,	spəʊk,	
spoken	spəʊkən	
applause	ə'plɔ:z	Applaus, Beifall
to continue	kən'tɪnju	fortfahren
play	pleɪ	(Theater-)Stück
to perform	pə'fɔ:m	aufführen
stage	steɪdʒ	Bühne
school hall	'sku:l 'hɔ:l	Aula, Festsaal
loud	laʊd	laut
cheer	tʃiə	Beifallsruf
side	sɑɪd	Seite
Robin Hood	'rɒbɪn 'hʊd	(berühmte engl. Sagenfigur)
sheriff	'ʃerɪf	Sheriff, hoher Beamter
universal	ju:ni'vɜ:səl	allgemein
outlaw	'aʊtlɔ:	Geächteter

forest	'fɔ:ɪst	Wald, Forst
the poor	puə	die Armen
*to fight, fought, fought	faɪt, fɔ:t	bekämpfen, kämpfen
cruel	'kruəl	grausam
enemy	'enɪmi	Feind [England]
Nottingham	'nɒtɪŋəm	(Stadt in Mittel-)
Taylor	'teɪlə	(Familiennamen)
modest	'mɒdɪst	bescheiden
part	pɑ:t	Rolle
soldier	'səʊldʒə	Soldat
*to catch, caught, caught	kætʃ, kɔ:t	fangen
woman,	'wʊmən,	Frau
pl. women	'wɪmɪn	
*to do, did, done	du:, dɪd, dʌn	tun, machen
sale	seɪl	Verkauf
ticket	'tɪkɪt	Eintrittskarte
sport	spɔ:t	Sport
School	'sku:l	Schulsportkasse
Sports Fund	'spɔ:ts fʌnd	
seaside	'si:'saɪd	Seebad, Meeresküste
to suggest	sə'dʒest	vorschlagen
as (Konj.)	æz, əz	da, weil
local	'ləʊkəl	örtlich, hiesig
Children's	'tʃɪldrənz	Kinderheim,
Home	'həʊm	Waisenhaus
what do you think of that?		was haltet ihr davon?
need	ni:d	Not
"Ship, ahoy!"	'ʃɪp_ə'hɔɪ	„Schiff ahoy!“

B. Conversation: Let's Go to the Cinema

cinema	'sɪnɪmə	Kino
what's on?	'wɒts_ɒn	was steht auf dem Programm?

film	film	Film
western(film)	'westən	Wildwestfilm
Royal	'rɔɪəl	(Name des Kinos)
thriller	'θrɪlə	Sensationsfilm
Palace	'pæɪs	Palast (Name des Kinos)
to book	bʊk	bestellen
programme	'prɒɡræm	Programm
continuous	kən'tɪnjuəs	fortlaufend, durchgehend
at any time	'eni	jederzeit
full	ful	hier: voll besetzt
queue	kju:	Reihe, Schlange (von Menschen)
to stand in a queue		Schlange stehen
allowed	ə'laʊd	erlaubt
performance	pə'fɔ:məns	Vorstellung, Aufführung
queen	kwɪ:n	Königin
to appear	ə'piə	erscheinen
*to stand up, stood, stood	'stænd_ʌp, stʊd	aufstehen
music	'mju:zɪk	Musik
God	ɡɒd	Gott
to save	seɪv	beschützen
God save the Queen		Gott schütze die Königin!

Vocabulary Revision

to make a speech
to make a telephone call

I must do my hair
what is he doing?
she is doing her homework
he did his best
well done!

17 A. Robin Hood and the Sheriff

Sherwood	'ʃɜ:wud	(Waldgebiet in der Nähe von Nottingham)
Forest	'fɔ:ɪst	
leader	'li:də	Führer, Anführer
band	bænd	Gruppe, Schar
bowman	'bəʊmən	Bogenschütze

film	film	Film
western(film)	'westən	Wildwestfilm
Royal	'rɔɪəl	(<i>Name des Kinos</i>)
thriller	'θrɪlə	Sensationsfilm
Palace	'pælɪs	Palast (<i>Name des Kinos</i>)
to book	buk	bestellen
programme	'prəʊgræm	Programm
continuous	kən'tɪnjuəs	fortlaufend, durchgehend
at any time	'eni	jederzeit
full	ful	<i>hier</i> : voll besetzt
queue	kju:	Reihe, Schlange (<i>von Menschen</i>)
to stand in a queue		Schlange stehen
allowed	ə'laʊd	erlaubt
performance	pə'fɔ:məns	Vorstellung, Aufführung
queen	kwɪ:n	Königin
to appear	ə'piə	erscheinen
*to stand up, stood, stood	'stænd_ʊp, stud	aufstehen
music	'mju:zɪk	Musik
God	gɒd	Gott
to save	seɪv	beschützen
God save the Queen		Gott schütze die Königin!

〈National Anthem:
God Save the Queen〉

national	'næʃnəl	Nationalhymne
anthem	'ænbəm	
gracious	'greɪʃəs	gütig
long live	'lɒŋ 'lɪv	lang lebe
noble	'nəʊbl	edel, großmütig
send her . . .		made, daß sie . . .
victorious	vik'tɔ:riəs	siegreich
glorious	'glɔ:riəs	glorreich, herrlich
to reign	rein	regieren

Exercises

3. future (tense)	'fju:tʃə	Futur
4. article notice	'ɑ:tɪkl 'nəʊtɪs	Artikel Notiz, Be- merkung, Be- kanntmachung
notice board	'nəʊtɪs bɔ:d	Schwarzes Brett, Anschlagtafel
5. interview	'ɪntəvjʊ:	Interview
8. to test	test	prüfen, testen
spelling	'speliŋ	Rechtschreibung
pronunciation	prənʌn- si'eɪʃən	Aussprache

Vocabulary Revision

to make a speech
to make a telephone call

I must do my hair
what is he doing?
she is doing her homework
he did his best
well done!

eine Rede halten
ein Telefongespräch führen
ich muß mich frisieren
was macht er?
sie macht ihre Hausaufgaben
er tat sein möglichstes
gut gemacht! bravo!

17 A. Robin Hood and the Sheriff

Sherwood Forest	'ʃɔ:wud 'fɔ:ɪst	(<i>Waldgebiet in der Nähe von Nottingham</i>)
leader	'li:də	Führer, Anführer
band	bænd	Gruppe, Schar
bowman	'bəʊmən	Bogenschütze

the rich	ri:tʃ	die Reichen
great	greɪt	groß
to hang	hæŋ	hängen
market-place	'mɑ:kɪtpleɪs	Marktplatz
safe	seɪf	sicher
*to throw, threw, thrown	θrəʊ, θru: θrəʊn	werfen

prison	'prɪzn	Gefängnis
*to build,	bɪld,	bauen, auf-
built, built	bɪlt	richten
gallows (pl.)	'gæləʊz	Galgen
arrest	ə'rest	Festnahme
to storm	stɔ:m	stürmen
to rescue	'reskjʊ:	befreien, retten
to land	lænd	landen
beggar	'begə	Bettler
camp	kæmp	Lager
*to bring,	brɪŋ,	bringen
brought,	brɔ:t	
brought		
*to find,	fɑɪnd,	finden
found, found	faʊnd	
hangman	'hæŋmən	Henker
yet	jet	noch
*to sell, sold,	sel, səʊld	verkaufen
sold		
*to know,	nəʊ,	kennen,
knew,	nju:	erkennen,
known	nəʊn	wissen
own	əʊn	eigen
horn	hɔ:n	Horn
to		um zu
the hanging	'hæŋɪŋ	das(Auf-)Hängen
bride	braɪd	Braut
crowd	kraʊd	Menge
rascal	'rɑ:skəl	Schurke [Silber-
silver	'sɪlvə	Silber, silbern,
coin	kɔɪn	Münze
confession	kən'feʃən	Geständnis, Be-
		kenntnis,
		Beichte
perhaps	pə'hæps	vielleicht
the sooner ...	'su:nə	je eher ... desto
the better		besser
hell	hel	Hölle
prisoner	'prɪznə	Gefangener
*to throw off,	'θrəʊ'ɔ:f,	ablegen
threw,	θru:	
thrown	θrəʊn	
lip	lɪp	Lippe
*to blow,	bləʊ,	blasen, hinein-
blew, blown	blu:, bləʊn	blasen, ertönen
		(lassen)
forward	'fɔ:wəd	vorwärts
to come	'kʌm	nach vorne
forward	'fɔ:wəd	kommen

sound	saʊnd	Laut, Schall
*to take off,	'teɪk'ɔ:f,	abnehmen, aus-
took, taken	tʊk, teɪkən	ziehen
*to stand,	stænd,	stehen
stood, stood	stʊd	
suit	sju:t	Anzug
treason	'tri:zn	Verrat
*to draw,	drɔ:,	ziehen, zeichnen
drew, drawn	dru:, drɔ:n	
sword	sɔ:d	Schwert
to defend	dɪ'fend	verteidigen

<B. The Eight Bells>

inn	ɪn	Gasthaus, Wirts-
		haus
lion	'laɪən	Löwe
innkeeper	'ɪnki:pə	Gastwirt
customer	'kʌstəmə	Kunde
few	fju:	wenige
business	'bɪznɪs	Geschäft
really	'ri:əli	wirklich,
		in der Tat
to get an		eine Idee haben
idea	aɪ'diə	
to change	tʃeɪndʒ	ändern, wechseln
sign	sain	Aushängeschild
to grumble	'grʌmbl	murren,
		brummen
to recount	'ri:'kaʊnt	nachzählen,
		wieder zählen
finally	'faɪnəli	schließlich,
		endlich
early	'ɜ:li	früh
naturally	'nætʃrəli	natürlich
day after day		von Tag zu Tag,
		Tag für Tag
famous	'feɪməs	berühmt
thanks to	θæŋks	dank

<If ...>

axe	æks	Axt
*to cut down,	'kʌt 'daʊn	fällen, abhauen
cut, cut		
*to let, let, let	let	lassen
*to fall, fell,	fɔ:l, fel,	fallen, stürzen
fallen	'fɔ:lən	
splish, splash	'splɪʃ, splæʃ	plitsch, platsch

Exercises

2. different	'dɪfrənt	verschieden
5. main	'meɪn	Hauptsatz
clause	klɔ:z	
conditional	kən'dɪʃənəl	Konditional

Vocabulary Revision

look at the board
have a look at that book
look out!
to look after somebody

to look for
to look friendly
to look round
to look up at somebody
he looks like his father

she likes to chat
she likes cherries best
I don't like the book
I do my hair like that
the girl looks like her mother

18 A. A Pony for Mary

pony	'pəʊni	Pferdchen, Pony
which	wɪtʃ	welcher, -e, -es,
		der, die, das
for days		seit Tagen
Blackpool	'blækpu:l	(Hafenstadt im
		Nordwesten
		Englands)
sand	sænd	Sand
on the sand		im Sand
Butler	'bʌtlə	(Familiennamen)
who	hu:	der, die, das
owner	'əʊnə	Besitzer,
		Eigentümer
ride	raɪd	Ritt
pleased	pli:zd	erfreut,
		zufrieden
for (Konj.)	fɔ:	denn
to fill	fɪl	füllen

Exercises

2. different	'dɪfrənt	verschieden
5. main clause	'meɪn kləʊz	Hauptsatz
conditional	kən'dɪʃənəl	Konditional

8. team	ti:m	Mannschaft, Arbeitsgruppe
to leave, left, left	li:v, left	hinterlassen, liegenlassen
11. to test	test	prüfen, testen
pronunciation	prənʌn'si'eɪʃən	Aussprache

Vocabulary Revision

look at the board
 have a look at that book
 look out!
 to look after somebody

 to look for
 to look friendly
 to look round
 to look up at somebody
 he looks like his father

 she likes to chat
 she likes cherries best
 I don't like the book
 I do my hair like that
 the girl looks like her mother

schaut an die Tafel
 sieh dir das Buch an
 paß auf! Vorsicht!
 sich um jemanden kümmern, für jemanden sorgen
 suchen
 freundlich aussehen
 sich umsehen
 zu jemandem hochsehen
 er sieht wie sein Vater aus

 sie plaudert gern
 am liebsten mag sie Kirschen
 mir gefällt das Buch nicht
 ich frisiere mich so (auf diese Art)
 das Mädchen sieht wie ihre Mutter aus

18 A. A Pony for Mary

pony	'pəʊni	Pferdchen, Pony
which	wɪtʃ	welcher, -e, -es, der, die, das
for days		seit Tagen
Blackpool	'blækpu:l	(Hafenstadt im Nordwesten Englands)
sand	sænd	Sand
on the sand		im Sand
Butler	'bʌtlə	(Familienname)
who	hu:	der, die, das
owner	'əʊnə	Besitzer, Eigentümer
ride	raɪd	Ritt
pleased	pli:zd	erfreut, zufrieden
for (Konj.)	fə:	denn
to fill	fil	füllen

for more than a week		seit über einer Woche
tent	tent	Zelt
all alone	'ɔ:l_ə'ləʊn	ganz allein, ganz einsam
low	ləʊ	niedrig, tief
*to hang low, hung, hung	'hæŋ 'ləʊ, hæŋ	herunterhängen
to breathe	bri:ð	atmen
hard (Adv.)	hɑ:d	hart, schwer
Charlie	'tʃɑ:li	(Name des Pferdchens)
twelve-year-old Mary	'twelv jə:r_əʊld 'mɛəri	die zwölfjährige Maria
Wheatley	'wi:tli	(Familienname)
horse	hɔ:s	Pferd
*to ride, rode, ridden	raɪd, rəʊd, 'rɪdn	reiten
the week		letzte Woche, die
before		Woche vorher

cold	kəʊld	Erkältung, Schnupfen sich erkälten
to catch a cold	'kætʃ_ə 'kəʊld	
rain	rein	Regen
he has got worse	wə:s	es wurde schlim- mer mit ihm
slaughter-house	'slɔ:təhaus	Schlachthaus
cats' meat	'kæts mi:t	Katzenfutter
to shrug	frʌg	zucken
shoulder	'ʃəʊldə	Schulter
he shrugged his shoulders		er zuckte mit den Achseln
that's not my business		das ist nicht meine Sache, das geht mich nichts an
*to run, ran, run	rʌn, ræn, rʌn	laufen, rennen
band	bænd	Musikkapelle
pier	piə	Hafendamm
vet (= veterinary surgeon)	vet, 'vetərɪnəri 'sɜ:dʒən	Tierarzt
*to lead, led, led	li:d, led	führen
sick	sɪk	krank
to examine	ɪg'zæmɪn	untersuchen
treatment well, Mr. Butler, ...	'tri:tmənt	Behandlung nun, Herr Butler, ...
to come as a big surprise	sə'praɪz	gänzlich über- raschend kommen
to trust	trʌst	vertrauen, trauen
*to buy, bought, bought	baɪ, bɔ:t	kaufen
make it five pounds		<i>etwa:</i> sagen wir 5 £
it is yours	jɔ:z	es gehört Ihnen
wallet	'wɒlɪt	Brieftasche
bungalow	'bʌŋgələʊ	Bungalow
to rent	rent	mieten, pachten
*to become, became, become	bi'kʌm, bi'keɪm, bi'kʌm	werden
stable	'steɪbl	Stall

to cover	'kʌvə	bedecken, zu- decken
blanket for three days early	'blæŋkɪt 'ə:li	wollene Decke drei Tage lang früh, bald, früh- zeitig
to touch	tʌtʃ	berühren, anrühren
the day before		am vorhergehen- den Tag
*to shake, shook, shaken	ʃeɪk, ʃʊk, 'ʃeɪkən	schütteln
it shook its head up and down		es warf seinen Kopf hin und her
to push	pʊʃ	schieben, drücken
to save	seɪv	retten

<A Riddle>

riddle	'rɪdl	Rätsel
as (Konj.) St. Ives	æz, əz snt 'aɪvz	als (Badeort in Cornwall)
*to meet, met, met	mi:t, met	treffen
sack	sæk	Sack
kit (= kitten)	ki:t 'ki:tn	junges Kätzchen

<Two Jokes>

1. joke	dʒəʊk	Witz
to name	neɪm	nennen
cheese	tʃi:z	Käse
2. absent	'æbsənt	abwesend, fehlend
I'm absent		ich fehle
Exercises		
3. trick	trɪk	Trick, Kunst- stück
4. definition	defɪ'nɪʃən	Definition, Wort- erklärung
10. to feel, felt, felt	fi:l, felt	fühlen, sich fühlen
11. to mean	mi:n	bedeuten, heißen

Vocabulary Revision

for more than a week
for three days
for the first time
appetite for apples
there are eggs for breakfast
to wait for somebody
to call for somebody
on the left (right)
go on
to race on
she was on her way home
what's on?

on foot
on the beach
on the sand
on Sunday
she has a nice dress on

19 A. A Race against the Tide

tide	taɪd	Flut
top	tɒp	oberstes Ende, Spitze, Gipfel
on top of cliff	'tɒp_ɒv klɪf	oben auf Klippe, Abhang
*to blow, blew, blown	bləʊ, blu:, bləʊn	blasen, wehen
foot, pl. feet	fʊt, fi:t	Fuß (auch Län- genmaß = ca. 30 cm)
below	bi'ləʊ	unterhalb
to thunder	'θʌndə	donnern
Alan	'ælən	(männl. Vor- name) (Familienname)
Wills	wɪlz	(Familienname)
jolly good idea	'dʒɒli	prima Idee, groß- artige Idee
Ian	iən	(männl. Vor- name)
to have to the tide is coming in		müssen die Flut steigt
high tide	'haɪ 'taɪd	höchster Stand der Flut

Vocabulary Revision

for more than a week
 for three days
 for the first time
 appetite for apples
 there are eggs for breakfast
 to wait for somebody
 to call for somebody

on the left (right)
 go on
 to race on
 she was on her way home
 what's on?

on foot
 on the beach
 on the sand
 on Sunday
 she has a nice dress on

seit über einer Woche
 drei Tage lang
 zum ersten Mal
 Appetit auf Äpfel
 es gibt Eier zum Frühstück
 auf jemanden warten
 jemanden abholen
 auf der linken (rechten) Seite
 mach weiter, fahre fort
 weiterrasen
 sie war auf dem Heimweg
 was wird gegeben? was steht auf dem
 Programm?
 zu Fuß
 am Strand
 im Sand
 am Sonntag
 sie hat ein hübsches Kleid an

19 A. A Race against the Tide

tide	taid	Flut
top	tɒp	oberstes Ende, Spitze, Gipfel
on top of	'tɒp_əv	oben auf
cliff	klɪf	Klippe, Abhang
*to blow,	bləu,	blasen, wehen
blew, blown	blu:, bləʊn	
foot,	fut,	Fuß (<i>auch Län-</i>
pl. feet	fi:t	<i>genmaß = ca.</i> <i>30 cm</i>)
below	bi'ləu	unterhalb
to thunder	'θʌndə	donnern
Alan	'ælən	(<i>männl. Vor-</i> <i>name</i>)
Wills	wɪlz	(<i>Familiename</i>)
jolly good	'dʒɒli	prima Idee, groß-
idea		artige Idee
Ian	iən	(<i>männl. Vor-</i> <i>name</i>)
to have to		müssen
the tide is		die Flut steigt
coming in		
high tide	'haɪ 'taɪd	höchster Stand der Flut

to be able to	'eɪbl	in der Lage sein, fähig sein
Leslie	'lezli	(<i>männl., gelegent-</i> <i>lich auch weibl.</i> <i>Vorname</i>)
Hall	hɔ:l	(<i>Familiename</i>)
edge	edʒ	Rand, scharfe Kante
to slip	slɪp	ausrutschen
*to fall, fell,	fɔ:l, fel	fallen, stürzen
fallen	'fɔ:lən	
motionless	'məʊʃənɪs	bewegungslos, reglos
to telephone	'telɪfəʊn	telefonieren
ambulance	'æmbjuləns	Krankenwagen
ambulance man		Sanitäter
fire-brigade	'faɪəbrɪgeɪd	Feuerwehr
fireman	'faɪəmən	Feuerwehrmann
ladder	'lædə	Leiter
enough	i'nʌf	genug
meanwhile	'mi:n'waɪl	mittlerweile, unterdessen
helicopter	'helɪkɒptə	Hubschrauber
difficulty	'dɪfɪkəlti	Schwierigkeit
close to	kləʊs	nahe an
almost	'ɔ:lməʊst	beinahe, fast

to crash	kræʃ	krachen, zer- schmettern
pilot	'paɪlət	Pilot, Flugzeug- führer
to give up	'gɪv_ʼʌp	aufgeben
*to fly, flew,	flaɪ, flu:,	fliegen
flown	fləʊn	
above	ə'baʊ	oben, darüber, oberhalb
hospital	'hɒspɪtl	Krankenhaus
injured	'ɪndʒəd	verletzt
*to break,	breɪk,	brechen,
broke,	brəʊk,	zerbrechen
broken	'brəʊkən	
to be allowed	ə'laʊd	die Erlaubnis haben, dürfen
to		
rescue	'reskjʊ:	Rettung
dare-devil	'dæ devl	Wagehals, Teufelskerl

<B. Conversation:

Greetings and Good Wishes >

greeting	'grɪ:tɪŋ	Grußformel
wish	wɪʃ	Wunsch
How are	haʊ 'ɑ:	Wie geht es Dir
you?	ju:	(Ihnen)?
I'm fine	fain	mir geht es gut
thanks =	θæŋks	vielen Dank
many thanks		
to introduce	ɪntrə'dju:s	vorstellen
music	'mju:zɪk	Musiklehrer
teacher	'ti:tʃə	
how do	'haʊd	guten Tag!
you do?	ju'du:	
to shake	ʃeɪk	sich die Hand geben
hands		
bye-bye	'baɪ'baɪ	(<i>umgangssprach- lich für ,good-bye'</i>)
cheerio	'tʃɪəriəʊ	(auf) Wieder- sehen!
good	ɡʊd	(<i>zwischen ,lunch' und ,tea' ge- brauchte Gruß- formel statt ,guten Tag'</i>)
afternoon	'ɑ:ftə'nu:n	treffen, begegnen
*to meet,	mi:t,	
met, met	met	

to do the	'dʊ ðə	Einkäufe
shopping	'ʃɒpɪŋ	machen, einkaufen gehen
I mustn't	'mʌsnt	Ich darf dich (Sie) nicht auf- halten
keep you		Fröhliche Weihnachten!
Merry	'meri	Ihnen dasselbe, gleichfalls
Christmas!	'krɪsməs	herzlichen Glück- wunsch zum
the same	seɪm	Geburtstag!
to you		viel Glück!
many happy		viel Vergnügen!
returns of	ri'tə:nz	
the day		
good luck!	'ɡʊd 'lʌk	
have a good	taɪm	angenehm
time!		
pleasant	'pleznt	

<The Blackbird >

blackbird	'blækbɜ:d	Amsel
in the far	fɑ:	dort hinten in der
corner	'kɔ:nə	Ecke
close by	kləʊs	nahe bei, in der Nähe von
swings (pl.)	swɪŋz	Schaukel
bill	bɪl	Schnabel
fellow	'feləʊ	Gefährte, Kamerad
to whistle	'wɪsl	pfeifen
he makes		er veranlaßt ihn
him whistle		zu pfeifen
especially	ɪs'peʃəli	hauptsächlich, besonders

Exercises

2. ice bag	'aɪs bæɡ	Eisbeutel
4. pattern	'pætən	Satzbaumuster
word group	'wɜ:d gru:p	Wortgruppe
10. positive	'pɒzətɪv	bejahte Antwort
answer		
negative	'negətɪv	verneinte Ant- wort
answer		
11. to test	test	prüfen, testen
spelling	'speliŋ	Recht- schreibung
pronun- ciation	prənʌn- si'eɪʃən	Aussprache

Vocabulary Revision

a pair of shorts
a pair of slippers
a box of matches
a quarter of an hour
a cup of tea
a piece of paper
a basket full of apples
to go out of the house
each day of the week
at the top of the hill
of course
what do you think of that?

20

A. A Cycling Tour (Diana's Diary)

to cycle	'saɪkl	radfahren, radeln
tour	tuə	Rundreise, Tour
cycling tour	'saɪkliŋ	Radtour
diary	'daɪəri	Tagebuch
a pair of	'peər_əv	eine kurze Hose
shorts	'ʃɔ:ts	
bathing- costume	'beɪðɪŋ	Badeanzug
sun-glasses	'sʌŋglɑ:sɪz	Sonnenbrille
optimist	'ɒptɪmɪst	Optimist
to be lucky	'lʌki	Glück haben
Barbara	'bɑ:bərə	Barbara
to call for		jdn. abholen
somebody		
to pack	pæk	packen
swimming- trunks	'swɪmɪŋ- trʌŋks	Badehose
to be late	leɪt	Verspätung haben
youth	ju:θ	Jugend
hostel	'hɒstəl	Herberge
youth hostel		Jugendherberge
to go		schwimmen
swimming	'swɪmɪŋ	gehen
to go to		in die Kirche
church	tʃɜ:tʃ	gehen
to sun-bathe	'sʌnbeɪð	sonnenbaden
to fry	fraɪ	braten, backen
tomato,	tə'mɑ:təʊ	Tomate
pl. tomatoes		

Vocabulary Revision

a pair of shorts
 a pair of slippers
 a box of matches
 a quarter of an hour
 a cup of tea
 a piece of paper
 a basket full of apples
 to go out of the house
 each day of the week
 at the top of the hill
 of course
 what do you think of that?

eine kurze Hose
 ein Paar Hausschuhe
 eine Schachtel Streichhölzer
 eine Viertelstunde
 eine Tasse Tee
 ein Stück Papier
 ein Korb voller Äpfel
 aus dem Hause gehen
 jeder Tag der Woche
 oben auf dem Berg
 natürlich, selbstverständlich
 was hältst du davon?

20 A. A Cycling Tour (Diana's Diary)

to cycle	'saɪkl	radfahren, radeln
tour	tuə	Rundreise, Tour
cycling tour	'saɪkliŋ	Radtour
diary	'daɪəri	Tagebuch
a pair of shorts	'peər_əv 'ʃɔ:ts	eine kurze Hose
bathing-costume	'beɪðɪŋ 'kɒstjʊ:m	Badeanzug
sun-glasses	'sʌŋglɑ:sɪz	Sonnenbrille
optimist	'ɒptɪmɪst	Optimist
to be lucky	'lʌki	Glück haben
Barbara	'bɑ:bərə	Barbara
to call for somebody		jdn. abholen
to pack	pæk	packen
swimming-trunks	'swɪmɪŋ- trʌŋks	Badehose
to be late	leit	Verspätung haben
youth	ju:θ	Jugend
hostel	'hɒstəl	Herberge
youth hostel		Jugendherberge
to go swimming	'swɪmɪŋ	schwimmen gehen
to go to church	tʃə:tʃ	in die Kirche gehen
to sun-bathe	'sʌnbeɪð	sonnenbaden
to fry	fraɪ	braten, backen
tomato,	tə'mɑ:təʊ	Tomate
pl. tomatoes		

sausage	'səʊsɪdʒ	Wurst
potato	pə'teɪtəʊ	Kartoffel
pl. potatoes		
to wash up	'wɒʃ_ʌp	abwaschen, spülen
typical	'tɪpɪkəl	typisch
soon after		bald nachdem
puncture	'pʌŋktʃə	Reifenpanne, Loch im Reifen
further	'fɜ:ðə	ferner, weiter
a little further		ein bißchen weiter
along the road		die Straße hinunter
farmhouse	'fɑ:mhaʊs	Bauernhaus
barn	bɑ:n	Scheune
to mend	mend	ausbessern, flicken
goose,	gu:s,	Gans
pl. geese	gi:s	
to chase	tʃeɪs	scheuchen, jagen, vertreiben
boat	bəʊt	Boot
to fish	fɪʃ	fischen, angeln
boot	bu:t	Stiefel
group	gru:p	Gruppe
*to spend,	spend,	verbringen
spent, spent	spent	
*to teach,	ti:tʃ,	lehren,
taught,	tɔ:t	beibringen
taught		
song	sɒŋ	Lied
*to sing, sang, siŋ, sæŋ,		singen
sung	sʌŋ	

fair	feə	Volksfest, Rummelplatz, Jahrmarkt
roundabout	'raundəbaut	Karussell
to go on the roundabout		Karussell fahren
ghost train	'gəʊst treɪn	Geisterbahn
five pence	'faɪv'pəns	5 Pennies (ca. 40 Pf)
everywhere	'evriwɛə	überall, überallhin
to tease	ti:z	hänseln, necken
all the time		die ganze Zeit
*to steal,	sti:l,	stehlen
stole, stolen	stəʊl, 'stəʊlən	
bicycle pump	'baɪsɪkl pʌmp	Luftpumpe
something		etwas passiert
always happens		ihm immer
to him		
picnic	'pɪknɪk	eine Mahlzeit im Freien, Picknick
flock	fɒk	Herde
sheep,	ʃi:p	Schaf
pl. sheep		
shepherd	'ʃepəd	Schäfer
Lassie	'læsi	(Name des Schäferhundes)
we took a photograph of each other	'fəʊtəgrɑ:f	wir fotografierten uns gegenseitig
do you think people will know?		glaubst du, daß die Leute wissen werden?
everyone	'evriwʌn	jeder
to plan	plæn	planen

B. Conversation:

Alan's Watch is Wrong

the watch is		die Uhr geht
wrong	rɒŋ	falsch
sure	ʃʊə	sicher
only	'əʊnli	erst
*to set, set	set	stellen
radio	'reɪdiəʊ	Radio
to set the watch by the radio		die Uhr nach dem Radio stellen

last night		gestern abend
the watch is slow	sləʊ	die Uhr geht nach
like that		so
*to forget, forgot, forgotten	fə'get, fə'gɒt, fə'gɒtn	vergessen
*to wind up, wound, wound	'waɪnd_ʼʌp, waʊnd	aufziehen
the watch is fast	fɑ:st	die Uhr geht vor
to gain	geɪn	gewinnen, vorgehen
to put the watch on to . . .		die Uhr auf . . . vorstellen
*to put, put, put		setzen, legen, stellen

<Song: This Old Man>

nick nack,	'nɪk næk	(Kinderreim, etwa wie: schnick, schnack, Dudelsack)
paddy	'pædi	
whack	wæk	
drum	drʌm	Trommel
rolling	'rəʊlɪŋ	schwankend
knee	ni:	Knie
hive	haɪv	Bienenkorb
Devon	'devn	(englische Grafschaft)
gate	geɪt	Tor
line	laɪn	Seil, Leine

Exercises

4. relative pronoun	'relətɪv 'prəʊnaʊn	Relativpronomen, bezügliches Fürwort
possible	'pɒsəbl	möglich
positive	'pɒzətɪv	bejahend
negative	'negətɪv	verneinend
5. to ride, rode, ridden	raɪd, 'raɪdn	reiten, hier: fahren
8. different	'dɪfrənt	verschieden, unterschiedlich
spelling	'speliŋ	Rechtschreibung
9. rucksack	'rʌksæk	Rucksack

Vocabulary Revision

to go and see	
to go by train	
to go by bus	
to go on the roundabout	
to go home	
to go outside	
to go to church	
to go shopping	
to go to the baker's	
to go swimming	
ready — steady — go	
give my love to Aunt Dorothy	
don't give up	
she hasn't given me a moment's peace	

21 A. The Stowaway

stowaway	'stəʊəweɪ	blinder Passagier
airport	'eəpɔ:t	Flughafen
for New York	'nju: 'jɔ:k	nach New York
heavily	'hevɪli	schwer, heftig
gale warning	'geɪl 'wɔ:nɪŋ	Sturmwarnung
to announce	ə'naʊns	ankündigen, melden
south	sauθ	Süden
engine	'endʒɪn	Maschine, Motor
to start the engine		den Motor anlassen
van	væn	Lieferwagen
wooden	'wʊdn	hölzern, Holz-
case	keɪs	Kiste
luggage	'lʌdʒɪdʒ	Gepäck
luggage room		Gepäckraum
passenger	'pæsɪndʒə	Fahrgast, Fluggast, Reisende(r)
on board	bɔ:d	an Bord
to fasten	'fɑ:sn	befestigen, anschnallen
safety	'seɪftɪ	Sicherheit
belt	belt	Gürtel, Riemen
safety belt		Sicherheitsgurt
to take off	'teɪk_ʼɔ:f	starten (beim Flugzeug)

Vocabulary Revision

to go and see
 to go by train
 to go by bus
 to go on the roundabout
 to go home
 to go outside
 to go to church
 to go shopping
 to go to the baker's
 to go swimming
 ready — steady — go
 give my love to Aunt Dorothy
 don't give up
 she hasn't given me a moment's peace

besuchen gehen
 mit dem Zug fahren
 mit dem Bus fahren
 Karussell fahren
 nach Hause gehen
 nach draußen gehen
 in die Kirche gehen
 einkaufen gehen
 zum Bäcker gehen
 schwimmen gehen
 auf die Plätze — fertig — los!
 grüße Tante Dorothea herzlich von mir
 gib nicht auf
 sie hat mich nicht einen Augenblick in
 Ruhe gelassen

21 A. The Stowaway

stowaway	'stəuəwei	blinder Passagier
airport	'eəpɔ:t	Flughafen
for New York	'nju: 'jɔ:k	nach New York
heavily	'hevili	schwer, heftig
gale warning	'geil 'wɔ:miŋ	Sturmwarnung
to announce	ə'nauns	ankündigen, melden
south	sauθ	Süden
engine	'endʒin	Maschine, Motor
to start the engine		den Motor an- lassen
van	væn	Lieferwagen
wooden	'wudn	hölzern, Holz-
case	keis	Kiste
luggage	'lʌɡidʒ	Gepäck
luggage room		Gepäckraum
passenger	'pæsɪndʒə	Fahrgast, Flug- gast, Reisende(r)
on board	bɔ:d	an Bord
to fasten	'fɑ:sn	befestigen, anschnallen
safety	'seifti	Sicherheit
belt	belt	Gürtel, Riemen
safety belt		Sicherheitsgurt
to take off	'teik_ 'ɔ:f	starten (<i>beim Flugzeug</i>)

to hammer	'hæmə	hämmern, schlagen
flash of lightning	'flæʃ_əv 'laitniŋ	Blitzstrahl
to be asleep	ə'sli:p	schlafen
air hostess	'eə haustis	Stewardess
sneeze	sni:z	Niesen
to be mistaken	mis'teikən	sich irren
work	wɔ:k	Arbeit
good	gud	ach du lieber Himmel!
gracious!	'greifəs	
chief steward	'tʃi:f 'stjuəd	Erster Steward
to remove	ri'mu:v	wegschaffen, wegnehmen
fortunately	'fɔ:tʃnitli	glücklicherweise
between	bi'twi:n	zwischen
antique	æn'ti:k	antik
guilty	'gilti	schuldig
to tremble	'trembl	zittern
though	ðəu	obgleich, doch
harmless	'hɑ:mlis	harmlos, arglos
figure	'figə	Figur, Gestalt
Dad's = Daddy is	dæd, 'dædi	
customs (pl.)	'kʌstəmz	Zoll
officer	'ɒfisə	Beamter
to take to		mitnehmen nach
hall	hɔ:l	Halle, Gebäude

Henry	'henri	Heinrich
*to hide, hid, hidden, oder: hid	haid, hid, 'hidn	sich verbergen, sich verstecken
Jimmy	'dʒimi	(familiäre Form für James)
real	riəl	wirklich
James	dʒeɪmz	Jakob
Cook	kuk	(Familiennamen)
Glasgow	'glɑ:sgəu	(Industrie- und Hafenstadt in Schottland)
to punish law by law	'pʌnɪʃ lɔ:	strafen, bestrafen Gesetz durch das Gesetz, gesetzlich
to inform	in'fɔ:m	informieren, benachrichtigen, in Kenntnis setzen
message	'mesɪdʒ	Meldung, Mitteilung (größte engl. Fluggesellschaft)
B O A C = British Overseas Airways Corporation	'brɪtɪʃ 'əʊvə'si:z 'eəweɪz kɔ:pə'reɪʃən	
to hand over	'hænd_ 'əʊvə	aushändigen, übergeben
to question	'kwɛstʃən	befragen, ver- hören
*to meet, met, met	mi:t, met	treffen, abholen
such	sətʃ	solcher, solche, solches, so
such a thing	'sʌtʃ_ə 'θɪŋ	so etwas
this time	'ðɪs taɪm	diesmal

<B. Conversation:

At a London Travel Agency

travel agency	'trævl eɪdʒənsi	Reisebüro
travel agent	'trævl eɪdʒənt	Angestellter eines Reisebüros
business man	'bɪznɪsmən	Geschäftsmann
Germany	'dʒɜ:məni	Deutschland
to attend	ə'tend	besuchen, bei- wohnen

business conference	'bɪznɪs 'kɒnfərəns	Geschäft Konferenz, Verhandlung
to accompany	ə'kʌmpəni	begleiten
on what day?		an welchem Tag?
to wish	wɪʃ	wünschen
journey	'dʒɜ:ni	Reise
How long does the journey take?		Wie lange dauert die Reise?
to go by air flight	sə flaɪt	fliegen Flug
air travel	'eətrævl	Flugreise
necessary	'nesɪsəri	notwendig
reservation	resə'veɪʃən	Reservierung, Vorbestellung
return (ticket)	ri'tɜ:n	Rückfahrkarte
to reserve	ri'zɜ:v	reservieren
sleeper	'sli:pə	Schlafwagen, Bett im Schlaf- wagen
extra	'ekstrə	zusätzlich
anything else?	'eniθɪŋ 'els	noch etwas?
passport	'pɑ:spɔ:t	Reisepaß
good afternoon	gud 'ɑ:ftə'nu:n	(zwischen 'lunch' und 'tea' ge- brauchte Gruß- formel statt 'Guten Tag')

<The Train to Bristol>

Bristol	'brɪstl	(Stadt in Süd- england)
traveller	'trævlə	Reisender
out of breath	'aʊt_əv 'breθ	außer Atem, atemlos
station- master	'steɪʃən- mɑ:stə	Stations- vorsteher
to depend on	di'pend_ 'ɒn	abhängen von

<My Bonnie Is over the Ocean>

Bonnie	'bɒni	Schatz, Liebster
ocean	'əʊfn	Ozean, Meer
ye = you	ji:	

Exercises

2. police woman	pə'li:s wʊmən	Polizistin
to change	tʃeɪndʒ	verwandeln, umwandeln
passive voice	'pæsɪv 'vɔɪs	Passiv
3. thousand thousands of	'θaʊzənd	tausend Tausende von

Vocabulary Revision

to go by tram
to be punished by law

to set the watch by the radio
what's the time by your watch?

all alone
all the best
all right
all the family

22

<A. Mike's Christmas Presents>

money-box	'mʌnɪbɒks	Sparbüchse
each other	i:tʃ_ 'ʌðə	einander
custom	'kʌstəm	Sitte, Gewohn- heit
they brought	brɔ:t	sie brachten
manger	'meɪndʒə	Krippe
memory	'meməri	Gedächtnis, Andenken
Christ	kraɪst	Christus
birth	bɜ:θ	Geburt
Bethlehem	'beθlihem	Bethlehem
he under- stood	ʌndə'stʊd	er verstand
collection	kə'leɪʃən	Sammlung
penny	'peni	Penny (engl. Münze ca. 8 Pf)
Christmas Eve	'krɪsməs 'i:v	Heiliger Abend
kind	kaind	freundlich, gütig
he met	met	er traf

Exercises

2. police	pə'li:s	Polizistin
woman	wʊmən	
to change	tʃeɪndʒ	verwandeln, umwandeln
passive	'pæsɪv	Passiv
voice	'voɪs	
3. thousand	'θaʊzənd	tausend
thousands of		Tausende von

4. report	ri'pɔ:t	Bericht
*to read,	ri:d,	lesen
read, read	red	
6. condition-	kən'dɪʃənəl	zweites Kon-
nal perfect	'pɜ:fɪkt	ditiŋəl
chief part	'tʃi:f 'pɑ:t	Hauptrolle
8. word-	'wɜ:d-	Wortbildung
formation	fɜ:meɪʃən	
9. Gatwick	'gætɪkwɪk	(Ort südlich von London)

Vocabulary Revision

to go by tram
to be punished by law

to set the watch by the radio
what's the time by your watch?

all alone
all the best
all right
all the family

mit der Straßenbahn fahren
gesetzlich (durch das Gesetz) bestraft
werden

die Uhr nach dem Radio stellen
wie spät ist es nach deiner Uhr?

ganz allein
alles Gute
also gut, in Ordnung
die ganze Familie

22 <A. Mike's Christmas Presents>

money-box	'mʌnɪbɒks	Sparbüchse
each other	i:tʃ 'ʌðə	einander
custom	'kʌstəm	Sitte, Gewohn-
		heit
they brought	brɔ:t	sie brachten
manger	'meɪndʒə	Krippe
memory	'meməri	Gedächtnis, Andenken
Christ	kraɪst	Christus
birth	bɜ:θ	Geburt
Bethlehem	'beθlihem	Bethlehem
he under-	ʌndə'stʌd	er verstand
stood		
collection	kə'leɪʃən	Sammlung
penny	'peni	Penny (engl. Münze ca. 8 Pf)
Christmas	'krɪsməs	Heiliger Abend
Eve	'i:v	
kind	kaind	freundlich, gütig
he met	met	er traf

already	ɔ:l'redi	schon, bereits
to chop	tʃɒp	hacken
really	'riəli	wirklich, eigentlich
job	dʒɒb	Arbeit, Beschäftigung
sadly	'sædli	traurig
turkey	'tɜ:ki	Truthahn
plum	'plʌm	Plumpudding
pudding	'pʊdɪŋ	
decorated	'dekəreɪtɪd	geschmückt
holly	'hɒli	Stechpalme
mistletoe	'mɪstləʊ	Mistel(zweig, -zweige)
to remind of	ri'maɪnd_ʻɒv	erinnern, mahnen an
work	wɜ:k	Arbeit
carol	'kærəl	Weihnachts-
singing		liedersingen
great	greɪt	groß
to cheer up	tʃiə_ʻʌp	Mut fassen, sich aufheitern
silent	'saɪlənt	still
holy	'həʊli	heilig

bright	brait	hell, klar
virgin	'və:dʒɪn	Jungfrau
infant	'ɪnfənt	Kind
tender	'tendə	zart
mild	maɪld	mild, sanft
heavenly	'hevənli	himmlisch
peace	pi:s	Frieden, Ruhe
fire	'faɪə	Feuer, Kamin
round	raund	Runde, Rundgang
share	ʃə	Teil, Anteil
fortunately	'fɔ:tʃnɪtli	glücklicherweise, zum Glück
Christmas		Weihnachts-
morning		morgen
merry	'meri	fröhlich
he gave	geɪv	er gab

<B. Did you know that . . .>

working day	'wɜ:kɪŋ deɪ	Arbeitstag, Werktag
usual	'ju:ʒuəl	gewöhnlich, normalerweise
as usual		wie gewöhnlich, wie üblich
along the streets	ə'lɒŋ	die Straßen entlang
silver	'sɪlvə	silbern, Silber
coin	kɔɪn	Münze
lucky charms	'lʌki 'tʃɑ:mz	Glücksbringer
to mix	miks	mischen
good luck	'gʊd 'lʌk	Glück
finder	'faɪndə	Finder
Christmas Day	'krɪsməs 'deɪ	Weihnachtstag

<The First Nowel>

Nowel	nəu'el	Weihnachten
(<i>poetisch</i>)		
angel	'eɪndʒəl	Engel
to say	seɪ	<i>hier:</i> ankündigen
certain	'sɜ:tən	gewisse
shepherd	'ʃepəd	Hirte
as		als
they lay	leɪ	sie lagen
to keep	ki:p	<i>hier:</i> hüten
sheep	ʃi:p	Schafe
deep	di:p	tief
born	bɔ:n	geboren
King	kiŋ	König
Israel	'ɪzreɪəl	Israel
they saw	sə:	sie sahen
star	stɑ:	Stern
east	'i:st	Osten
beyond	bɪ'jɒnd	jenseits
earth	ɑ:θ	Erde
it gave	geɪv	<i>hier:</i> er gab
great	greɪt	groß
to continue	kən'tɪnju:	fortfahren, fort-
		dauern
both . . . and	bəuθ	sowohl . . . als
		auch
this star drew	dru:	dieser Stern zog
nigh	nai	nahe
(<i>poetisch</i>)		
north-west	'nɔ:θ'west	Nordwesten
o'er = over	'əʊə	über
Bethlehem	'beθlihem	Bethlehem
to take a rest	rest	ausruhen, stehenbleiben
right over	'raɪt 'əʊvə	genau über

Liste der unregelmäßigen Verben

to awake [ei]	awoke [əu]
to be [i:]	was [ɔ], were [ə:]
to beat [i:]	beat [i:]
to become [ʌ]	became [ei]
to begin [i]	began [æ]
to bite [ai]	bit [i]
to blow [əu]	blew [u:]
to break [ei]	broke [əu]
to bring [ɪ]	brought [ɔ:]
to build [ɪ]	built [ɪ]
to buy [ai]	bought [ɔ:]
to catch [æ]	caught [ɔ:]
to come [ʌ]	came [ei]
to cost [ɔ]	cost
to cut [ʌ]	cut
to dig [ɪ]	dug [ʌ]
to do [u:]	did [ɪ]
to draw [ɔ:]	drew [u:]
to dream [i:]	dreamt [e]
to drink [ɪ]	drank [æ]
to drive [ai]	drove [əu]
to eat [i:]	ate [et]
to fall [ɔ:]	fell [e]
to feel [i:]	felt [e]
to fight [ai]	fought [ɔ:]
to find [ai]	found [au]
to fly [ai]	flew [u:]
to forget [fə'get]	forgot ['ɔ]
to forgive [fə'gɪv]	forgave ['ei]
to get [e]	got [ɔ]
to give [ɪ]	gave [ei]
to go [əu]	went [e]
to grow [əu]	grew [u:]
to hang [æ]	hung [ʌ]
to have [æ]	had [æ]
to hear [ɪə]	heard [ɔ:]
to hide [ai]	hid [ɪ]
to hold [əu]	held [e]
to keep [i:]	kept [e]
to know [nəu]	knew [nju:]
to lay [ei]	laid [ei]
to lead [i:]	led [e]
to learn [ɔ:]	learnt [ɔ:]
to leave [i:]	left [e]
to let [e]	let
to lie [ai]	lay [ei]

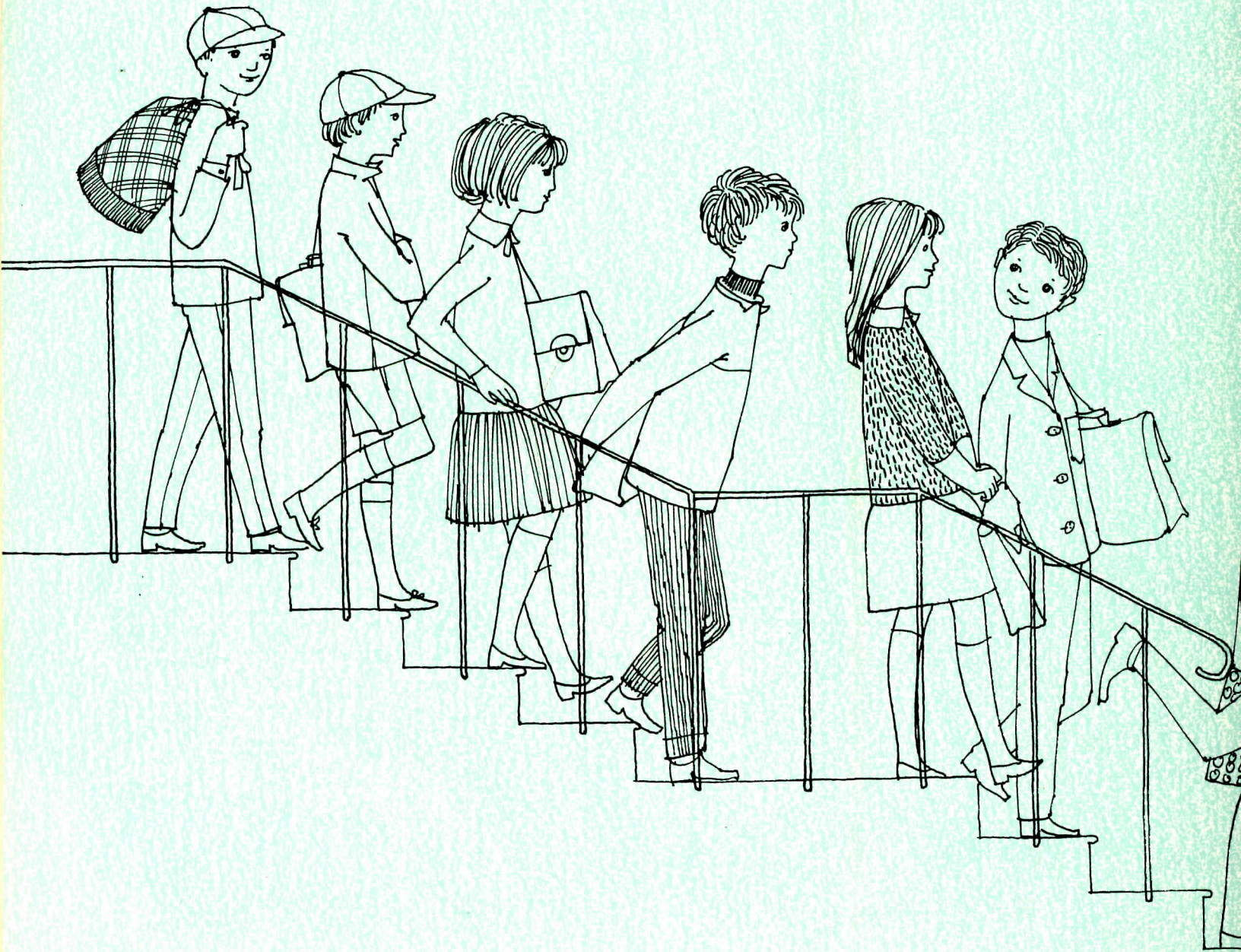
Liste der unregelmäßigen Verben (List of Irregular Verbs)

to awake [ei]	awoke [əu]	awoken [əu]	aufwachen
to be [i:]	was [ɔ], were [ə:]	been [i:]	sein
to beat [i:]	beat [i:]	beaten [i:]	schlagen
to become [ʌ]	became [ei]	become [ʌ]	werden
to begin [i]	began [æ]	begun [ʌ]	beginnen
to bite [ai]	bit [i]	bitten [i]	beißen
to blow [əu]	blew [u:]	blown [əu]	blasen, wehen
to break [ei]	broke [əu]	broken [əu]	zerbrechen
to bring [i]	brought [ɔ:]	brought	bringen
to build [i]	built [i]	built	bauen
to buy [ai]	bought [ɔ:]	bought	kaufen
to catch [æ]	caught [ɔ:]	caught	fangen
to come [ʌ]	came [ei]	come [ʌ]	kommen
to cost [ɔ]	cost	cost	kosten
to cut [ʌ]	cut	cut	schneiden
to dig [i]	dug [ʌ]	dug	graben
to do [u:]	did [i]	done [ʌ]	tun
to draw [ɔ:]	drew [u:]	drawn [ɔ:]	ziehen, zeichnen
to dream [i:]	dreamt [e]	dreamt [e]	träumen
to drink [i]	drank [æ]	drunk [ʌ]	trinken
to drive [ai]	drove [əu]	driven [i]	fahren, treiben
to eat [i:]	ate [et]	eaten [i:]	essen
to fall [ɔ:]	fell [e]	fallen [ɔ:]	fallen
to feel [i:]	felt [e]	felt	fühlen
to fight [ai]	fought [ɔ:]	fought	bekämpfen, kämpfen
to find [ai]	found [au]	found	finden
to fly [ai]	flew [u:]	flown [əu]	fliegen
to forget [fə'get]	forgot ['ɔ]	forgotten ['ɔ]	vergessen
to forgive [fə'giv]	forgave ['ei]	forgiven ['i]	vergeben
to get [e]	got [ɔ]	got [ɔ]	bekommen, werden
to give [i]	gave [ei]	given [i]	geben
to go [əu]	went [e]	gone [ɔ]	gehen
to grow [əu]	grew [u:]	grown [əu]	wachsen
to hang [æ]	hung [ʌ]	hung	hängen
to have [æ]	had [æ]	had [æ]	haben
to hear [iə]	heard [ə:]	heard	hören
to hide [ai]	hid [i]	hidden or hid [i]	sich verbergen, sich ver- stecken
to hold [əu]	held [e]	held	halten
to keep [i:]	kept [e]	kept	halten, behalten
to know [nəu]	knew [nju:]	known [nəun]	wissen
to lay [ei]	laid [ei]	laid	legen
to lead [i:]	led [e]	led	führen
to learn [ə:]	learnt [ə:]	learnt	lernen
to leave [i:]	left [e]	left	verlassen, abfahren
to let [e]	let	let	lassen
to lie [ai]	lay [ei]	lain [ei]	liegen

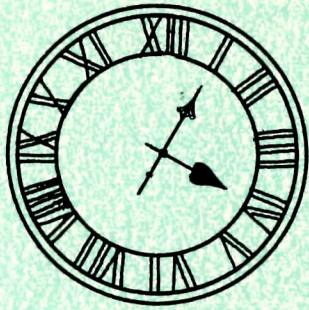
to make [ei]	made [ei]	made	machen
to mean [i:]	meant [e]	meant	meinen, bedeuten
to meet [i:]	met [e]	met	zusammenkommen, sich treffen
to pay [ei]	paid [ei]	paid	(be)zahlen
to put [u]	put	put	setzen, stellen, legen
to read [i:]	read [e]	read	lesen
to ride [ai]	rode [əu]	ridden [i]	reiten, fahren
to ring [i]	rang [æ]	rung [ʌ]	läuten, klingeln
to run [ʌ]	ran [æ]	run [ʌ]	laufen, rennen
to say [ei]	said [e]	said	sagen
to see [i:]	saw [ɔ:]	seen [i:]	sehen
to sell [e]	sold [əu]	sold [əu]	verkaufen
to send [e]	sent	sent	senden, schicken
to set [e]	set	set	stellen
to shake [ei]	shook [u]	shaken [ei]	schütteln
to shine [ai]	shone [ɔ]	shone	scheinen, leuchten
to show [əu]	showed [əu]	shown [əu]	zeigen
to shut [ʌ]	shut	shut	schließen
to sing [i]	sang [æ]	sung [ʌ]	singen
to sit [i]	sat [æ]	sat	sitzen, sich setzen
to sleep [i:]	slept [e]	slept	schlafen
to speak [i:]	spoke [əu]	spoken [əu]	sprechen
to spell [e]	spelt [e]	spelt	buchstabieren
to spend [e]	spent	spent	verbringen
to spoil [ɔi]	spoilt [ɔi]	spoilt	verderben
to stand [æ]	stood [u]	stood	stehen
to steal [i:]	stole [əu]	stolen [əu]	stehlen
to swim [i]	swam [æ]	swum [ʌ]	schwimmen
to take [ei]	took [u]	taken [ei]	nehmen, bringen
to teach [i:]	taught [ɔ:]	taught	lehren
to tear [eə]	tore [ɔ:]	torn [ɔ:]	(zer)reißen, zerren
to tell [e]	told [əu]	told	erzählen, sagen
to think [i]	thought [ɔ:]	thought	denken
to throw [əu]	threw [u:]	thrown [əu]	werfen
to understand [ʌndə'stænd]	understood ['u]	understood ['u]	verstehen
to wake [ei] (up)	woke [əu]	woke(n) [əu]	wecken, aufwachen
to wear [eə]	wore [ɔ:]	worn [ɔ:]	tragen (von Kleidungs- stücken)
to win [i]	won [ʌ]	won	gewinnen
to wind [ai]	wound [au]	wound	aufziehen
to write [rait]	wrote [əu]	written [i]	schreiben







230-38





ISBN 3-12-**5081**00-9